Chess Academy®

ISOLATED PAWN

Theory of chess middlegame

GM A. Mikhalchishin
IM Ya. Srokowski
V. Braslavsky

INTELINVEST®

NEW

Chess Academy®

ISOLATED PAWN

Theory of chess middlegame

GM A. Mikhalchishin
IM Ya. Srokowski
V. Braslavsky

Foreword by GM A. Beliavsky

INTELINVEST®
Düsseldorf, Hannover, Germany — Lviv, Ukraine — Los Angeles, USA —
Toronto, Canada — Cannes, France

© 1995 Published by
INTELINVEST Co. Ltd.

© 1995 A. Mikhalchishin
Ya. Srokowski
V. Braslavsky

© 1995 Composition, design
and modelling by Kalvaria Ltd.
and Intelinvest Co. Ltd.

Printed by
Patent Industrial and Publishing Group

First English edition 1995

All Rights Reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means: electronic, electrostatic, magnetic tape, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without permission in writing from the publisher.

Mikchalchishin A., Srokowski Ya., Braslavsky V.
Isolated Pawn. Theory of Chess Middlegame.
Foreword by A. Beliavsky. — 1st. English ed., Paperbound.
Intelinvest Co. 1995, (Chess Academy® Series), 232 pages.

ISBN 5-7707-5822-8

Contents

About the authors 4
Foreword 5
Code system 6
The main principles of typical middlegame positions with the isolated d-pawn 7
Introduction 8
Subject: An attack on the king with an advance of the f-pawn ... 12
Subject: An attack on the king by rook transfer along the third (sixth) rank 17
Subject: An attack on the king with a transfer of the queen to the kingside 24
Subject: An attack on the king by the advance of the flank pawns 33
Subject: A combined attack on the king 36
Subject: Activity development. Exploiting weak flank pawns 45
Subject: Activity development. Space seizure 48
Subject: Activity development. Capturing open files 56
Subject: Development of activity in the centre 62
Subject: Transition into the endgame by an exchange of queens .. 64
Subject: A transition into the ending by exchanging minor pieces 68
Subject: An isolated pawn in the ending 90
Subject: Blockade of an isolated pawn. Control of the blockade square 109
Subject: Blockade of an isolated pawn by a piece 121
Subject: Activity development on the queenside 126
Subject: Pawn structure transformation. Pawn breakthrough 129
Subject: Pawn structure transformation. Fixing backward pawns 145
Subject: Pawn structure transforming. Creating hanging pawns 156
Subject: Transforming pawn structure by exchanging pieces in the centre 177
Subject: Transforming pawn structure after the K:e6 (e3) move 199
Subject: Unconventional strategical ideas 212
Subject The isolated black d-pawn, emerging from the French Defence 224

ABOUT THE AUTHORS

Adrian Mikhalchishin (born 1954)

International Grandmaster (since 1978).
One of Anatoly Karpovs trainers (1980-85). Trainer of Alexander Beliavsky. Trainer of USSR national team (1989-90).
Winner of international tournaments: Rome (1977), Vrnjacka Banja (1978), Copenhagen (1980), Eeklo (1991), Sas van Gent (1990), Brno (1992). Soviet Young master champion (1977). Member of the Ukrainian Olympic team in Manila (1992).

Yaroslaw Srokowski (born 1961)

International Master (since 1992).
Trainer of GM Marta Litinskya, GM Svetlana Matveeva, GM Katia Borulia, IM Andrey Maximenko.
Awarded coach of Ukraine.
He was awarded the M. Tchigorin's Medal for outstanding achievements in the training of chessplayers.

Vitaly Braslavsky (born 1964)

President of Intelinvest Co. Ltd., Editor-in-chief of the «Chess Academy®» book series.
Chief scientific interest is computerized testing and improvement of chessplayers' technique and tactical skills. Author of the Chess Academy® Tutorial Program (in cooperation with Nick Gritsiuk) and the Chess Academy® Database (in cooperation with Nick Gritsiuk and Eugen Lesko).

«He who is afraid of an isolated pawn should not play chess.»
Grandmaster S. Tarrasch

Foreword

The perfection of a chessplayer's skill is a fascinating and very complex creative process, which has some laws of its own. What is the best way to study and train for chess? What is of the utmost importance in the preparation for competitions? What information, gained from chess literature, is of real value and improves skill, and what is comparatively useless? Any player seeking to improve his performance has to face these problems; he must realize his shortcomings and find the most effective means to eliminate them.

The first stage of a chessplayer's education is a study of the rules of the game and practical acquaintance with the basics of chess tactics and strategy. Further improvement depends on a player's ability to absorb and comprehend new information, in order to use it effectively in the game.

Which part of chess wisdom should be mastered first of all, and in what manner? Using our experience, we can suppose that a deep understanding of but one strategic problem is preferable to superficial acquaintance with many such problems.

This book is devoted to one of the most important strategic problems of the middlegame — playing in various typical positions with an isolated queen pawn. The complexity of dealing with such positions usually arises from the necessity to determine whether the isolated pawn is an advantage or a deficiency. The strength of an isolated pawn in dynamics and its weakness in statics are illustrated by more then two hundred carefully selected and annotated games of reknowned chessplayers. Careful study of these examples will provide readers with solid theoretical knowledge which may be of great value in their own practice.

A. Beliavsky
International Grandmaster

CODE SYSTEM

⩲	White stands slightly better
⩱	Black stands slightly better
±	White stands better
∓	Black stands better
+-	White has a decisive advantage
-+	Black has a decisive advantage
=	balanced position
∞	unclear position
!	good move
!!	excellent move
?	bad move
??	blunder
!?	interesting move
?!	dubious move
□	only move
▷	intending to
↑	attack
⇅	counter play
#	checkmate
×	weak point

THE MAIN PRINCIPLES OF TYPICAL MIDDLEGAME POSITIONS WITH THE ISOLATED D-PAWN

1. *A player with an isolated pawn ought to strive for an advantage in the efficient deployment of his pieces and coordination of their attacking actions.*

2. *The attacking player ought to make the most of his superior development in order to concentrate his pieces on the key sector at the crucial moment.*

3. *A player with an isolated pawn usually strives to attack, avoiding simplifications if possible.*

4. *Opening the game usually favours the player who enjoys superiority in the mobilization of his pieces.*

5. *If a player with an isolated pawn enjoys development advantage then a pawn breakthrough may be expedient.*

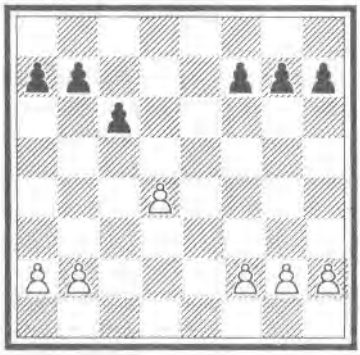
6. *One of the main strategic plans in such standard situations is a struggle for control over the square in front of the isolated pawn.*

7. *The weakness of an isolated pawn is usually felt in simple, cool positions lacking rich combinatorial possibilities.*

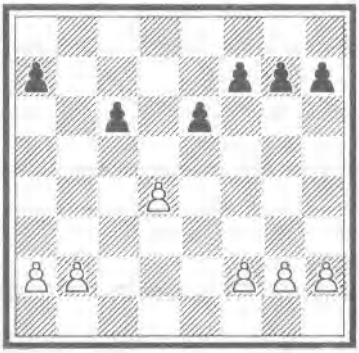
8. *The defending player often loses not because of a single false move, but because he lacks a well thought-out defence plan.*

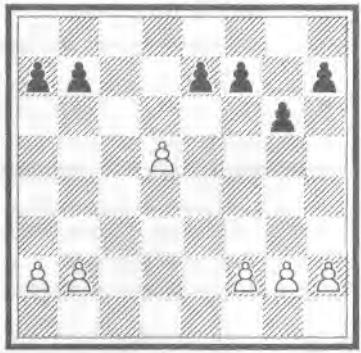
Introduction

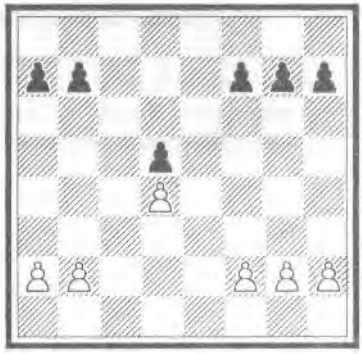
Standard middlegame positions with the isolated d-pawn are characterized by the next pawn structure (maybe with a change of the pieces' colour):



Development of events in such positions often leads to transformation of pawn structure:







Standard positions with the isolated d-pawn can appear in different variants of the popular openings:

Queen's Gambit, Tarrash Defence: 1.♙d2-d4 ♙d7-d5 2.♙c2-c4 ♙e7-e6 3.♘b1-c3 ♙c7-c5 4.♙c4:d5 ♙e6:d5 5.♘g1-f3 ♘b8-c6 6.♙g2-g3 ♘g8-f6 7.♗f1-g2 ♗f8-e7 8.0-0 0-0 9.♙d4:c5 ♙c7:c5

Queen's Gambit, Tarrash Defence Improved: 1.♙d2-d4 ♙d7-d5 2.♙c2-c4 ♙e7-e6 3.♘b1-c3 ♘g8-f6 4.♘g1-f3 ♙c7-c5 5.♙c4:d5 ♘f6:d5 6.♙e2-e3 ♘b8-c6 7.♗f1-d3 ♙c5:d4 8.♙e3:d4 . . .

Queen's Gambit, Orthodox Defence: 1.♙d2-d4 ♙d7-d5 2.♙c2-c4 ♙e7-e6 3.♘b1-c3 ♘g8-f6 4.♗c1-g5 ♗f8-e7 5.♘g1-f3 0-0 6.♙e2-e3 ♘b8-d7 7.♗f1-d3 ♙d5:c4 8.♗d3:c4 ♙c7-c5 9.0-0 ♙c5:d4 10.♙e3:d4 . . .

Queen's Gambit, Capablanca System: 1.♙d2-d4 ♙d7-d5 2.♙c2-c4 ♙e7-e6 3.♘b1-c3 ♘g8-f6 4.♗c1-g5 ♗f8-e7 5.♘g1-f3 0-0 6.♙e2-e3 ♘b8-d7 7.♖a1-c1 ♙c7-c6 8.♗f1-d3 ♙d5:c4 9.♗d3:c4 ♘f6-d5 10.♗g5:e7 ♕d8:e7 11.0-0 ♘d5:c3 12.♖c1:c3 ♙e6-e5 13.♕d1-c2 ♙e5:d4 14.♙e3:d4 . . .

Queen's Gambit Accepted: 1.♙d2-d4 ♙d7-d5 2.♙c2-c4 ♙d5:c4 3.♘g1-f3 ♘g8-f6 4.♙e2-e3 ♙e7-e6 5.♗f1:c4 ♙c7-c5 6.0-0 ♘b8-c6 7.♕d1-e2 ♙c5:d4 8.♖f1-d1 ♗f8-e7 9.♙e3:d4 . . .

or 1.♙d2-d4 ♙d7-d5 2.♙c2-c4 ♙d5:c4 3.♘b1-c3 ♙e7-e5 4.♙e2-e3 ♙e5:d4 5.♙e3:d4 . . .

Nimzovitch Defence: 1.♙d2-d4 ♘g8-f6 2.♙c2-c4 ♙e7-e6 3.♘b1-c3 ♗f8-b4 4.♙e2-e3 0-0 5.♗f1-d3 ♙d7-d5 6.♘g1-f3 ♙c7-c5 7.0-0 ♘b8-c6 8.♙a2-a3 ♙c5:d4 9.♙e3:d4 ♙d5:c4 10.♗d3:c4 . . .

Sicilian Defence: 1.♙e2-e4 ♙c7-c5 2.♙c2-c3 ♙d7-d5 3.♙e4:d5 ♕d8:d5 4.♙d2-d4 ♙e7-e6 5.♘g1-f3 ♘g8-f6 6.♗f1-d3 ♗f8-e7 7.0-0 0-0 8.♕d1-e2 ♙c5:d4 9.♙c3:d4 . . .

Caro-Kann Defence: 1.♙e2-e4 ♙c7-c6 2.♙d2-d4 ♙d7-d5 3.♙e4:d5 ♙c6:d5 4.♙c2-c4 ♙e7-e6 5.♘b1-c3 ♘g8-f6 6.♘g1-f3 ♗f8-e7 7.♙c4:d5 ♘f6:d5

French Defence: 1.♙e2-e4 ♙e7-e6 2.♙d2-d4 ♙d7-d5 3.♘b1-d2 ♙c7-c5 4.♙e4:d5 ♙e6:d5 5.♗f1-b5+ ♘b8-c6 6.♘g1-f3 ♗f8-d6 7.♙d4:c5 ♗d6:c5

Russian Game: 1.♙e2-e4 ♙e7-e5 2.♘g1-f3 ♘g8-f6 3.♘f3:e5 ♙d7-d6 4.♘e5-f3 ♘f6:e4 5.♙d2-d4 ♙d6-d5 6.♗f1-d3 ♗f8-e7 7.0-0 ♘b8-c6 8.♖f1-e1 ♗c8-g4 9.♙c2-c4 ♘e4-f6 10.♘b1-c3 0-0 11.♙c4:d5 ♘f6:d5

Italian Game: 1.♙e2-c4 ♙e7-e5 2.♘g1-f3 ♘b8-c6 3.♗f1-c4 ♗f8-c5 4.♙c2-c3 ♘g8-f6 5.♙d2-d4 ♙e5:d4 6.♙c3:d4 ♗c5-b4+ 7.♗c1-d2 ♗b4:d2+ 8.♘b1:d2 ♙d7-d5 9.♙e4:d5 ♘f6:d5

Subject: An attack on the king with an advance of the f-pawn

No.1
Botvinnik — Vidmar
Nottingham, 1936

All examples on the subject of realization of pawn advance ♙f2-f4-f5 have a common consistency: as a rule the black knight on the queenside doesn't control the e5 and d4 squares, and White can play ♘e5 with the following ♙f2-f4-f5, if the white rook occupies the f1 square. White combines chances to attack with the possibility of transferring his queen to the kingside and extending the sphere of influence of the rook at f1 and the bishop at b3.

1. ♕d3-h3! **♗c6-d5**
2. ♘c3:d5 **♘b4:d5?**

A mistake giving White a chance to include the rook at f1 into play after opening the f-file. 2...♘f:d5 3.♗c1 ♖c8, would have been stronger giving White only a slight advantage.

3. ♙f2-f4! . . .

Now Black cannot prevent opening the f-file.

3. . . . **♖a8-c8**

If 3...♙g6, then 4.♗h6 ♖e8 5.♗a4 +-. After 3...♘e4 4.♘:f7! ♔:f7 (4...♖:f7 5.♕:e6+-) 5.♖de1!+-.

4. ♙f4-f5 **♙e6:f5?**

Evidently this was a decisive mistake, 4...♕d6 5.♙:e6 ♙:e6 6.♘c4 ♕c6 7.♖fe1 ± was more persistent.

5. **♖f1:f5** **♕d8-d6**

If 5...♖c7, then 6.♖df1 ♘b6 (6...♙a6 7.♘:f7 ♖:f7 8.♗:d5 ♘:d5 9.♖:f7 ♗:g5 10.♕e6! +-) 7.♕h4 ♘bd5 8.♘:f7 ♖:f7 9.♗:d5 ♘:d5 10.♖:f7 ♗:g5 11.♕:g5 +-.

6.	**♘e5:f7!**	**♖f8:f7**
7.	**♗g5:f6**	**♗e7:f6**

7...♘:f6 8.♖:f6 ♗:f6 9.♕:c8+ +-.

8.	**♖f5:d5**	**♕d6-c6**
9.	**♖d5-d6**	**♕c6-e8**
10.	**♖d6-d7**	

Black resigned.

No.2

Botvinnik — Tolush

Moscow, 1965

White has the advantage of two bishops. After ♙h7-h6 Black threatens to force the bishop out of its active position at g5. White strives to use a temporary activity advantage to seize the initiative.

1.	**♙f2-f4!**	**♙h7-h6**
2.	**♙f4-f5!**	**♙e6:f5**
3.	**♗g5:f6**	**♕d8:f6**
4.	**♖f1:f5**	**♘g6-f4?**

4...♕c6!? 5.♙d5 (5.♖f2!? ±) ♕c5+ 6.♔h1 ±. Advantage is transferred: White exchanged one bishop for pressure on the f7 pawn and created an advanced d-pawn.

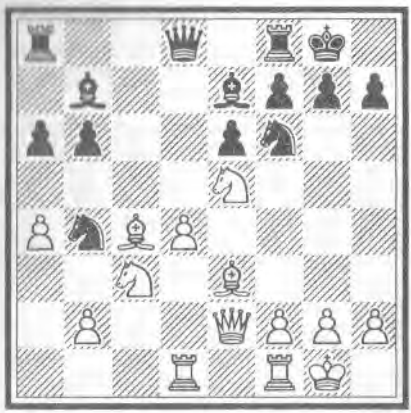
5.	**♖f5:f6**	**♘f4:d3**
6.	**♖f6:f7!**	**♘d3:b2**

6...♖:f7 7.♖:d3 +-.

7.	**♖f7:f8++**	**♔g8:f8**
8.	**♖d1-f1+**	**♔f8-e8**
9.	**♗c4-e6+-**	**♖a8-d8**
10.	**♙d4-d5**	**♗b7-c8**
11.	**♖f1-f7**	**♗c8:e6**
12.	**♙d5:e6**	**♖d8-d6**
13.	**♖f7:g7**	**♖d6:e6**
14.	**♖g7:a7**	**♘b2-d3**
15.	**♙h2-h3**	**♘d3-f4**
16.	**♖a7-a4**	**♘f4-e2+**
17.	**♘c3:e2**	**♖e6:e2**
18.	**♖a4-a7+-**	

In a rook ending White has a great advantage and wins in a few moves.

No.3
Lerner — Kharitonov
Lvov, 1984



Black has finished his development and has reliable control over the d5 square. However the possibility of pawn manoeuvre ♙f2-f4-f5 gives White better chances.

1. ♙f2-f4! **♘b4-d5**
2. ♙f4-f5 **♕d8-d6**

Black shouldn't continue ♙e6:f5, because it activates the f1 rook and White's lightsquare bishop. Therefore he tries to keep the e6 square.

3. ♗e3-g5!± . . .

White increases pressure on Black's position. It's not easy to find a satisfactory plan of defence for Black. In some variations the weakness of the a6 pawn is felt. Black strives to decrease White's pressure by exchanging minor pieces.

3. . . . **♘d5:c3**

3...♖fe8 deserved attention, White could continue 4.♖d3 (▷ ♖g3) and 4...♘b4 5.♖g3 ♕:d4+ 6.♔h1 leading to an unclear position..

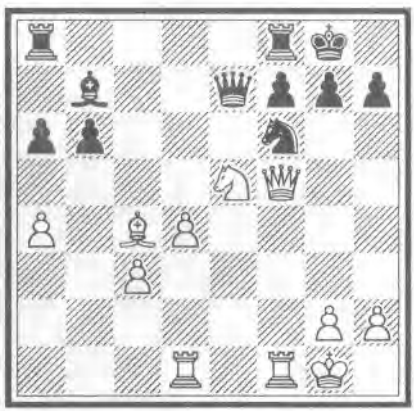
4. ♙b2:c3 **♘f6-e4**
5. ♗g5:e7 **♕d6:e7**
6. ♕e2-g4 . . .

White's pressure doesn't decrease and Black is forced to make positional concessions.

6. . . . **♘e4-f6**

6...♘:c3? 7. ♙f6 +-.

7. ♕g4-h3 **♙e6:f5**
8. ♕h3:f5 . . .



Black cannot neutralize White's strong pressure on the kingside.

8. . . . **♗b7-e4**
9. ♕f5-g5 **♗e4-g6**
10. ♖f1-f3! . . .

10.♘:g6?! ♙h:g6 11.♕:g6 ♕e3+ 12.♔h1 ♕:c3 13.♖:f6 ♕:c4= gives White nothing.

10. . . . **♕e7-c7**
11. ♖f3-h3 **♖f8-e8**
12. ♗c4-b3 . . .

Intending 13.♘:g6.

12. . . .	**♖e8:e5**
13. ♕g5:e5	**♕c7-d7**
14. ♖h3-e3	**♖a8-e8**
15. ♕e5-f4	**♖e8-c8**
16. ♖d1-e1	**♙b6-b5**
17. ♙a4:b5	**♙a6:b5**
18. ♙h2-h3	**♕d7-c6**
19. ♕f4-f3	**♕c6-b6**
20. ♖e3-e5	**♙b5-b4**
21. ♕f3-e3	**♙h7-h6**
22. ♙c3-c4	**♔g8-h7**
23. ♙c4-c5	

Black resigned.

No.4

Neverov — Maksimenko

Kherson, 1989

White has a clear advantage in development. Breaktrough in the centre 1.♙d5 gives White nothing special. For example: 1...♘f:d5 2.♘:d5 ♘:d5 3.♗:d5 ♗:g5 4.♘:g5 ♕:g5 5.♗:b7 ♖b8=.

1. ♘f3-e5! **♗d7-c6**

If 1...0-0, then 2.♕f3 with the following ♕h3 and ♗c2 gives White a dangerous attack.

2. ♙f2-f4! **. . .**

White wants to eliminate the e6 pawn, which will increase the scope of the bishop at b3 and open the f-file for his rooks. Later on the f7 square will need unflagging attention.

2. . . .	**0 - 0**
3. ♙f4-f5	**♙e6:f5**
4. ♖f1:f5±	**♘f6-d5**

Black tries to reduce White's pressure by the exchanges.

5. ♗g5:e7	**♕d8:e7**
6. ♕d1-d3	**♖a8-d8**
7. ♖a1-f1	**. . .**

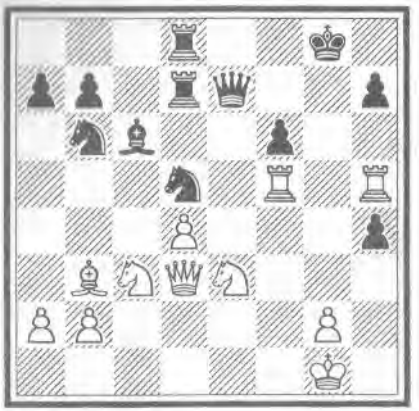
All White's pieces take part in this play.

7. . . .	**♙f7-f6**
8. ♖f5-h5!	**♙g7-g5**
9. ♘e5-g4	**♖d8-d7**
10. ♙h2-h4!	**♙g5:h4**

11.♘g4-e3

The lethal pin.

11. . .	**♖f8-d8**
12. ♖f1-f5	**. . .**



Black resigned.

No.5

Spassky — Nickolaevsky

Kharkov, 1963

How should White continue?

1. ♙f2-f4!	**. . .**

Considering that Black has played his pawn to b6, and plans to switch the bishop from c6 to b7, White has to advance his f-pawn in order to gain maximal advantage.

1. . . .	**♘f6-d5**
2. ♖a1-d1	**♗e7-f6**

2...♙g6 deserved attention, preventing pawn advance f4-f5.

3. ♘c3-e4	**♗c8-b7**

4. ♙f4-f5!	**♙e6:f5**
5. ♖f1:f5	**♘d5:e3**
6. ♘e4:f6+!	**. . .**

6.♕:e3?! ♗:e5 7.♖:e5 ♗d5 =

6. . . .	**♙g7:f6**
7. ♕e2:e3	**♙f6:e5**
8. ♕e3:e5+-	**♙h7-h6**
9. ♖f5-f6	**♔g8-h7**

9...♘d5 10.♕g3+ ♔h7 11.♗d3++-; or 9...♗d5 10.♖:h6 ♙f6 11.♕g3+ ♔f7 12.♖h7+ +-.

10. ♖d1-f1	**. . .**

10.♕f5+ ♔g7 11.♖:f7+ +- is possible.

10. . .	**♗b7-d5**
11. ♕e5-f5+	**♔h7-g8**
12. ♕f5-g4+	**♔g8-h7**
13. ♖f6:h6+	

Black resigned because of the possible 13...♔:h6 14.♖f5 with the threat 15.♖h5#.

Subject: An attack on the king by rook transfer along the third (sixth) rank.

No.6
Keene — Miles
Hastings, 1975-76

White strives to organize a piece attack on the kingside.

1. ♖e1-e3!	**♙g7-g6**

If 1...♘g4, then 2.♗:e7 ♘:e3 3.♗:h7+! +-.

2. ♖e3-g3	**♖a8-c8?!**

Black should have played 2...♘c6! 3.♗h6 ♕:d4 4.♕:d4 ♘:d4 5.♗:f8 ♔:f8, stopping White's attack with minimal losses.

3. ♗g5-h6	**♖f8-e8**
4. ♙a2-a3	**♘b4-c6**

5. ♘e5:g6!	**♙h7:g6**
6. ♗b1:g6	**♙f7:g6**

If 6...♗d6, then 7.♗:f7+ ♔:f7 8.♖g7+ ♔f8 9.♕f3 +-;
If 6...♗f8, then 7.♗c2+ ♔h8 8.♗:f8 ♖:f8 9.♕d2 ♘g8 10.♖h3+ ♔g7 11.♖h7+! ♔f6 12.♙d5 +-.

7. ♕d1-b1	**♘c6-e5**
8. ♙d4:e5	**♘f6-e4**
9. ♘c3:e4	**♔g8-h7**
10. ♘e4-f6+	**♗e7:f6**
11. ♕b1:g6+	**♔h7-h8**
12. ♗h6-g7+	**♗f6:g7**
13. ♕g6:g7#	

No.7

Furman — Keres

Moscow, 1955

Black has reliable control over the blockade square d5, but White can reinforce his position by attaching heavy pieces to the attack on the kingside.

1. ♖d1-d3 . . .

The rook is transferred to h3 or g3 to take part in the attack on the kingside.

1. . . . **♕d8-d6**

Black couldn't prevent the rook's transfer by 1...♘b4 2.♖g3 ♕:d4 because of 3.♘:f7! ♔:f7 (3...♖:f7 4.♕:e6 ♘d5 5.♖d1 ±) 4.♕:e6 and White has a dangerous attack, for example: 4...♔e8 5.♖d1 ♕b6 6.♗e3 ♕c7 7.♖:g7 +-.

2. ♖a1-d1 **♖f8-d8**

3. ♖d3-h3 **♙g7-g6**

If 3...♗e8 4.♘:d5 ♙:d5 (4...♘:d5 5.♗:d5 ♙:d5 6.♘c4 +-) 5.♗c2 ± ♙h6 6.♗:f6 ♗:f6 7.♕d3 ♙g6 8.♘g4 ♙h5 9.♖:h5 ♙:h5 10.♕h7+ ♔f8 11.♘h6 ♕e6 12.♔f1 with the idea 13.♖e1 +-; or 4.♕d3!? ▷ ♕g3-h4 deserved attention too.

4. ♗g5-c1 . . .

The bishop returns to its initial position to let the queen forward, but this plan loses tempo in comparison with 4.♕d3!? ▷♕g3-h4 ±.

4. . . . **♖a8-c8**

5. ♕e2-d2 **♘f6-h5**

Black should play 5...♗f8 6.♕g5 ♗g7 (6...♕b4 7.♗:d5 ♘:d5 8.♘:f7! ♔:f7 9.♖:h7+ ♗g7 10.♕e5 ♖g8 11.♗h6 +-) 7.♕h4 ♘e7 (7...♘h5 8.♘e4 ♕e7 9.♘g5! ♙f6 10.♘:c6 ♖:c6 11.♘e4 ±) 8.♙g4 ♔f8 9.♗g5 ♘eg8 with some chances to defend his position.

6. ♖h3:h5 **♙g6:h5**

7. ♘c3-e4 **♕d6-b4**

8. ♕d2-d3 **♙h5-h4**

Hampering 9.♕g3.

9. ♘e4-g5 **♗e7:g5**

10. ♗c1:g5 ♙f7-f6
11. ♗b3:d5 ♗c6:d5

If 11...♖:d5?, then 12.♗:f6 ♗:a4 13.♕h3! ♖:e5 14.♗:e5 ♗:d1 15.♕:e6+ ♔f8 16.♗d6+ +-.

12. ♗g5:f6 ♖d8-f8

And now after 13.♘g4 Black has nothing better than 13...♖:f6 14.♘:f6+ ♔g7 15.♘:d5 ♙:d5 16.♕f5 +- (16...♕:d4? 17.♕g5+) White has a decisive advantage.

No.8
Benko — Filip
Wijk aan Zee, 1971

1. ♖d1-d3! . . .

The main idea of this move is to transfer the rook to g3 or h3 in order to attack the black king.

1. . . . ♗c8-d7
2. ♖d3-g3 ♔g8-h8

Another way of defence is: 2...♙g6, but after 3.♗h6 ♖e8 will follow 4.♙h4 and 4...♔h8 is impossible because the f7 pawn would be left unprotected.

3. ♖g3-h3 ♗d7-e8

3...♘:c3!? 4.♙:c3 ♗e8 deserved attention, though here White has an advantage.

4. ♘c3:d5! ♙e6:d5
5. ♗c4-d3 ♙g7-g6
6. ♗c1-h6 ♖f8-g8
7. ♖a1-e1 ♗e7-f8
8. ♗h6-g5 ♕d8-d6
9. ♕e2-f3 ♗f8-e7
10. ♕f3-f4 ♕d6-b6
11. ♖e1-e3! +- . . .

Now all the heavy pieces have been transferred to the kingside.

11. . .	**♙h7-h5**
12. ♙a4-a5!	**♕b6-d8**
13. ♙g2-g4	**♖a8-c8**
14. ♙g4:h5	**♖c8-c1+**
15. ♔g1-g2	**♙g6:h5**
16. ♖e3-g3!	

Black resigned.

No.9

Polugaevsky — Lutikov

Sverdlovsk, 1958

Black has reliable control over the d5 point. The main defect of Black's position is the location of the bishop at e8, which breaks the coordination of Black's pieces. The passive position of Black's pieces allows White to begin an attack on the kingside by transferring the rook to g3 or h3.

1. ♖d1-d3!	**♖a8-c8**

If 1...♘b4, then 2.♖g3 and 2...♕:d4 is impossible because of 3.♗h6 +-.

2. ♖d3-g3	**♔g8-h8**
3. ♗c1-g5	**♘d5-b4**
4. ♖a1-d1	**♖c8-c7**

If 4...♘fd5?!, then 5.♘:d5 ♘:d5 6.♗:d5 ♗:g5 7.♗:b7 ±.

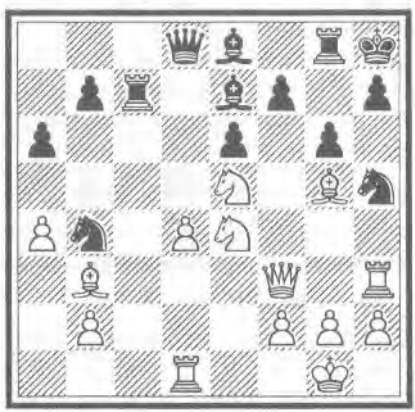
After 4...♘g8?! 5.♗:e7 ♕:e7 6.♙d5! ♙:d5 7.♗:d5 White has a strong attack.

5. ♖g3-h3	**♙g7-g6?**

5...♘fd5 was bad because of 6.♕h5, 5...♗c6!? would have been better, for example 6.♕e3 (6.♗:e6 is unsufficient in view of 6...♙:e6 7.♘g6+ ♔g8 8.♕:e6+ ♖f7) 6...♘g8 7.♗f4 ±.

6. ♕e2-f3	**♖f8-g8**
7. ♘c3-e4	**♘f6-h5**

7...♘:e4? 8.♖:h7+ ♔:h7 9.♕h3+ ♔g7 10.♕h6 #.



8. ♕f3:f7!+-	**. . .**

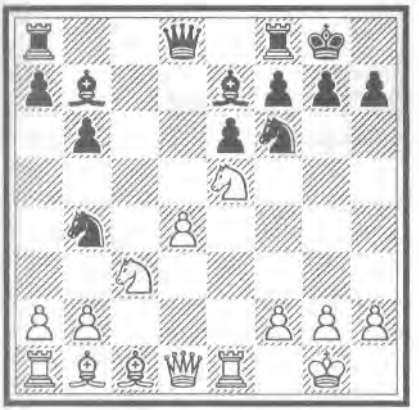
A decisive attack. After 8...♗:f7 follows 9.♘:f7+ ♔g7 10.♘:d8 +-.

8. . . .	**♗e8-c6**
9. ♕f7:e6	**♖g8-g7**
10. ♙d4-d5	**♗c6-d7**
11. ♗g5:e7	**♖g7:e7**

12.	**♕e6-d6**	**♕d8-e8**
13.	**♘e4-f6**	**♘h5:f6**
14.	**♕d6:f6+**	**♖e7-g7**
15.	**♙d5-d6**	

White won.

No.10
Botvinnik — Flohr
Groningen, 1946



1. ♖e1-e3! . . .

White transfers his rook to the kingside, where it puts strong pressure on the black king's castling position — this is typical for such situations.

1. . . . ♘b4-d5

1...♘c6?! 2.♖h3 ♕:d4 3.♗:h7 + ♘:h7 4.♕h5 +-.

2. ♖e3-h3 ♙g7-g6

2...♙h6? 3.♗:h6! ♙:h6 4.♕d2 +-.

3. ♗c1-h6?! . . .

After 3.♕d2! ♖e8 4.♘e4! ♘:e4?! (4...♗f8⅔) 5.♗:e4 ♗f8 6.♘:f7! ♔:f7 7.♖:h7+ ♗g7 8.♕h6 ♕f6 9.♗g5 ♕:d4 10.♕:g6+ ♔f8 11.♗h6 +- White's attack becomes dangerous.

3.	**. . .**	**♖f8-e8**
4.	**♕d1-d2**	**♖a8-c8**
5.	**♗b1-d3**	**♙a7-a6**
6.	**♖a1-e1**	**♙b6-b5**

Black starts an attack on the c3 and d4 squares, and believes in the strength of his defensive bastions.

7. ♖h3-g3 . . .

Intending 8.♗:g6 ♙h:g6 9.♖:g6+ ♙f:g6 10.♕g5 +-.

7.	**. . .**	**♘f6-h5□**
8.	**♖g3-h3**	**. . .**

8.♗:g6? ♙h:g6 9.♖:g6+ ♙:g6 10.♕c2 ♘df4 -+.

8.	**. . .**	**♘h5-f6**
9.	**♗d3-b1**	**. . .**

White doesn't accept a draw and prefers to develop his attack.

9. . . .	**♖c8-c7**
10. ♖h3-g3	**♘f6-h5**
11. ♖g3-h3	**♘h5-f6**
12. ♕d2-e2	**♘d5:c3**
13. ♙b2:c3	**♙b5-b4**
14. ♖h3-g3	**♖c7:c3**
15. ♘e5:f7	**♕d8-d5**

16. ♘f7-e5? . . .

16.♖g5 ♕c4 17.♗:g6! ♙:g6 18.♖:g6+ ♔:f7 19.♖g7+ ♔f8 20.♖g3+ = should lead to draw.

16. . . .	**♖c3:g3**
17. ♙f2:g3	**♕d5:d4+**
18. ♔g1-h1	**♗e7-d6**
19. ♗h6-f4	. . .

And now 19...♘d5! 20.♖d1 ♕c5∓ leads to Black's advantage.

No.11

Karpov — Yusupov

London, 1989

8-th game

White's pieces are mobilized, the bishop at b3 shows special activity, it controls the d5 square and covers the f7 pawn. The rook can move from c3 to g3 and cause trouble for the black king.

How should White continue?

1. ♘f3-e5! **♘f6-d5?!**

The knight keeps a strategically important point at d5 and blocks the scope of the bishop at b3, but moves away from the castling position. White exploits this immediately.

Black should have strived for an exchange of the lightsquare bishops: 1...♗e6 2.♗:e6 ♙:e6 3.♖g3! (3.♕b3!? ♕:d4 4.♕:e6+ ♔h7

5.♕f5+) and take some pains to equalize the position completely.

2. ♖c3-g3 . . .

Aiming at the black king, no doubt.

2. . . . ♗c8-f5

If 2...♗e6, then 3.♕d2 ♗f5 4.♗:d5 ♙:d5 5.♕f4 ♗e4 6.♙f3 ♗h7 7.♕g4 ♙g5 8.♙f4 ♙f6 9.♙:g5 ♙h:g5 10.♙h4 ±.

3. ♕d1-h5 ♗f5-h7
4. ♕h5-g4 . . .

White has an advantage, his attack on the kingside develops swiftly.

4. . . . ♙g7-g5

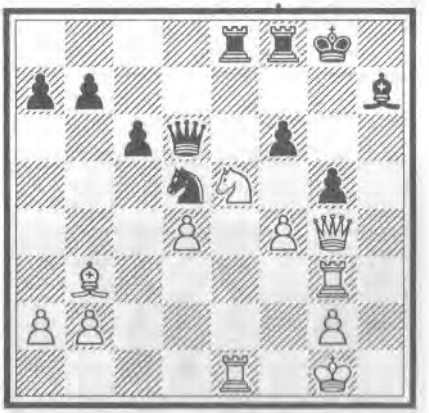
4...♙g6?! 5. ♙h4±.

5. ♙h2-h4 ♙f7-f6
6. ♙h4:g5 ♙h6:g5

6...♙f:g5 7.♙f4±.

7. ♙f2-f4 ♖a8-e8

If 7...♔h8, then 8.♙:g5 ♙:e5 9.♙g6 ♕:g6 10.♕:g6 ♗:g6 11.♖:g6 ♙:d4□ 12.♖e4 ♖f7 13.♗:d5 ♙:d5 14.♖h4+ ♖h7 15.♖:d4±.



8. ♙f4:g5! ♙f6:e5

If 8...♗f5, then 9.♙:f6+! ♗:g4 10.♖:g4+ ♔h8 11.♘f7+ ♖:f7 12.♖:e8+ ♖f8 13.♙f7 ♘f6 14.♖:f8 ♕:f8 15.♖g8+ +-.

9. ♙g5-g6 ♗h7:g6
10. ♙d4:e5 ♕d6-e6
11. ♗b3:d5 ♙c6:d5
12. ♕g4:g6+ ♕e6:g6
13. ♖g3:g6+ ♔g8-h7
14. ♖g6-d6 ♖e8-c8
15. ♖e1-e3 ♖c8-c2
16. ♖d6-d7+ ♔h7-g6
17. ♖d7:b7 ♖f8-e8
18. ♙a2-a3

And White soon wins.

Subject: An attack on the king with a transfer of the queen to the kingside.

No.12
Kavalek — Pritchett
Haifa, 1976

This position should be estimated as favourable for White because of a possible transfer of the white queen to the kingside, where it will exert strong pressure on the black king's position.

1.	**♕d1-d3!**	**♗d7-c6**
2.	**♕d3-h3!**	**♕d8-d6**
3.	**♗c1-g5**	. . .

It was played with the threat of 4.♘:d5 and 5.♗:f6.

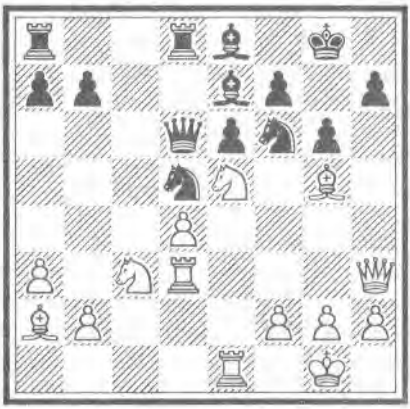
3.	. . .	**♙g7-g6**

3... ♙h6? 4.♗:h6!+-.

4.	**♗b1-a2!**	. . .

The bishop's move solves two problems: clearing a way for the rook at a1, striving to support White's attack, and establishing control over the important central d5 square along the diagonal a2-g8.

4.	. . .	**♖f8-d8**
5.	**♖a1-d1**	**♗c6-e8**
6.	**♖d1-d3**	. . .



White threatens to double heavy pieces on the h-file by 7.♕h4 and 8.♖h3.

6.	. . .	**♘d5:c3**
7.	**♙b2:c3**	**♘f6-d5**

7...♕:a3? 8.♗:e6! ♙:e6 9.♕:e6+ ♔g7 10.♘c4 +-.

8.	**♗a2:d5**	**♗e7:g5**

8...♙:d5 9.♘:f7! ♗:f7 10.♗:e7 +-.

9.	**♗d5:b7**	**♖a8-b8**
10.	**♕h3-f3**	**♕d6-c7**
11.	**♗b7-c6**	**♙f7-f6**
12.	**♗c6:e8**	**♙f6:e5**

13. ♕f3-g4 **♕c7-c4**

It was better to play 13...♖:e8±.

14. ♗e8:g6 **♙h7:g6**
15. ♖d3-g3 **♗g5-f4**
16. ♕g4:g6+

Black resigned.

No.13
Velimirovic — Rukavina
Novi Sad, 1975

The black king's position is slightly weakened by the move ♙g7-g6.

This creates prerequisites for an attack on the king.

1. ♘c3-e4 **♕d6-c7**
2. ♙a2-a3 . . .

It is important to gain control over the b4 square, thus limiting the mobility of black knights.

2. . . . **♗c8-d7**

3. ♕c2-d2!! . . .

This is a brilliant decision! The queen is transferred to the kingside, and with the support of minor pieces, will exert heavy pressure on the black king.

3. . . . **♖f8-e8**
4. ♕d2-h6 **♗e7-f8**
5. ♕h6-h4 **♘c6-e7**

In reply to 5...♗g7, 6.♗c4! ♘ce7 7.♘e5 ♗:e5 8.♙:e5 ♕:e5 9.♗:d5 ♘:d5 10.♗g5 ± will follow.

6. ♘e4-g5 **♙h7-h6**
7. ♘g5-h3 **♔g8-h7**
8. ♘f3-e5+- . . .

White has a decisive advantage.

No.14
Gavrikov — Hulak
Moscow, 1990

The white queen on the kingside with the support of other pieces can put heavy pressure on the position of the black king. It should be noted that while Black has no control over the blockade d5 square, White has the possibility of a breakthrough in the centre.

1.	**♕f3-g3**	**♖a7-c7**
2.	**♗c1-h6**	**♘f6-e8**

By retreat of the knight to the last rank, the control of the point d5 is lost, and this is immediately used by White. Another retreat of the knight, for example 2...♘h5?! 3.♕g4 ♙f6 4.♗:e6+ ♔h8 5.♗:c8 ♙:e5 6.♕:h5 ♕:c8 7.♙d5! ♙:h6 8.♙d6 ♗:d6 9.♖:d6±, also led to White's advantage.

3.	**♙d4-d5**	**. . .**

3.	**. . .**	**♖c7:c4**

Black's attempt to intercept an initiative in complications is groundless and doomed, for example 3...♗h4 4.♙:e6 ♕:d1! (4...♗:e6 5.♖:d8 ♗:g3 6.♙h:g3 ♗:c4 7.♗e3 ±) 5.♖:d1 ♗:g3 6.♙:f7+ ♔h8 (6...♖f:f7 7.♗:f7+ ♖:f7 8.♘:f7 ♔:f7 9.♙h:g3 ♙:h6 10.♖d8 ♗e6 11.♖b8 ±) 7.♙h:g3 ♘f6 8.♗e3 ♖e7 9.♙f4 ♗e6 10.♗:b6 ♗:c4 11.♗c5! ±;
3...♗d6!? 4.♙:e6 ♗:e6 5.♗:e6 ♙:e6 6.♘e4 ♗:e5 7.♕:e5 ♕e7 ± (Gavrikov).

4.	**♘e5:c4**	**♗e7-h4**
5.	**♕g3-b8**	**♙g7:h6**
6.	**♘c4:b6**	**♕d8-c7**

6...♕d6 7.♕:d6 ♘:d6 8.♖d4 ♘c2 9.♖g4! ♗g5 10.♖c1 ♙f5 11.♖:g5! ♙:g5 12.♖:c2 ± (Gavrikov).

7.	**♕b8:c7**	**♘e8:c7**
8.	**♖d1-d4**	**♘b4-c2**
9.	**♖d4-g4+**	**♗h4-g5**
10.	**♖a1-c1**	**♙f7-f5**

10...♘d4 11.♙d6 ♘d5 12.♘c:d5 ♘e2+ 13.♔f1 ♘:c1 14.♘e7+ ♔h8 15.♘b:c8 +-.

11.♖g4:g5+	**♙h6:g5**
12.♖c1:c2	**♗c8-b7**
13.♙d5-d6	**♘c7-a8**
14.♘b6-c4	**♖f8-c8**
15.♖c2-d2	**♔g8-g7**
16.♙g2-g3	**♙g5-g4**
17.♔g1-f1	**♔g7-f6**
18.♔f1-e2	**♗b7-c6**
19.♙b2-b3	**♗c6-d7**
20.♖d2-d3	**♙h7-h5**
21.♔e2-e3	**♙h5-h4**
22.♔e3-d4	**♖c8-c6**
23.♙a4-a5	**♙h4-h3**
24.♙f2-f4	**♖c6-c8**
25.♘c4-e5	**♖c8-d8**
26.♘e5:d7+	**♖d8:d7**
27.♔d4-c5	

Black resigned.

No.15

Kramling P. — Jackson

1987

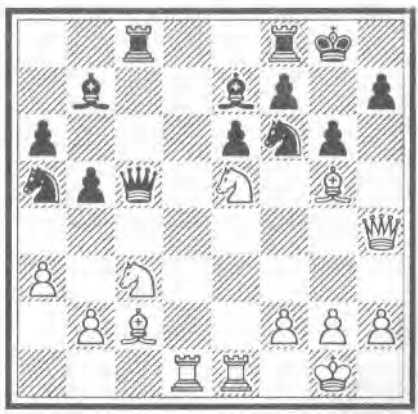
1. ♕d3-h3! . . .

White's pieces are aimed at attacking Black's king, and a transfer of the queen to the kingside makes their attack very dangerous. Black should reduce White's attack potential by exchanging pieces.

1. . . . ♕d8:d4

The knight at a5 should be brought into play by 1...♘c6!? 2.♗g5 ♘:d4 3.♖ad1 ♘:c2 4.♖:d8 ♖f:d8. Now equal play is caused by 5.♘:f7 ♔:f7 6.♕:e6+ ♔g6 7.♕:e7 ♖e8 8.♗:f6 ♖:e7 9.♖:e7 ♙:f6 10.♖:b7 ♘:a3 =

2. ♗c1-g5!	**♙g7-g6**
3. ♖a1-d1!	**♕d4-c5**
4. ♕h3-h4!±	. . .



4. . . .	**♘f6-d5**
5. ♘e5-d7	**♗e7:g5**
6. ♕h4:g5	**♕c5-e7**
7. ♖d1:d5	. . .

Simple continuation of 7.♕:e7 ♘:e7 8.♘:f8± is enough for success.

7.	. . .	**♙f7-f6**
8.	**♕g5-d2**	**♘a5-c4**
9.	**♕d2-d4**	**♖f8-f7**
10.	**♕d4-a7**	**♙e6:d5**
11.	**♖e1:e7**	**♖f7:e7**
12.	**♘d7:f6+**	**♔g8-f7**
13.	**♙h2-h3**	

White has realized his advantage.

No.16
Dlugi — Oll
Moscow, 1989

Black was careless enough to play ♘a5 and cause temporary decentralization.

1.	**♘f3-e5**	**♖a8-c8**

Intending 2...♘c4.

2.	**♕d1-d3**	**♕d8-c7**

Black consistently realizes the idea involving ♘c4. 2...♘c6 is better, though after 3.♙f4 White's position is preferable.

3.	**♗e3-g5**	. . .

By continuing 3.♗f4! White should put Black into a hot situation. The unpleasant 4.♘g4 threatens. If 3...♕d8, then 4.♗g5 ♙g6 □ 5.♗h6 ♖e8 6.♕h3! (creating an unpleasant threat 7.♘:f7!) 6...♕d6 7.♗a4 ♘c6 8.♘b5 ♕d5 9.♘:f7! ♔:f7 10.♗b3 +-.

3.	. . .	**♙g7-g6**
4.	**♕d3-h3**	**♘f6-d5**
5.	**♗g5-h6**	**♘d5:c3**
6.	**♗h6:f8**	**♗e7:f8**
7.	**♙b2:c3**	**♕c7:c3**
8.	**♗c2-d3**	**♕c3:d4**

8...♘b3!? 9.♖ad1 ♘:d4 10.♗:g6 ♕:h3 (10...♙h:g6!? 11.♕:c3 ♖:c3 12.♖:d4 ♗d5 ↑↓) 11.♗:f7+ ♔g7 12.♙:h3 ♗c5 ±.

8...♖c7!? was interesting, strengthening the f7 square.

9.	**♘e5:f7!**	**♔g8:f7**

10.	**♖a1-d1**	**♕d4-f6**
11.	**♕h3:h7+**	**♗f8-g7**
12.	**♗d3:g6+**	**♔f7-e7**
13.	**♗g6-f5**	**♖c8-c6**
14.	**♖e1-e3**	**♕f6-h6**
15.	**♕h7-g8**	**♗g7-f8**
16.	**♗f5-e4**	**♖c6-c4**
17.	**♗e4-g6**	

Black resigned.

No.17

Khasin — Smit

Corr., 1978-80

1. ♕d1-d3! . . .

Intending 2.♙d5 ♙:d5 3.♗g5 ♙g6 4.♖:e7 +-.

1.	. . .	**♙g7-g6□**
2.	**♗c1-h6**	**♖f8-e8**
3.	**♖a1-d1**	. . .

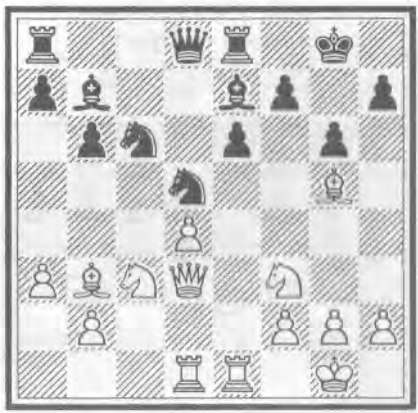
Black feels some unpleasant pressure from the white pieces in the centre and on the kingside.

3.	. . .	**♗e7-f8**
4.	**♗h6-g5**	**♗f8-e7**

5. ♗c2-b3! . . .

The bishop is more useful on the diagonal a2-g8. 6.♗:f6 ♗:f6 7.♙d5! threatens.

5. . . . **♘f6-d5**



6. ♘c3-e4! . . .

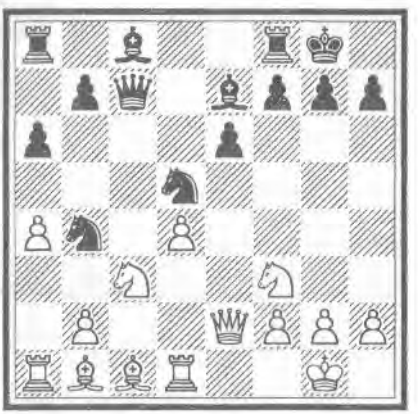
▷7.♗:d5 ♙:d5 8.♘f6+ ♗:f6 9.♖:e8+ ♕:e8 10.♗:f6 ±; or 6.♗:d5!? ♗:g5 7.♗:c6 ♗:c6 8.♙d5 ♙:d5 9.♖:e8+ ♗:e8 10.♘:g5 ♕:g5 11.♕d4! ♗c6 ± (Velimirovic — Böhm, Amsterdam, 1976).

6.	. . .	**♗e7:g5**
7.	**♘f3:g5**	**♙h7-h6**
8.	**♕d3-f3!±**	**♙h6:g5**
9.	**♗b3:d5**	**♙f7-f5**
10.	**♗d5:e6+!**	**♖e8:e6**
11.	**♕f3-b3**	**♙f5:e4**
12.	**♕b3:e6+**	**♔g8-g7**
13.	**♕e6:e4+-**	**♕d8-f6**
14.	**♙d4-d5**	**♘c6-d8**
15.	**♖d1-d3**	**♙g5-g4**
16.	**♕e4:g4**	**♘d8-f7**
17.	**♖d3-f3**	**♗b7-c8**

18. ♖f3:f6

Black resigned. For example, 18...♗:g4 19.♖f4 ♗h5 20.♖h4±, ▷ ♙g4.

No.18
Lobron — Djuric
Adelaida, 1986-87



The unprotected Black kingside strikes the eye and forces White to search for active continuations.

1. ♘f3-e5! . . .

Ignoring the threat of capture on c3, for example 1...♘:c3? 2.♙:c3 ♕:c3 3.♖a3! ♕c7 4.♗:h7+ ♔:h7 5.♕h5+ ♔g8 6.♖h3 +-.

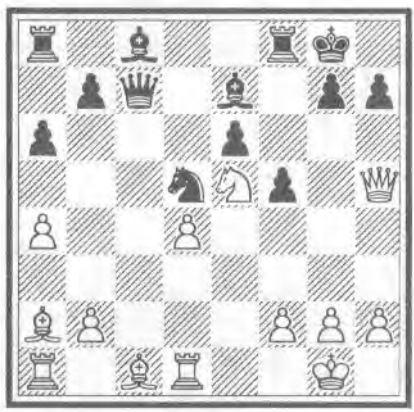
1. . . . **♙f7-f6**

If 1...♗d7, then after 2.♖a3! ♘f6 3.♘e4 ♘bd5 4.♖h3 White will succeed in transferring the rook to the kingside, and in such positions it gives the possibility of a strong attack.

2. ♕e2-h5 **♙f6-f5**

White's activity on the kingside brought its fruit. Black has weakened his pawn disposition while defending from the growing White threats. Now White is transferring his attack to the centre, where Black is weak.

3. ♘c3:d5 **♘b4:d5**
4. ♗b1-a2! . . .



Black's position holds on the strong d5 knight, therefore it is important to gain control over it.

4. . . . **♕c7-c2**

He has played to sharpen the game. After 4...♗d7?! White obtains great positional advantage by 5.♗:d5! ♙:d5 6.♗f4 ♗d6 7.♖ac1 ♕d8 8.♕f3 ±.

5. ♕h5-f3 **♕c2:a4**
6. ♗a2:d5 **♕a4:a1**
7. ♗d5-b3 **♙a6-a5?!**

7...♕a5 8.♙d5 ♕b6 (8...♖d8 9.♙:e6! ♖:d1+ 10.♕:d1 ♕:e5 11.♕d8+! +-) 9.♗f4 ♗f6 10.♘c4 ♕b5 11.♘d6 ♕b6 12.♙:e6 +- was more persistent.

8.	**♗c1-f4**	**♕a1:b2**
9.	**♘e5-c4**	**♕b2:b3**
10.	**♕f3:b3**	. . .

Soon White won.

No.19

Miles — Furman

Bad Lautenberg, 1976

Black's advantage is defined by the following factors: White doesn't control the key square d4, his knight is poorly placed at a4, Black can activate play in the centre (after ♙d5-d4) or on the kingside.

1.	. . .	**♙b7-b6!**

Limiting the mobility of the a4 knight. This is stronger than 1...♙d4 2.♙e4 (threatens 3.♙f4), and if 2...♙g5, then 3.♘c5.

Now the threat of 2...♙d4 has increased.

2.	**♔g1-h1**	. . .

Preventing 2...♙d4 3.♙:d4 ♖:d4 4.♗h7+ +-.

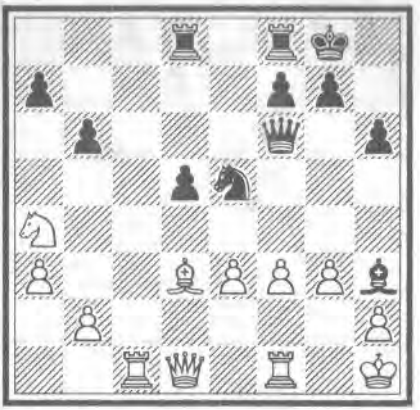
2.	. . .	**♕f6-h4!**

Threatens 3...♘:d3 4.♕:d3 ♕:a4, and also 3...♘g4, and in the case of 3.♗e2 — 3...♙d4!∓.

3.	**♙g2-g3**	**♕h4-f6**

After 3...♕h3 White plays 4.♙f3 with some possibilities of defence.

4.	**♙f2-f3**	**♗e6-h3**



White has lost exchange.

5.	**♗d3-e2**	. . .

If 5.♖f2, then 5...♘g4 -+.

5.	. . .	**♗h3:f1**
6.	**♕d1:f1**	**♕f6-e6-+**

▷♘c4, and Black's material advantage is enough for a win.

7.	**♘a4-c3**	**♘e5-c4**

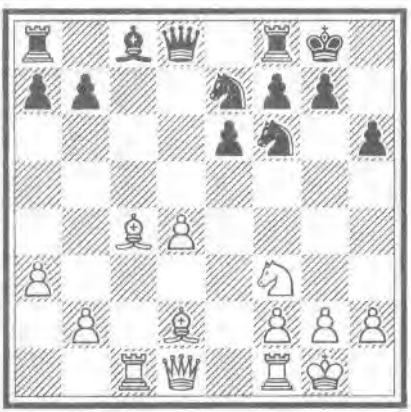
8.	**♙e3-e4**	**♘c4-d2**
9.	**♙e4:d5**	**♖d8:d5**
10.	**♕f1-f2**	**♖d5-d8**
11.	**♗e2-b5**	**♕e6-b3**
12.	**♙a3-a4**	**♕b3:b2**
13.	**♘c3-e2**	**♘d2-b3**
14.	**♖c1-c4**	**♘b3-c5**
15.	**♕f2-e3**	**♙a7-a6**
16.	**♗b5-c6**	**♖d8-d2**

White resigned.

No.20

Dreev — Dolmatov

New York, 1989



1.	**♘f3-e5**	. . .

White offers to sacrifice the d4 pawn, but it is dangerous to accept it because the c8 bishop is not developed. 1.♗f4!? was interesting too.

1.	. . .	**♘e7-d5**

1...♕:d4?! 2.♗b4 ♕:e5 3.♗:e7 ♖e8 4.♖e1 ♕f5 5.♗d3! (5.♕d6?! ♙b5 6.♗d3 ♕d5 and White has no compensation for a pawn) 5...♕h5 (5...♕d5?! 6.♖c5 ♕d7 7.♗:f6 ♙:f6 8.♕g4+ ♔f8 9.♗b5 ♕d6 10.♕h5 ±) 6.♗:f6 ♕:d1 7.♖e:d1 ♙:f6 8.♖c7 ±.

2.	**♕d1-b3**	**♙b7-b6**
3.	**♖f1-e1**	**♗c8-b7**
4.	**♕b3-g3**	. . .

Intending 5.♗:h6.

4.	. . .	**♘f6-h5**
5.	**♕g3-f3**	**♘h5-f6**
6.	**♕f3-g3**	**♔g8-h8**
7.	**♕g3-h3**	**♖a8-c8**
8.	**♗c4-d3**	. . .

White refuses, tempting 8.♗:h6 ♙:h6 9.♕:h6+ ♘h7 10.♗d3 ♙f5 11.♘g6+ ♔g8 12.♘:f8 ♘:f8 and Black beats off White's attack, because the d5 knight takes a dominant position.

8.	. . .	**♖c8:c1**
9.	**♖e1:c1**	**♘f6-h7?!**

9...♔g8 was better. The knight's decentralization allows White to intensify pressure seriously.

10.	**♕h3-h5**	**♕d8-e8**

11. ♕h5-h4	**♙f7-f5?!**

It was necessary to defend without weakening the pawn structure, for example, 11...♔g8.

12. ♕h4-g3	**♖f8-f6**
13. ♙h2-h4	**♘h7-f8**
14. ♗d3-e2	. . .

White pieces dominate the board completely, Black has problems in finding useful moves.

14. . . .	**♔h8-g8**
15. ♗e2-f3	. . .

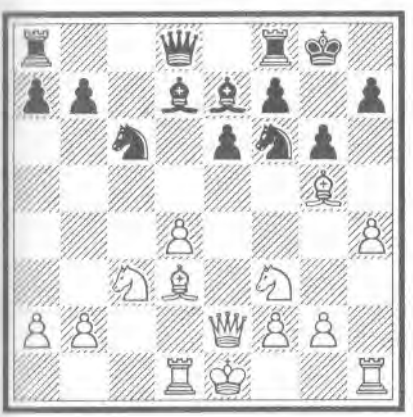
By continuing 15.♕b3! with the following 16.♗f3, White could force Black into a hot position.

15. . . .	**♕e8-d8**
16. ♘e5-c6?	**♗b7:c6**
17. ♖c1:c6	**♙f5-f4**
18. ♕g3-g4	**♕d8-d7**
19. ♖c6-c1	**♘f8-g6**
20. ♕g4-h5	**♘g6-e7**
21. ♕h5-e5	**♘e7-g6**
22. ♕e5-h5	**♘g6-e7**
23. ♕h5-e5	**♘e7-g6**

A draw by repetition of moves.

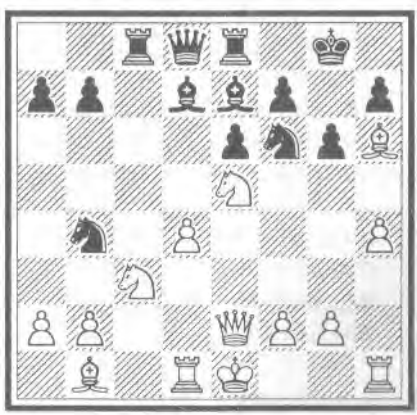
Subject: An attack on the king by the advance of the flank pawns.

No.21
Belin — Markus
Wijk aan Zee, 1976



White pieces are aiming at Black's kingside. White's delay in castling paves the way for an opening in the h-file by ♙h4-h5 and join the h1 rook in the attack.

1. ♗d3-b1!	**♖a8-c8**
2. ♘f3-e5!	**♘c6-b4**
3. ♗g5-h6!	**♖f8-e8**



4.	**♙h4-h5!**	**♗e7-f8**

4...♘h5? 5.♖:h5 ♙:h5 6.♕:h5 +-.

5.	**♙h5:g6**	**♙f7:g6**

5...♙h:g6? 6.♕d2! +-.

6.	**♗h6-g5!+-**	. . .

White's advantage is obvious, his pressure has increased. Black has a weakened pawn structure on the kingside. Black is doomed to a gloomy defence.

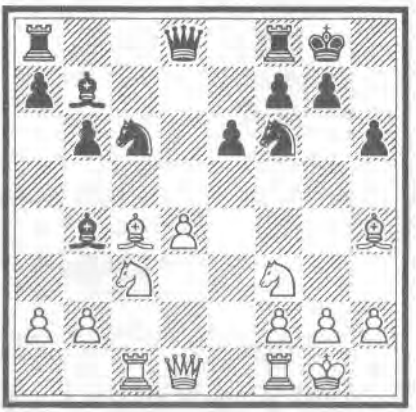
6.	. . .	**♘b4-d5**
7.	**♕e2-f3**	**♗f8-g7**
8.	**♕f3-h3**	**♕d8-e7**
9.	**0 - 0**	**♘d5:c3**
10.	**♙b2:c3**	**♗d7-b5**
11.	**♖f1-e1**	**♕e7-c7**
12.	**♖d1-c1**	**♘f6-d7**
13.	**♘e5-g4**	**♙e6-e5**
14.	**♘g4-h6+**	**♗g7:h6**
15.	**♗g5:h6**	**♕c7-d6**
16.	**♕h3-g3**	**♕d6-f6**
17.	**♗b1-e4**	**♗b5-c6**
18.	**♗e4-d3**	**♗c6-d5**
19.	**♗d3-b5**	**♗d5-c6**
20.	**♗b5-c4+**	**♔g8-h8**
21.	**♗c4-b3**	**♙b7-b5**
22.	**♗h6-e3**	**♙e5-e4**
23.	**♙d4-d5**	**♗c6-b7**
24.	**♗e3-d4**	**♘d7-e5**
25.	**♖e1:e4**	

Black resigned.

No.22

Rashkovsky — Mikhalchishin

Kujbishev, 1986



By using some weakening in the black king's screen, White plays for an attack.

1.	**♗c4-d3**	**♗b4-e7**
2.	**♗d3-b1**	**♖a8-c8**
3.	**♖f1-e1**	. . .

3.♙a3!? ♘d5 4.♘:d5 ♙:d5!?± (4...♗:h4? 5.♕d3 ♙g6 6.♘f4 ♖c7 7.♙d5 ±; 4...♕:d5? 5.♖:c6! +-).

3.	. . .	**♖f8-e8**
4.	**♙a2-a3**	. . .

Introduction to an interesting pawn sacrifice.

4.	. . .	**♘f6-d5**
5.	**♗h4-g3**	**♘d5:c3**
6.	**♙b2:c3**	**♗e7:a3**
7.	**♕d1-d3**	**♙g7-g6**
8.	**♖c1-d1**	. . .

White has sacrificed a pawn, but he has chances to attack the black king.

8.	. . .	**♗a3-f8**
9.	**♙h2-h4**	**♕d8-d5**

Black has repelled the threat ♙h4-h5 by activating his queen. He intends to organize counterplay in the centre and on the queenside.

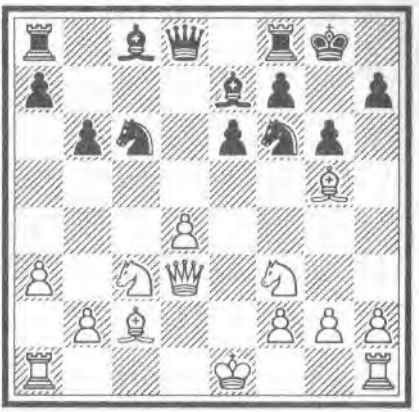
10.	**♙c3-c4**	**♕d5-a5**
11.	**♘f3-e5**	**♘c6:e5**
12.	**♖e1:e5**	**♕a5-a4**
13.	**♙h4-h5**	**♕a4:c4**
14.	**♕d3-d2**	**♙g6:h5**

But not 14...♙g5 in view of 15.♖:g5+ ♙:g5 16.♕:g5 +-.

15.	**♗b1-d3**	**♕c4-c3**
16.	**♕d2-e2**	**♕c3-b3**
17.	**♕e2:h5**	**♗f8-g7**

Black parried White's attack and thus gained material advantage.

No.23
Vadasz — Sapi
Hungary, 1977



White is in no hurry to castle, he strives to join the rook in the attack on the h-file. The advanced position of the black g6 pawn is the base of the pawn storm and opening of the h-file after ♙h2-h4-h5:g6.

1.	**♙h2-h4!**	**♙a7-a5**
2.	**♙h4-h5**	**♗c8-a6**
3.	**♕d3-d2**	**♕d8-c7**

3...♘:h5? 4.♗:e7! ♕:e7 5.♙g4 ♘f6 6.♕h6 ♖fe8 7.♙g5 ♘h5 8.♖:h5 +-.

4.	**♙h5:g6**	**♙f7:g6**

4...♙h:g6 5.♗f4 ▷ ♗e5 and ♕h6.

5.	**♗c2-b3!**	**♘c6-d8**
6.	**♕d2-e3**	**♗a6-c4**
7.	**♗b3:c4**	**♕c7:c4**
8.	**♘f3-e5**	**♕c4-a6**
9.	**♗g5-h6**	**♖f8-e8**
10.	**♕e3-g3**	**♗e7-d6**
11.	**♗h6-f4**	. . .

White has significant positional advantage because of weak pawns in Black's position, and the activity of his pieces attacking on the kingside.

Subject: A combined attack on the king.

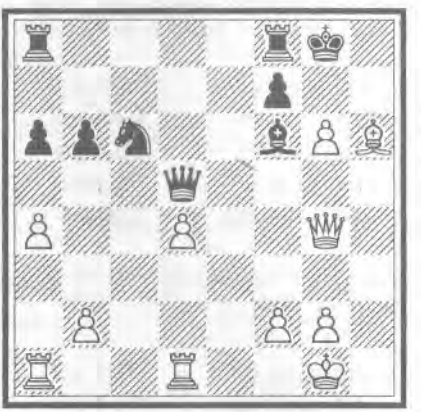
No.24
Kuz'min — Smyslov
Sochi, 1970

How should White continue?

1.	**♘c3:d5!**	**♙e6:d5**
2.	**♘e5-c6!**	**♘b4:c6**
3.	**♗c4:d5**	**♗c8-g4**
4.	**♕f3:g4**	**♕d8:d5**
5.	**♗c1:h6**	**♙g7-g6**

5...♗f6?! 6.♗:g7 ♕g5 7.♕:g5 ♗:g5 8.♗:f8 +-.

6.	**♙h5:g6**	**♗e7-f6**



7.	**♖a1-a3!+-**	. . .

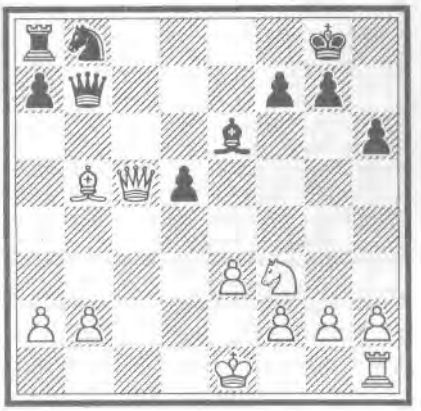
White has a decisive advantage.

7.	. . .	**♖f8-e8**

8. ♖a3-f3 ♖e8-e6
9. ♙g6:f7++

Black resigned.

No.25
Timman — Geller
Hilversum, 1973



It is enough for White to castle, his material advantage will be realized gradually. But it is Black's turn, and he has to prevent White from castling and coordinating the actions of his pieces.

1. . . . ♘b8-a6!

Black prevents White's castling.

2. ♗b5:a6 . . .

2.♕c6 ♕:c6 3.♗:c6 ♖b8! 4.0-0 (4.♙b3?! ♖c8 -+) ♖:b2 ∓.

2. . . . ♕b7:a6
3. ♕c5-a3 . . .

The only defence against 3...♖c8.

3. . . . ♕a6-c4

After 3...♕:a3?! 4.♙:a3 ♖b8 5.0-0 ♖b2 6.♖a1 followed by ♘d4 White has to draw the game.

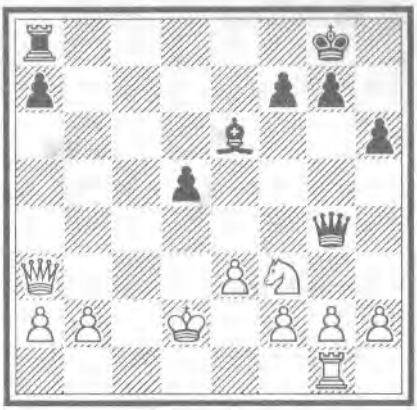
4. ♔e1-d2?! . . .

4.♕c3 is better, though here Black has an advantage after 4...♖b8.

4. . . . ♕c4-g4!

Suddenly it turned out that White has a weak kingside.

5. ♖h1-g1 . . .



5. . . . ♙d5-d4!!

Black strains his forces to the limit and breaks through the strongest point of White's position.

6. ♘f3:d4 . . .

After 6.♙:d4, 6...♖b8 is possible with numerous threats.

6.	. . .	**♕g4-h4**
7.	**♖g1-c1**	. . .

White could have defended the f2 pawn by 7.♔e1, but Black gains the initiative after 7...♗c4.

7.	. . .	**♕h4:f2+**
8.	**♖e1-e2**	**♕f2-f1**
9.	**♘d4:e6**	**♙f7:e6**

The exchange of minor pieces doesn't improve White's position. The white king can't find a safe place neither on the queenside nor in the centre.

10.	**♕a3-d6**	. . .

Defending against 10...♖d8.

10.	. . .	**♔g8-h8**
11.	**♙e3-e4**	**♖a8-c8**
12.	**♔d2-e3**	**♖c8-f8**

With the threat 13...♕g1+.

13.	**♖c2-d2**	**♙e6-e5**

With the threat 14...♕f4+ 15.♔d3 ♖f6.

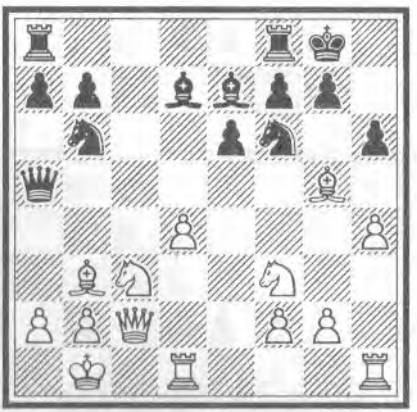
14.	**♕d6:e5**	**♕f1-e1+**
15.	**♖d2-e2**	**♕e1-g1+**
16.	**♔e3-d2**	**♖f8-d8+**
17.	**♔d2-c3**	**♕g1-d1**
18.	**♕e5-b5**	**♕d1-d4+**
19.	**♔c3-c2**	**♙a7-a6**
20.	**♕b5:a6**	**♕d4-c5+**

White resigned.

No.26

Bagirov — Kruppa

Lvov, 1984



White strives to create an attack on the kingside. He is aiming at the h6 pawn. Black strives to develop his pieces' pressure on the c-file. The opponents are struggling for the initiative, White's threats look more formidable than Black's.

1.	**♘f3-e5**	**♖f8-c8**
2.	**♖h1-h3**	. . .

On occasion White's rook is ready to join the attack on the g-file and takes part in the defence also.

2.	. . .	**♗d7-c6**
3.	**♕c2-e2**	**♗c6-d5**
4.	**♘c3:d5?!**	. . .

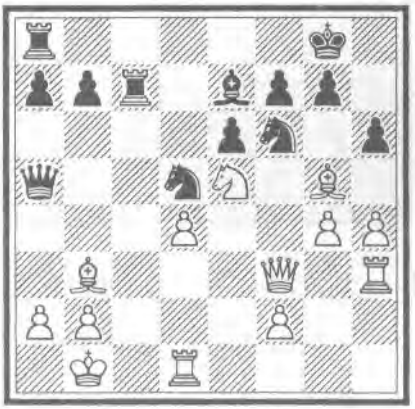
White could begin an immediate attack 4.♗:h6! ♙:h6 5.♖g3+ ♔f8 6.♕e3 For example: 6...♘g8 7.♕f4 ♗f6 8.♖:g8+ ♔:g8 9.♕:f6+-, or 6...♗:b3 7.♕:h6+ ♔e8 8.♕h8+ ♗f8

9.♕:f6 +- and White wins in any case.

4.	. . .	**♘b6:d5**

4...♘f:d5? 5.♗:e7 ♘:e7 6.♘:f7! +-

5.	**♕e2-f3**	**♖c8-c7**
6.	**♙g2-g4**	. . .



There is no defence against the threats ♗c1 and ♙g5.

6.	. . .	**♖a8-c8**
7.	**♗g5-c1**	. . .

With precision till the end. 7.♗d2? ♕:d2!-+ is mistaken.

7.	. . .	**♖c7:c1+**

Black tries to sacrifice, but it only prolongs his agony.

8.	**♖d1:c1**	**♖c8:c1+**
9.	**♔b1:c1**	**♕a5-e1+**
10.	**♗b3-d1**	**♗e7-b4**
11.	**♕f3-e2**	**♕e1:e2**
12.	**♗d1:e2**	**♘d5-f4**
13.	**♖h3-b3**	**♗b4-e1**
14.	**♖b3:b7**	**♗e1:f2**
15.	**♗e2-d1**	**♗f2:d4**
16.	**♖b7-b8+**	**♔g8-h7**
17.	**♘e5:f7**	**♘f6-d5**
18.	**♗d1-c2+**	**♙g7-g6**
19.	**♖b8-b7**	**♔h7-g7**
20.	**♘f7-d8+**	**♔g7-f8**
21.	**♘d8-c6**	

Black resigned.

No.27

Steinitz — Bardeleben

Hastings, 1895

Black just has to castle to achieve a solid position, but it is White's turn and he takes advantage of Black's delay in castling.

1.	**♗c4:d5!**	**♗e6:d5**

Inferior is 1...♗:g5 2.♗:e6 ♙:e6 3.♕b3±.

2.	**♘c3:d5**	**♕d8:d5**
3.	**♗g5:e7**	**♘c6:e7**
4.	**♖f1-e1!**	. . .

The gist of White's plan is delaying the black king in the centre.

4. . . . ♙f7-f6

If 4...♕d6, then 5.♕e2↑.

It is enough 5.♕a4+ after 4...♖d8.

5. ♕d1-e2 ♕d5-d7
6. ♖a1-c1 ♙c7-c6

After 6...♔f7!? White can't be too carefull here: 7.♘g5+ ♙:g5 8.♕f3+ ♔e8 (8...♔g6 9.♖c7!+-; 8...♔g8 ♕:b7 ♕d5 10.♖:c7 ♕:b7 11.♖:b7±) 9.♖c5! ♖f8 10.♕:b7 ♖e8 11.♖d5 ♕g4 12.♙h3 ♕f4 13.♕:c8+ +-.

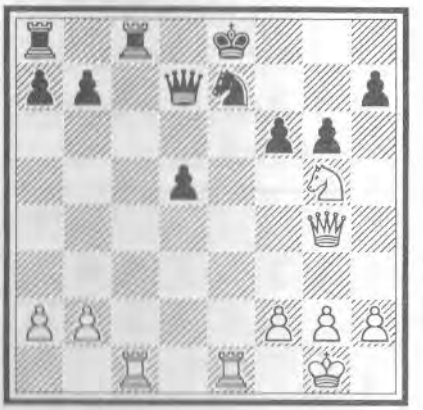
7. ♙d4-d5! . . .

The white knight joins the attack after the pawn sacrifice.

7. . . . ♙c6:d5
8. ♘f3-d4 . . .

Threatens 9.♘f5.

8. . . . ♔e8-f7
9. ♘d4-e6 ♖h8-c8
10. ♕e2-g4 ♙g7-g6
11. ♘e6-g5+ ♔f7-e8



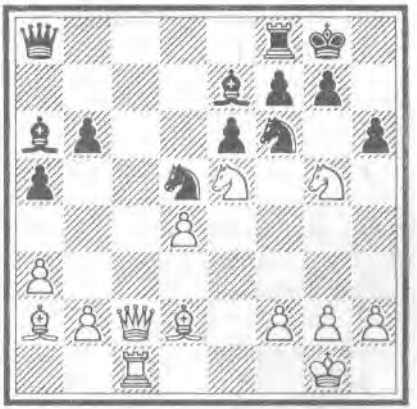
Find the best continuation for White.

12. ♖e1:e7+!! ♔e8-f8!

12...♕:e7 13.♖:c8+ +-; or 12...♔:e7 13.♖e1+ ♔d6 14.♕b4+ ♔c7 15.♘e6+ ♔b8 16.♕f4+ ♖c7 17.♘:e7+-

13. ♖e7-f7+! ♔f8-g8
14. ♖f7-g7+! ♔g8-h8
15. ♖g7:h7+ ♔h8-g8
16. ♖h7-g7+ ♔g8-h8
17. ♕g4-h4+ ♔h8:g7
18. ♕h4-h7+ ♔g7-f8
19. ♕h7-h8+ ♔f8-e7
20. ♕h8-g7+ ♔e7-e8
21. ♕g7-g8+ ♔e8-e7
22. ♕g8-f7+ ♔e7-d8
23. ♕f7-f8+ ♕d7-e8
24. ♘g5-f7+ ♔d8-d7
25. ♕f8-d6#

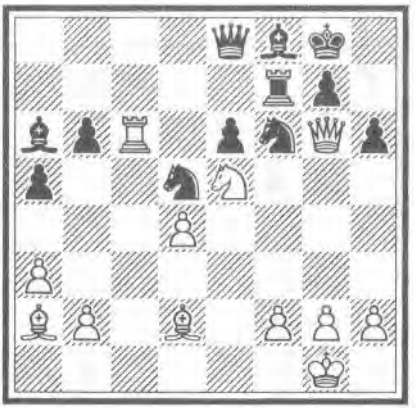
No.28
Bronstein — Roizman
Odessa, 1960



1. ♘g5:f7! **♖f8:f7**
2. ♕c2-g6! **♕a8-e8**

2...♖f8? 3.♗:h6 ♘e8 4.♕:e6+ +-.

3. ♖c1-c6! **♗e7-f8**



4. ♗a2:d5! **♘f6:d5**

4...♙:d5 5.♖:f6 +-.

5. ♖c6:e6 **♘d5-e7**

5...♗e7 6.♗:h6 ♗c8 7.♘:f7 ♕:f7 8.♕:f7+ ♔:f7 9.♖e5 +-.

6. ♕g6:f7+ **♕e8:f7**
7. ♘e5:f7 **♔g8:f7**
8. ♖e6:b6 . . .

White has a decisive advantage.

No.29
Flohr — Lisitsyn
Moscow, 1935

Black has a seriously weakened diagonal a1-h8 due to the move ♙g7-g6. Assessment of this position depends on the scope of Black's activity on the kingside.

1. ♗c1-b2 . . .

After 1.♘:d5? ♗:g3! 2.♘:f6+ (2.♗:g4 ♗:g4 3.♘:f6+ ♕:f6) ♕:f6∓.

1. . . . **♙h7-h5**

If 1...♗e6, then 2.♘:d5±.

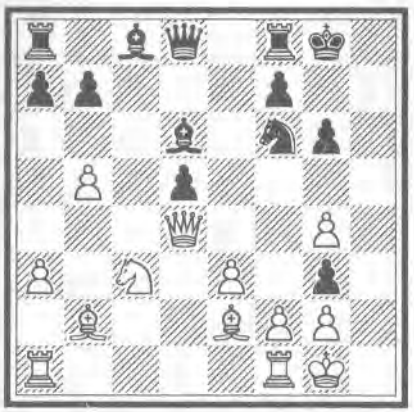
2. ♙h2-h3! . . .

The only move, threatened not only 2...♙h4 but 2...♘:h2 3.♔:h2 ♙h4↑.

2. . . . ♙h5-h4

2...♘:e3? 3.♙:e3 ♗:g3 bad because of 4.♕d4!

3. ♙h3:g4 ♙h4:g3
4. ♕d1-d4! . . .



4. . . . ♘f6-d7

Threatens 5...♕h4!

5. ♙g4-g5!± ♙g3:f2+?

5...♕:g5 would have been better 6.♘e4 ♕h6 7.♘:g3 ♗e5 8.♕d2 ♗:b2 9.♕:b2±.

6. ♖f1:f2 ♗d6-e5

6...♕:g5? 7.♘e4! ♕h6 8.♘:d6+-.

7. ♕d4-h4! ♘d7-b6
8. ♙g2-g3 . . .

The threat is 9.♖h2.

8. . . . ♙f7-f5□
9. ♙g5:f6 ♗e5:f6

9...♖:f6 10.♖af1 ♔g7 11.♘e4! +-.

10. ♕h4-h6 ♗f6-g7
11. ♕h6:g6 ♖f8:f2
12. ♘c3-e4! . . .

12.♔:f2?! ♕f8+ and 13...♗f5.

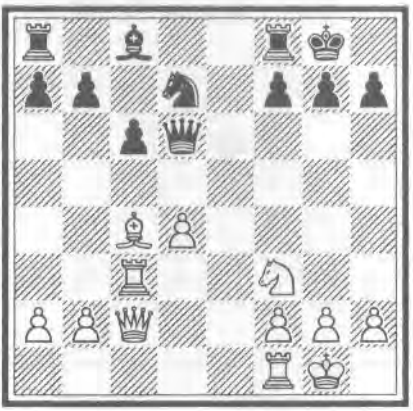
12. . . . ♖f2-f7?

More persistent was 12...♕e7 13.♘:f2 +-, which allowed Black to prolong resistance.

13. ♘e4-g5+- ♖f7-f6
14. ♗b2:f6 ♕d8:f6
15. ♕g6-h7+ ♔g8-f8
16. ♖a1-f1+-

White won.

No.30
Farago — Velikov
Budapest, 1984



White begins an unsurmounable attack, exploiting his development advantage and some lack of

protection on the kingside and the f7 point.

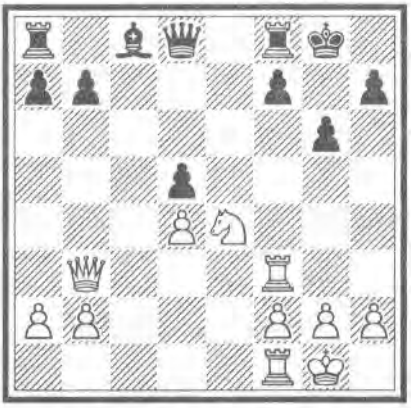
1. ♘f3-g5! **♘d7-f6**

1...♕g6? 2.♕:g6 ♙h:g6 3.♖e1, ▷ ♖e7 +-;
1...♙g6? 2.♘:f7! ♖:f7 3.♖f3 ♘f6 4.♕b3 ♕e7 5.♗:f7+ ♕:f7 6.♖:f6 +-.

2. ♖c3-f3 **♙g7-g6**
3. ♕c2-b3 **♘f6-d5**

3...♕e7? 4.♘:f7! ♖:f7 5.♗:f7+ ♕:f7 6.♖:f6 +-.

4. ♘g5-e4 **♕d6-d8**
5. ♗c4:d5 **♙c6:d5**



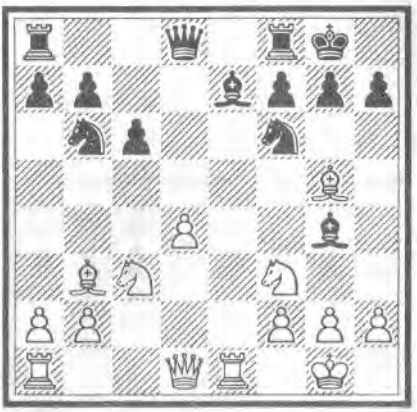
6. ♘e4-f6+! **♔g8-g7**
7. ♕b3-e3 **♙h7-h5**
8. ♕e3-e5 **♔g7-h6**
9. ♘f6:h5 **♗c8-g4**
10. ♕e5-g7+ **♔h6-g5**

10...♔:h5 11.♕h7+ ♔g5 12.♙h4 #.

11. ♖f3-g3

Black resigned.

No.31
Vaganian — Hübner
Tilburg, 1983



White's position is far more active, especially unpleasant is the pressure along the e-file.

1. ♕d1-d3 **♗g4:f3**

A difficult decision, but 2.♘f3-e5 would have been very unpleasant.

2. ♕d3:f3 **♘f6-d5**
3. ♗g5:e7 . . .

3.♖:e7 ♘:e7 4.♖e1 ♘bc8 5.♕e2 ♖e8 6.♗:f7+ ♔:f7 7.♕e6+ ♔f8 8.♖e3 ♘d6 9.♖f3+ ♘ef5! -+ wasn't sound.

3. . . . **♘d5:e7**
4. ♖e1-e5! . . .

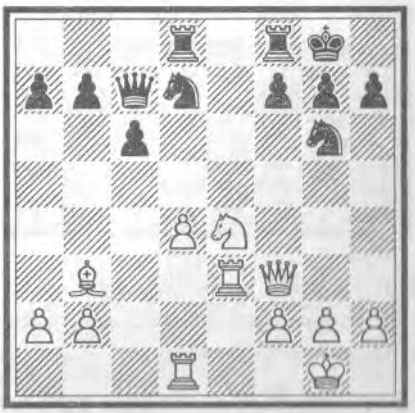
Establishing control over the e-file and the d5 square.

4. . . . **♘e7-g6**

5.	**♖e5-e4**	**♘b6-d7**
6.	**♖a1-d1**	**♕d8-a5**
7.	**♖e4-e3!**	. . .

Clearing the e4 square for the knight.

7.	. . .	**♖a8-d8**
8.	**♘c3-e4!**	**♕a5-c7**



9.	**♙h2-h4!**	**♙h7-h6**

9...♘:h4 10.♕h5 ♘g6 11.♖h3 ♙h6 12.♕:g6 +-.

10.	**♕f3-g4**	**♔g8-h8**
11.	**♙h4-h5**	**♘g6-f4**
12.	**♖e3-g3**	**♙g7-g5**
13.	**♙h5:g6**	**♙f7:g6**
14.	**♖d1-e1**	**♖d8-e8**
15.	**♖g3-e3**	**♘d7-b6**
16.	**♘e4-c5**	**♕c7-c8**
17.	**♕g4:f4**	. . .

Black resigned. White has implemented his plan of pressing on the e-file with an attack on the king.

No.32

Lputian — Balashov

Erevan, 1986

1.	**♙h2-h3!**	. . .

Hampering development of the bishop at c8 and threatening to put Black into a critical position after 2.♖ce3 ▷♖e7.

1.	. . .	**♘f6-d5**

Preventing a threat, but the knight is moved away from its king's defence.

2.	**♗c4:d5!**	**♕d8:d5**

2...♙:d5 3.♖e7±.

3.	**♖e1-e5±**	**♕d5-d6**

3...♕:a2?? 4.♖a3 +-.

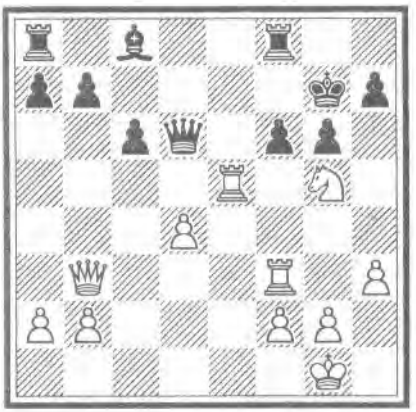
4.	**♘f3-g5**	**♙g7-g6**

4...♕g6 5.♕b3±.

5.	**♖e3-f3**	**♙f7-f6**

5...♕:d4 (5...♗f5 6.♖e:f5 ♙:f5 7.♖g3 ♔h8 8.♕:f5 ♕g6 9.♕f4 ♙f5 10.♘:h7 +-) 6.♖e4 ♕d5 7.♘:f7 ♖:f7 8.♖e8+ ♔g7 9.♕c3+ ♔h6 10.♕e3+ ♔g7 11.♖:f7+ ♕:f7 12.♖e7 +-.

6. ♕c2-b3+ ♔g8-g7



7. ♖e5-e8! ♙a7-a5

7...♖:e8 8.♕f7+ ♔h6 9.♕:h7+ ♔:g5 10.♙h4+ ♔g4 11.♕:g6+ ♔:h4 12.♙g3+ +-.

8. ♖e8:c8 . . .

8...♖a:c8 9.♕:b7+ +-.

Black resigned.

Subject: Activity development. Exploiting weak flank pawns.

No.33

Gligoric — Portisch

Pula, 1971

1. ♙a4-a5!? . . .

1.♘e5 ♗b7 2.♖a3 ♖c8 3.♙a5 (3.♘:d5 ♕:d5 4.♖g3 ♙f5) ♙b5 4.♘e4 ♙f5 5.♘c5 ♗:c5 6.♙:c5 ♖:c5 7.♖g3 ♖c7 8.♗g5 and now after 8...♕e8 there is no compensation for the sacrificed pawn (Gligoric — Portisch, 1971).

With the move 1.♙a5 White at once begins a struggle for the strong c5 square, keeping the opportunity of playing ♘e5 and ♘c3-e4-g5, ♖a1-a3-g3 (Gligoric).

1. . . . ♗c8-d7

1...♙:a5 2.♘e5! and if 2...♗d7, then 3.♖a3 and further as in the game.

2. ♘f3-e5 ♙b6:a5

3. ♖a1-a3! . . .

Creating dangerous threats 4.♘:d5 and after 4...♘:d5 will follow 5.♗:h7+ ♔:h7 6.♖h3+ ♔g8 7.♕h5 +-.

3. . . . ♙f7-f5□

4. ♘c3:d5 ♘b4:d5

5.	♘e5:d7	♕d8:d7
6.	♖a3:a5±	. . .

White's advantage is obvious due to the weak pawns a6, e6.

6.	. . .	**♘d5-c7**
7.	**♗b1-a2**	**♗e7-d6**
8.	**♗a2-c4**	**♔g8-h8**
9.	**♕e2-f3**	. . .

9.♗:a6? ♗:h2+ 10.♔:h2 ♕d6+ 11.♔g1 ♖:a6 =.

9.	. . .	**♗d6-b4**
10.	**♖a5-a1**	**♙a6-a5**
11.	**♗c1-f4**	**♘c7-d5**
12.	**♗f4-e5**	**♖f8-c8**
13.	**♕f3-e2**	**♕d7-b7**
14.	**♙h2-h3**	**♖c8-c6**
15.	**♖a1-c1!**	**♖a8-c8**
16.	**♗c4:d5**	**♙e6:d5**
17.	**♖c1:c6**	**♕b7:c6**
18.	**♖d1-d3**	**♕c6-d7**
19.	**♖d3-g3**	**♗b4-f8**
20.	**♙b2-b3!±**	. . .

Fixing the a4 pawn on the dark square.

20.	. . .	**♖c8-a8**

It is necessary to get rid of weaknesses when defending inferior positions, Black threatens 21...♙a4. If 20...♙a4, then immediately follows 21.♙:a4 ♕:a4 22.♕h5 ♕d7 23.♖f3 ±.

21.	**♕e2-c2!**	**♖a8-c8**

21...♙a4? 22.♙:a4 ♖:a4 23.♖c3!

22.	**♕c2-d2**	**♖c8-a8**

22...♙a4 23.♙:a4 ♕:a4 24.♕g5 ♕d7 25.♖f3 ±.

23.	**♕d2-g5**	**♔h8-g8**
24.	**♖g3-f3**	**♙g7-g6**
25.	**♖f3-c3**	**♕d7-d8**
26.	**♕g5-c1**	**♗f8-d6**
27.	**♕c1-f4**	**♗d6:e5**
28.	**♕f4:e5**	**♖a8-a7**
29.	**♖c3-c5**	**♖a7-e7**
30.	**♖c5:d5**	**♕d8-c7**
31.	**♕e5:c7**	**♖e7:c7**
32.	**♖d5:a5**	**♖c7-b7**
33.	**♖a5-a3**	. . .

White has a decisive advantage which he transforms into a win.

No.34

Gligoric — Ivkov

Novi Sad, 1976

Here Black's pieces are concentrated in the centre and on the queenside leaving their king alone.

1. ♖a1-a3! . . .

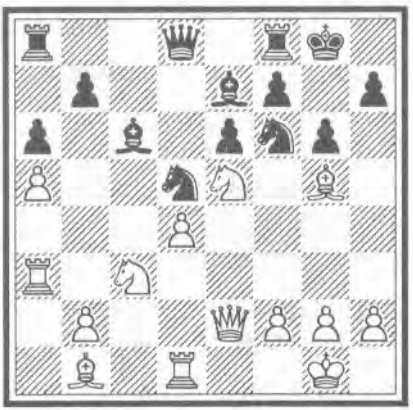
With a threat after the possible reply of Black 1...♖c8 to play 2.♘:d5 ♘:d5 3.♗:h7+ ♔:h7 4.♕h5+ ♔g8 5.♖h3 +-.

1.♕g4!? ♘f6 2.♕h3 was also interesting.

1. . . .	**♘d5-f6**
2. ♗c1-g5	**♙g7-g6**

2...♖c8 was a mistake because of 3.♗:f6 ♗:f6 4.♘a2 ♘:a2 5.♗:h7+ ♔:h7 6.♕h5+ ♔g8 7.♖h3 +-.

3. ♙a4-a5	**♘b4-d5**



4. ♘e5:c6!	. . .

Black has strengthened his king's position, but trouble comes from the other side. White has fixed a weakness on a6 and now he is increasing pressure on the queenside, where he is stronger than Black.

4. . . .	**♙b7:c6**
5. ♖a3-a4	**♕d8-c7**
6. ♗b1-d3	**♕c7-b7**
7. ♖a4-c4	**♖f8-b8**
8. ♘c3-a4	**♘f6-d7**
9. ♗g5-d2	**♗e7-f6**
10. ♖d1-c1	**♖b8-c8**
11. ♗d3-e4±	

Because of the weak pawns a6 and c6 White's advantage is beyond any doubt.

11. . . .	**♖c8-c7**
12. ♕e2-f3	. . .

12.♗:d5!? ♙e:d5 13.♖b4 ♕c8 14.♕f3 ▷♘b6.

12. . . .	**♗f6-e7**
13. ♙g2-g3	**♖c7-c8**
14. ♕f3-d1	**♖a8-b8**
15. ♕d1-c2	**♗e7-f6**
16. ♙b2-b4?!	. . .

16.♗h6!± could drive Black into a corner.

No.35
Kortchnoi — Ljubojevic
Tilburg, 1987

White seizes space on the queenside and drives away Black's pieces by exploiting the disadvantageous position of the bishop at a5.

1.	**♙b2-b4!?**	**♗a5-b6**
2.	**♙b4-b5**	**♘c6-a5**
3.	**♙a3-a4**	**♖f8-d8**
4.	**♗c1-a3**	**♕e7-f6**
5.	**♗a3-b4**	. . .

Creating a threat to the b7 pawn.

5.	. . .	**♕f6-f4**

If 5...♖ab8, then 6.♖e1 ♗e8 7.♙d5 ♙:d5 8.♗c2 ♖dc8 9.♖a2 ♙d4 10.♕d2 ♘c4 11.♕d3 ♙g6 12.♗b3 ♘a5 13.♗d5 ±.

6.	**♗e4-b1**	**♙a7-a6**

Black has to secure ♘ at a5.

7.	**♕d1-d3**	**♙g7-g6**
8.	**♗b4-d2**	**♕f4-f5**
9.	**♕d3-e3**	**♕f5-h5**
10.	**♘f3-e5**	. . .

Threatening 11.♗:g6 ♙:g6 12.♘:d7 ♖:d7 13.♕:e6+ ♖f7 14.♕:b6 ±.

10.	. . .	**♙a6:b5?**

10...♗e8!? 11.♘g4 ♔g7 12.♕:h6+ ±.

11.	**♗d2:a5**	**♗b6:a5**

11...♖:a5? 12.♗:g6 ♙:g6 13.♘:d7 ♖:d7 14.♕:e6+ ♖f7 15.♕:b6 ±.

12.	**♕e3-f4**	**♗d7-e8**
13.	**♘e5-g4±**	**♔g8-f8**

Other retreats bring no relief. 13...♔g7 14.♕f6+ ♔h7 15.♙:b5 ♕g5 16.♗:g6+! ♕:g6 (16...♙:g6 17.♕f8 ▷♘f6 +-) 17.♖:a5 ±.

14.	**♘g4-f6**	**♙g6-g5**
15.	**♕f4-e5**	**♕h5-h4**
16.	**♘f6-g4**	**♗a5-b6**
17.	**♕e5-h8+**	**♔f8-e7**

18.	**♕h8-f6+**	**♔e7-f8**
19.	**♖f1-d1**	**♗b6-c7**
20.	**♖a1-a3!**	. . .

Sending last resources to the attack.

20.	. . .	**♙h6-h5**
21.	**♙g2-g3**	**♕h4:h3**
22.	**♘g4-h6**	**♙h5-h4**
23.	**♗b1-f5!**	**♙e6:f5**
24.	**♖a3-e3**	

Black resigned.

No. 36

Quinteros — Alburt

New York, 1983

Black's pieces are more active than White's. Weak white pawns on the queenside can be objects of Black's attack. Note the passive position of White's queen on f1, which brings disharmony into the position.

1.	. . .	**♕e7-a3!∓**
2.	**♖d1-d2**	. . .

If 2.♕e2, then 2...♙d4!

2.	. . .	**♗e4:f3!**
3.	**♗g2:f3**	. . .

3.	. . .	**♖e8:e3!**
4.	**♗f3:d5**	. . .

4.♙:e3 ♗:e3+ -+, or 4.♗g2 ♖e7 5.♗b2 ♕b4 ∓.

4.	. . .	**♖e3-e7**

4...♘e7?! 5.♙:e3 ♗:e3+ 6.♔g2 ♗:d2 7.♕:f6! ♖g8 8.♕e5 leads to unclear play, and 8...♘:d5 is impossible because of 9.♕:g7+ ♖:g7 10.♖c8+ +-.

5.	**♗a1-b2?**	. . .

5.♖cd1!? ♗a5 6.♖d3 ♘b4 7.♖d4 ♗b6!∞

5.	. . .	**♕a3:a2-+**
6.	**♖c1-d1**	**♖d8:d5**
7.	**♖d2:d5**	**♕a2:b2**
8.	**♕f1-d3**	**♕b2:f2+**

White resigned.

No.37

Najdorf — Polugaevsky

Mar del Plata, 1971

1.	. . .	**♙a7-a6**

1...♙b6 is reasonable but the given move in the game is more aggressive. Black intends to play ♙b7-b5, he seizes the space on the queenside and has a move connected with ♙b5-b4 and ♘c6-a5-c4.

2.	**♗d3-c2**	**♙b7-b5**
3.	**♕d1-d3**	**♗c8-b7**
4.	**♖f1-e1**	. . .

With intention to play 5.♙d5 ♙:d5 6.♗g5 ♙g6 7.♖:e7 ♕:e7 8.♘:d5 +- after possible reply 4...♖c8.

4.♗g5!? is interesting, for example: 4...♙g6 5.♖ad1 ♙b4 6.♘a4 ♙:a3 7.♙:a3 ♘a5 8.♘c5 ♗c6 9.♖fe1 ♗:c5 10.♙:c5 ♕:d3 11.♗:d3± (Donner — Van Scheltinga, Beverwijk, 1969).

4.	. . .	**♙g7-g6**
5.	**♗c2-b3?!**	. . .

5.♗h6!? ♖e8 6.♖ad1 with a complicated position.

5.	. . .	**♖a8-c8!**

5...♘a5?! 6.♗a2 ♗:f3 7.♕:f3 ♕:d4 8.♗g5 ±.

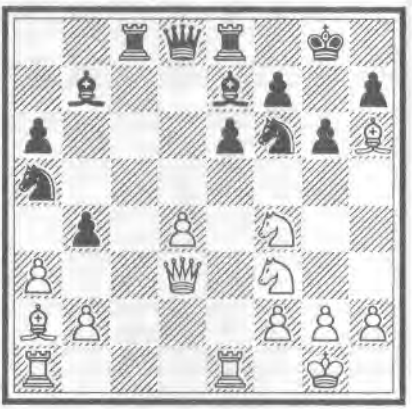
6.	**♗c1-h6**	**♖f8-e8**
7.	**♗b3-a2**	. . .

7.♖ad1 ♘a5! 8.♗a2 ♘c4 ∓.

7.	. . .	**♙b5-b4**
8.	**♘c3-e2?**	. . .

8.♘a4 should be played in attempt to exploit the weak c5 square: 8...♘a5 (8...♕a5!?) 9.♙:b4 ♘c6 10.♘c5 ♘:b4 11.♕b3 ♗:f3 12.♕:f3 ♘fd5 =.

8.	. . .	**♘c6-a5**
9.	**♘e2-f4?!**	. . .

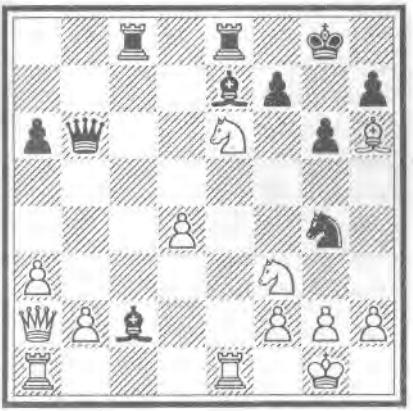


9.	. . .	**♙b4-b3!**
10.	**♗a2:b3**	**♗b7-e4!**
11.	**♕d3-d1?!**	. . .

11.♖:e4 would have been better ♘:b3 12.♕:b3 ♘:e4 13.♘:e6 ♕d6 ∓.

11.	. . .	**♘a5:b3**
12.	**♕d1:b3**	**♗e4-c2**
13.	**♕b3-a2**	**♘f6-g4**

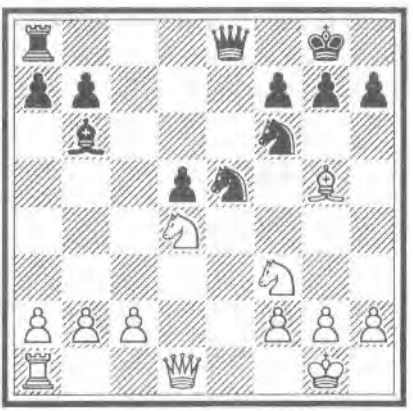
14. ♘f4:e6 **♕d8-b6!**



15. ♘e6-g7 **♗c2-b3**
16. ♕a2-b1 **♖e8-d8**
17. ♘g7-f5 **♙g6:f5**
18. ♖e1:e7 **♘g4:h6**

After few moves Black won.

No. 38
Bitman — Zlotnik
Moscow, 1979



White blocked the isolated d5 pawn. But Black's minor pieces have excellent coordination, and exploiting the unfavourable position of the white bishop at g5, Black seizes the initiative.

1. . . . **♘f6-e4!**
2. ♗g5-h4 **♘e5:f3+**
3. ♘d4:f3 **. . .**

Black's initiative is defined by the superior positions of the b6 bishop and e4 knight, which exert pressure on the f2 point. But this pressure is temporary because Black needs new objects for attack to support his initiative.

3. . . . **♕e8-b5!**

The threat to capture the b2 pawn is on the agenda.

4. ♖a1-b1 **♖a8-e8∓**
5. ♙a2-a3 **. . .**

Unnecessary weakening, but it is difficult to neutralize Black's initiative. The next step would be better 5.♕d3 ♕:d3 6.♙:d3 ♘c5 7.♖c1 (If 7.♙d4 ♘e6 8.♖d1 ♘:d4, good is 8...♖c8∓) 7...♖:c1+ 8.♘:c1

♘a4 9.♙b3 ♘c3 10.♙a3 ♘e2+ 11.♔f1 ♘c1 12.♙b4 ♙f6 with threats ♗b6-d4-b2. Black keeps the advantage, but White can still defend his position.

5.	. . .	**♙h7-h6!**

Black threatens 6...♙g5 7.♗g3 ♙f5.

6.	**♕d1-d3**	**♕b5:d3**
7.	**♙c2:d3**	**♘e4-c5**
8.	**♖b1-e1**	**♖e8:e1+**
9.	**♘f3:e1**	**♘c5-b3**

Black quickly achieves a decisive advantage by exloiting White's weaknesses.

10.	**♘e1-c2**	**♘b3-c1**
11.	**♘c2-b4**	**♗b6-d4**
12.	**♙b2-b3**	**♗d4-c5-+**
13.	**♘b4:d5**	**♗c5:a3**
14.	**♙b3-b4**	**♙a7-a6**
15.	**♗h4-e7**	**♙f7-f6**
16.	**♙d3-d4**	**♘c1-e2+**
17.	**♔g1-f1**	**♘e2:d4**

White resigned.

No.39

Sokolov A. — Vaganian

Moscow, 1986

1.	. . .	**♕d8-b6**
2.	**♗b5-d3**	**♙a7-a5!**

Black ignores the threat 3.♗:h7+, increasing his activity on the queenside, inferior is 2...♙h6?! 3.♕d2 ♗:f3 4.♙:f3 ♔f8 (▷ ♘g8-f6) 5.♗f1 ♖ad8 6.♖ad1 ♘f5 7.♖:e8 ♖:e8 and continuing 8.♔g2, White still has some advantage. (A. Sokolov — Spragett, Montpellier, 1985).

3.	**♗d3:h7+**	**♔g8-f8**

Creating two threats: ♙g7-g6 and ♙a5-a4.

4.	**♗h7-d3**	. . .

4.♕c1? ♗:f3 5.♙:f3 ♙a4 6.♘d2 ♙g6 is inferior and the white bishop is in a trap, 7.♘c4 ♕d4 8.♕h6+ ♕g7 -+ gives nothing.

4.	. . .	**♙a5-a4**
5.	**♘b3-d2**	**♘e7-f5**

5...♕:b2?! 6.♖b1 ♕:a2 7.♕c1 is worse and the black queen is in a dangerous situation.

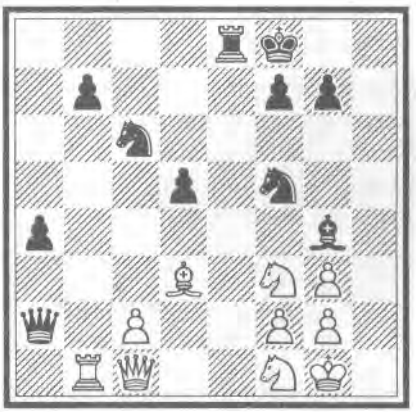
6.	**♖e1:e8+**	**♖a8:e8**
7.	**♘d2-f1**	. . .

7...♘:g3 threatens.

7.	. . .	**♕b6:b2**
8.	**♖a1-b1**	**♕b2:a2**
9.	**♕d1-c1**	. . .

9.♖:b7?! ♙d4! and now it is dangerous to continue 10.♗b5?! ♕d5 11.♗:a4 ♘e5 12.♗:e8 ♗:f3 13.♙:f3 ♘:f3+ 14.♔h1 (14.♔g2 ♘3h4++

15.♔h3 ♕h1+ 16.♔g4 ♘h6+ 17.♔g5 (17.♔f4 ♘g6+ 18.♔g5 ♕d5 #) 17...♙f6+ 18.♔h5 ♘f3+ 19.♔g6 ♘e5+ 20.♔h7 ♘hf7 +) 14...♕:b7-+.



9. . . .	**♙d5-d4**
10. ♘f3-h2	**♘f5-h6**
11. ♘h2:g4	**♘h6:g4**
12. ♖b1-a1	**♕a2-d5**
13. ♖a1:a4	**♙b7-b5**
14. ♖a4-a6	**♘g4-e5**
15. ♕c1-a3+	**♙b5-b4**
16. ♕a3-a4	**♘e5:d3**
17. ♙c2:d3	**. . .**

17.♕:c6 ♕:c6 18.♖:c6 ♘c1 19.♖c4 ♖e1 20.♙f3 ♙d3 21.♙:d3 ♙b3 22.♖b4 ♖e2 -+.

17.. . .	**♖e8-e6**
18. ♖a6-b6	**♙g7-g6**
19. ♖b6-b5	**♕d5-d6**
20. ♙f2-f4	**♖e6-e1**
21. ♖b5-b6	**♖e1-c1**

Black has a decisive advantage.

No.40

Sokolov A. — Vaganian

Montpellier, 1985

White controls the d4 point, and as a compensation for the isolated d5 pawn, Black plays actively and controls the e4 and e5 central squares.

1. . . .	**♙a7-a6!**

Defending against 2.♘b5. 1...♘:d4? 2.♘:d4 ♗:h2+ 3.♔h1 ♗d6 4.♘b5 ♕d7 5.♕h4! ♗g6 6.♘:d6 +- is bad for Black.

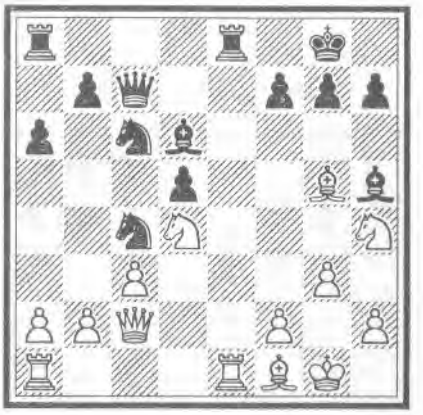
2. ♙g2-g3	**♘c6-a5**

The knight is transferred to a more active position at c4.

3. ♘f3-h4	**♘a5-c4**
4. ♕a4-c2	**. . .**

This should provoke an exchange of minor pieces by 4.♘hf5 ♘:f5 5.♘:f5.

4. . . .	**♖f8-e8**
5. ♗c1-g5	**♘e7-c6!**



Beginning the struggle for the key d4 square.

6.	**♘d4-f5**	**♗d6-f8**
7.	**♘f5-e3**	**♕c7-a5!**

Black plays ♕a5 intending after the possible 8.♗g2 to reply 8...♘:e3 9.♗:e3 ♙d4 10.♙:d4 ♘:d4!

8.	**♙b2-b4?!**	**♘c4:e3**
9.	**♗g5:e3**	**♕a5-d8∓**

White has difficulties in fighting for the d4 point because the h5 bishop controls the important d1 square, and White's knight on h4 is removed from the main sector of the struggle.

10.	**♗f1-g2**	**♙d5-d4!**

After the breakthrough in the centre White's advantage is secured by the pair of active bishops.

11.	**♗e3:d4**	. . .

11.♗:c6 ♙d3! ∓.

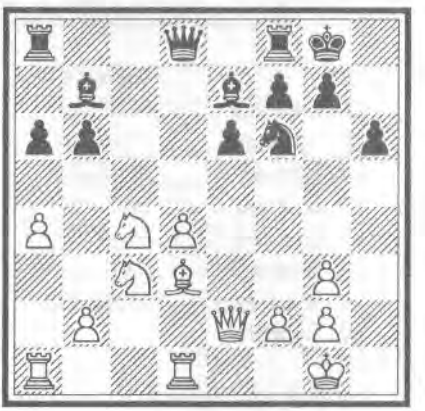
11.	. . .	**♘c6:d4**
12.	**♙c3:d4**	**♕d8:d4**
13.	**♗g2:b7**	**♗f8:b4!**
14.	**♘h4-f5**	**♕d4-f6**
15.	**♖e1:e8+**	**♖a8:e8**
16.	**♖a1-b1**	**♗b4-f8**
17.	**♗b7-e4**	**♗h5-g6∓**
18.	**♗e4-d3**	**♖e8-d8**
19.	**♗d3-e4**	**♕f6-e5**
20.	**♖b1-b3**	

Now Black could achieve a decisive advantage after 20...♗c5! 21.♖f3 ♖e8 22.♗d3 ♕d5 and White has no good moves, for example 23.♗e2 ♖:e2! 24.♕:e2 ♗:f5 -+.

No.41

Georghiu — Beliavsky

Baden-Baden, 1980



Black has definite troubles because of the unlucky position of his pawn at b6, which ties down the black queen to its defence. That is why Black uses tactical motives to get rid of his weakness.

1.	. . .	**♙b6-b5!**
2.	**♙a4:b5**	**♙a6:b5**
3.	**♘c3:b5**	. . .

3.♖:a8 ♕:a8 4.♘:b5 ♗:g2 ∓.

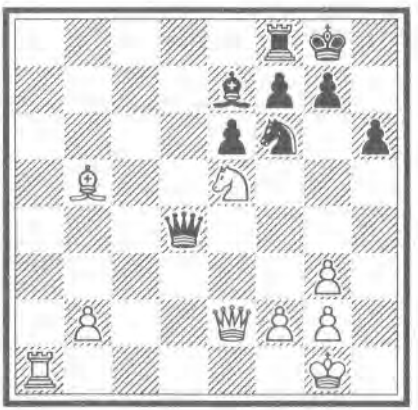
3.	. . .	**♖a8:a1**
4.	**♖d1:a1**	**♗b7-c6!**

4...♗:g2!? 5.♔:g2 ♕d5+ ⅋.

5.	**♘c4-e5**	. . .

5.♘ca3 ♗:a3 6.♖:a3 ♕d5 7.♙f3 ♗:b5 8.♗:b5 ♕:d4+ ∓.

5.	. . .	**♗c6:b5**
6.	**♗d3:b5**	**♕d8:d4∓**



Black has better chances because the b-pawn in this position may be a potential weakness.

7.	**♘e5-c6**	**♕d4-d6**
8.	**♖a1-d1**	**♕d6-c7**
9.	**♘c6:e7+**	**♕c7:e7**
10.	**♗b5-c4**	**♙h6-h5!**
11.	**♕e2-d2**	**♖f8-b8**
12.	**♙b2-b3**	**♘f6-g4**
13.	**♕d2-d4**	**♕e7-a3**
14.	**♗c4-e2**	**♘g4-f6**
15.	**♗e2-c4**	**♖b8-a8**
16.	**♙f2-f3**	**♕a3-a5**
17.	**♕d4-e3**	**♙g7-g6**
18.	**♕e3-d2**	**♕a5-c7**
19.	**♕d2-d6**	**♕c7-b7**
20.	**♔g1-h2**	. . .

20.♙b4!? ▷♙b5.

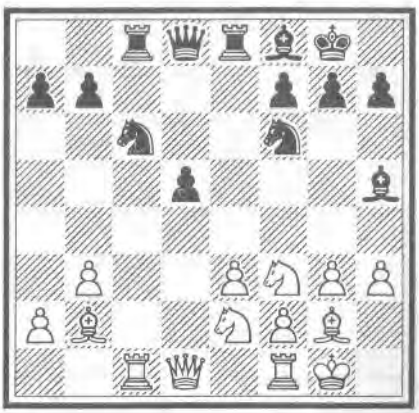
20.	. . .	**♔g8-g7**
21.	**♕d6-e5**	**♖a8-a2**
22.	**♔h2-h3**	**♕b7-a7**
23.	**♕e5-d4**	**♕a7-c7**
24.	**♖d1-d2**	**♖a2-a7**

Black has a minimal positional advantage, which he realizes later on.

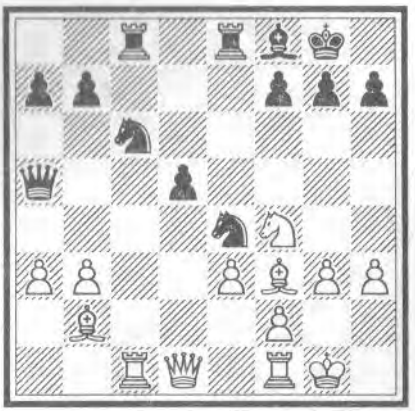
No.42

Gorelov — Lputian

Telavi, 1982



1.	. . .	**♘f6-e4!**
2.	**♘e2-f4**	**♗h5:f3**
3.	**♗g2:f3**	**♕d8-a5!**
4.	**♙a2-a3**	. . .



4. . . . ♕a5-d2!
5. ♗f3:e4! . . .

5.♖c2? ♕:d1 6.♖:d1 ♘d4! -+.

5. . . . ♕d2:b2=

Black has exchanged White's active pieces by a series of manoeuvres thus equalizing the game.

Subject: Activity development. Capturing open files.

No.43
Botvinnik — Alekhine
The Netherlands, 1938

The position of the black pawn on b6 is important for assessing the position, because its advance has weakened the light squares on the queenside.

1. ♘c3:d5! ♙e6:d5
2. ♗c4-b5 ♗c8-d7

If 2...♗b7, then 3.♕a4 ♖c8 4.♗f4 with an improvement of White's position.

3. ♕d1-a4 ♘c6-b8

3...♖c8 gives nothing, for example: 4.♗d2? (bad is 4.♗:c6 ♗:c6 5.♕:a7 ♗b4! ▷ ♖a8) 4...♙a5 ±.

4. ♗c1-f4 ♗d7:b5
5. ♕a4:b5 ♙a7-a6
6. ♕b5-a4 . . .

7.♗:b8 ♖:b8 8.♕:a6 ± threatens.

6. . . . ♗e7-d6

Trying to ease the position by the exchanges.

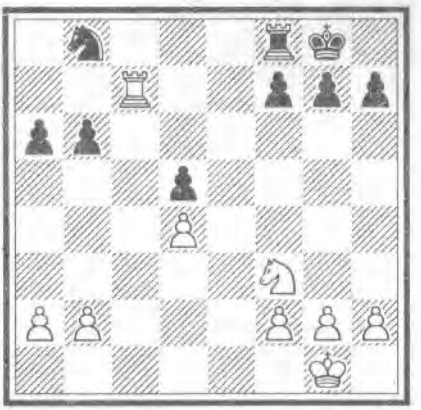
7. ♗f4:d6 ♕d8:d6
8. ♖a1-c1 . . .

White controls two open files, his advantage is beyond doubt.

8. . . .	**♖a8-a7**
9. ♕a4-c2	**♖a7-c7**

If 9...♙f6, then 10.♕f5±.

10. ♖e1:e7	**♕d6:e7**
11. ♕c2-c7!	**♕e7:c7**
12. ♖c1:c7	**. . .**



The control of the c-file and Black's weak pawns guarantee a significant White advantage, and White wins gradually despite fierce resistance.

12.. . .	**♙f7-f6!**
13. ♔g1-f1	**. . .**

13.♖b7?! ♖c8! 14.♔f1 ♙b5 and Black has improved his position.

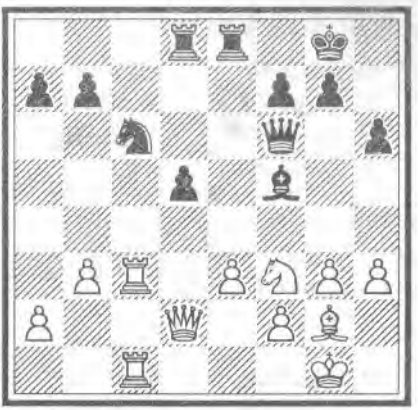
13.. . .	**♖f8-f7**
14. ♖c7-c8+	**♖f7-f8**
15. ♖c8-c3!	**♙g7-g5**
16. ♘f3-e1	**♙h7-h5**
17. ♙h2-h4!	**♘b8-d7**
18. ♖c3-c7	**♖f8-f7**
19. ♘e1-f3	**♙g5-g4**
20. ♘f3-e1	**♙f6-f5**
21. ♘e1-d3	**♙f5-f4**
22. ♙f2-f3	**♙g4:f3**
23. ♙g2:f3	**♙a6-a5**
24. ♙a2-a4	**♔g8-f8**
25. ♖c7-c6	**♔f8-e7**
26. ♔f1-f2	**♖f7-f5**
27. ♙b2-b3	**♔e7-d8**
28. ♔f2-e2	**♘d7-b8**
29. ♖c6-g6	**♔d8-c7**
30. ♘d3-e5	**♘b8-a6**

Now 31.♖g5 leads to a win in a few moves.

No.44

Larsen — Penrose

Palma de Mallorca, 1972



Black threatens 1...♗:h3 or 1...♙d4. White's rooks are doubled on the c-file, the c6 knight prevents the development of their activity.

1. ♘f3-d4!	**. . .**

Bad is 1.♖d1? ♗:h3!

1. . . .	**♘c6:d4**
2. ♕d2:d4	**♕f6:d4**

3. ♙e3:d4 . . .

After the exchanges on d4 Black lost pieces which could have been active. White transposes to the ending, where his advantage is determined by the control of the c-file and Black's weak d5-pawn.

3. . . . ♖e8-e7
4. ♙g3-g4! . . .

White limits Black's lightsquare bishop and seizes space on the kingside.

4. . . . ♗f5-e6

4...♗e4?! 5.♙f3 ♗g6 6.♖c7 ♖ed7 7.♖:d7 ♖:d7 8.♖c8+ ♔h7 9.♔f2 ±.

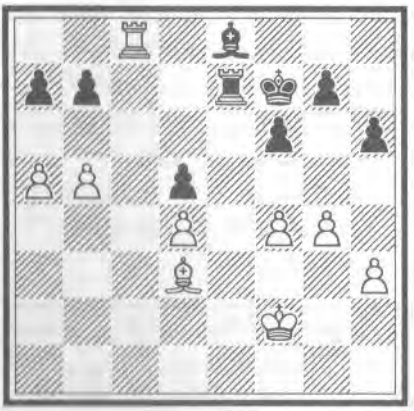
5. ♙f2-f4 ♙f7-f6
6. ♔g1-f2 ♗e6-f7
7. ♗g2-f3 ♔g8-f8
8. ♙a2-a4! . . .

White strives to create pawn weakness on Black's queenside to realize his advantage easily.

8. . . . ♖d8-c8
9. ♙a4-a5 ♖c7-d7
10. ♙b3-b4 ♖e8-d8
11. ♗f3-e2! . . .

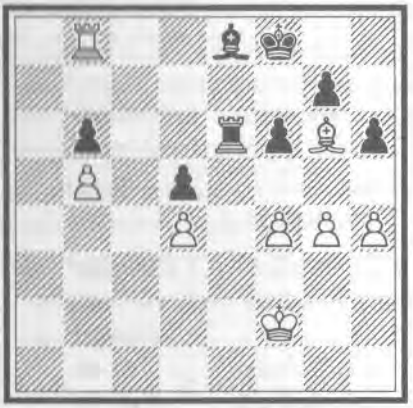
Transferring the bishop to a more active position.

11.. . . ♗f7-e8
12. ♗e2-d3 ♖d7-e7
13. ♖c3-c8 ♖d8:c8
14. ♖c1:c8 ♔f8-f7
15. ♙b4-b5! . . .



White has realized his plan. 16.♖a8 threatens.

15.. . . ♙b7-b6
16. ♙a5:b6 ♙a7:b6
17. ♖c8-b8 ♖e7-e6
18. ♗d3-g6+! ♔f7-f8
19. ♙h3-h4 . . .



Zugzwang position! Black is helpless, he has no useful moves.

19.. . . ♖e6-e7
20. ♙h4-h5 ♖e7-e6
21. ♔f2-f3 ♖e6-e7

22. ♙g4-g5

White's king joins the struggle. Black resigned.

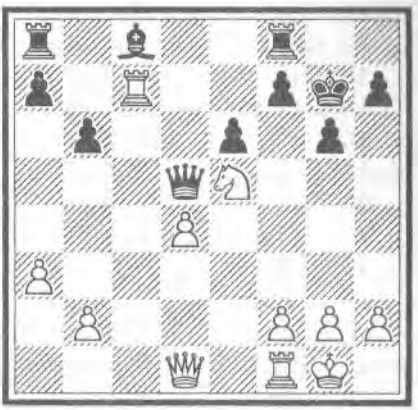
No.45

Smyslov — Ribli

London, 1983

White is better developed, his knight at c3 and bishop at e4 cover the important point d5. Black hasn't developed his pieces, he has a problem with the development of the bishop at c8 in particular. White's task is to use his spatial and mobility advantage, by creating some weaknesses in his opponent's position. Black's goal is to keep the blockade square d5 and strive to simplify the game.

1.	**♗c1-h6**	**♗f6-g7**
2.	**♗h6:g7**	**♔g8:g7**
3.	**♖a1-c1!**	**♙b7-b6**
4.	**♘c3:d5**	**♘e7:d5**
5.	**♗e4:d5!**	**♕d8:d5**
6.	**♖c1-c7!±**	. . .



6.	. . .	**♗c8-b7**
7.	**♕d1-g4!**	. . .

White pieces: the queen at g4, the c7 rook and e5 knight put strong pressure on Black's castling position, and Black's battery — the b7 bishop and queen at d5, has a decorative character because White easily neutralizes its pressure.

7.	. . .	**♖a8-d8**

7...♖ac8 8.♖d7 ♕e4 9.♕:e4 ♗:e4 10.♙f3 ♗d5 11.♖:a7 ♖c2 12.♙b4 ±.

8.	**♖f1-d1**	**♙a7-a5**
9.	**♙h2-h4!**	**♖d8-c8**

9...♙h5? 10.♕:g6+.

10.	**♖c7-d7**	**♕d5-e4**
11.	**♕g4-g5**	**♗b7-c6**
12.	**♙f2-f3!**	**♕e4-f5**

12...♕e2? 13.♘g4! ♕:d1+ 14.♔h2 ♔g8 15.♕h6 ▷♘f6#.

13.	**♖d7-a7**	**♗c6-a4**
14.	**♖d1-e1**	**♖c8-c2**
15.	**♙b2-b4**	**♗a4-b3**

16. ♙b4:a5	**♙b6:a5**
17. ♖e1-e4	**♙h7-h6**
18. ♕g5-e3	**♖c2-b2**
19. ♖e4-g4!+-	**♙g6-g5**
20. ♙h4:g5	**♙h6-h5**
21. ♖g4-g3	**♙h5-h4**
22. ♖g3-g4	**♙h4-h3**
23. ♙g5-g6	**♙h3-h2+**
24. ♔g1:h2	**♖f8-h8+**
25. ♔h2-g3	**♖b2:g2+**
26. ♔g3:g2	**♕f5-c2+**
27. ♕e3-f2	**♖h8-h2+**
28. ♔g2:h2	**♕c2:f2+**
29. ♔h2-h3	**♕f2-f1+**
30. ♖g4-g2	**♕f1-h1+**

Black resigned.

No.46

Karpov — Geller

Moscow, 1981

White has a weak structure on the kingside, but it isn't too important because the bishop on g3 well protects these weaknesses. Black's positional shortcoming is the serious weakening of the queenside due to the abscence of the light-square bishop.

1. ♗c4-a6! **♘h5:g3**

The move is forced, otherwise Black will lose in the exchange.

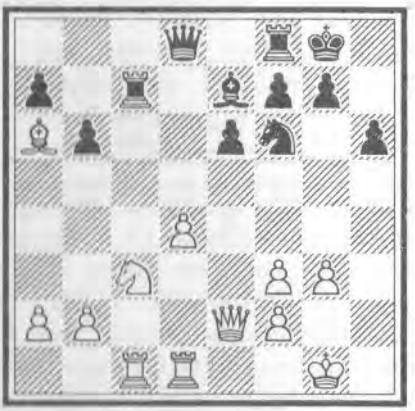
2. ♙h2:g3 **♖c8-c7**

3. ♖f1-d1 . . .

If 3.♘b5?!, then 3...♖:c1 4.♖:c1 ♘b8! 5.♘:a7 ♕:d4 =.

3. . . . **♘d7-f6**

If 3...♘b8, then 4.♗c4 with the unpleasant threat ♙d4-d5.



4. ♘c3-b5! **♖c7:c1**

5. ♖d1:c1 **♘f6-d5**

5...♕d5 6.♙a3 and Black is doomed to a passive defence.

6. ♘b5:a7! . . .

Although White's pieces linger for sometime on the queenside, Black can do nothing.

6. . . . **♘d5-b4**

7. ♙a2-a3 **♕d8-a8**

7...♘:a6 8.♕:a6 ♕:d4 9.♘c6 ± is bad.

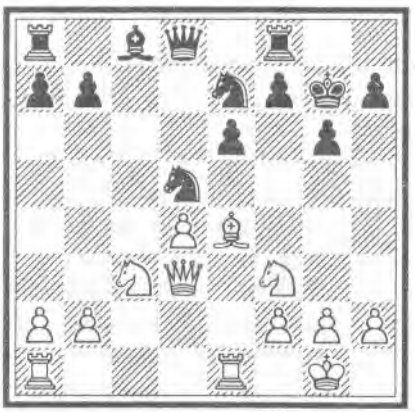
8. ♖c1-c7 ♘b4-d5

8...♕d8 9.♖b7!

9. ♖c7-b7± ♗e7-f6
10. ♘a7-c6 ♖f8-c8
11. ♘c6-e5 ♗f6:e5
12. ♙d4:e5 ♖c8-c1+
13. ♔g1-g2 ♕a8-d8
14. ♗a6-d3 ♖c1-a1
15. ♕e2-e4+- ♙g7-g6
16. ♖b7:f7! ♔g8:f7
17. ♕e4:g6+ ♔f7-f8
18. ♕g6:h6+

Black resigned.

No.47
Antoshin — Neshmetdinov
Ryazan, 1967



The undeveloped queenside is the essential shortcoming of Black's position. Black is threatened by a hopeless ending in case of an exchange on d5.

1. ♖a1-c1! ♙b7-b6

If 1...♗d7, then 2.♗:d5 ♘:d5 3.♘:d5 ♙:d5 4.♕b3 ♗c6 5.♘e5 ±.

2. ♗e4:d5! ♘e7:d5
3. ♘c3:d5 ♕d8:d5
4. ♖c1-c7!± . . .

Black has no useful moves, the white rook on the seventh rank paralyses his actions.

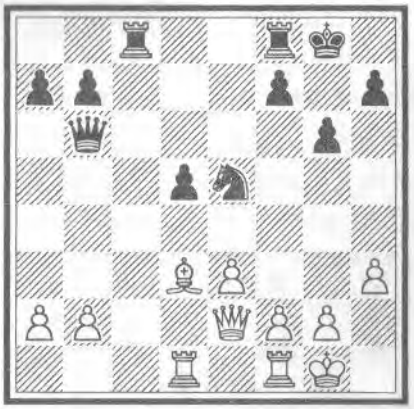
4. . . . ♕d5:a2?!

It is difficult to advise Black on a good continuation, for example 4...♗b7? 5.♖e5 +-, or 4...♗d7 5.♘e5 ♖fd8 6.♕e4 ♕:e4 7.♖:e4 ♗e8 8.♖f4 ♙g5 9.♘:f7 +-.

5. ♘f3-e5 ♕a2-d5
6. ♕d3-e3+-

Black resigned.

No.48
Novikov — Mikhalchishin
Lvov, 1986



White threatens to put pressure on the d5 square by doubling rooks on the d-file and transferring his bishop to the a2-g8 diagonal. How should Black organize a counterplay?

1.	. . .	**♖c8-c5!**

Black combines defence with activation. If 1...♖fd8, then 2.♗b1 ♘c4 3.♙b3 ♘a3 4.♗d3 ♙d4 5.♙e4± ▷ ♙f2-f4-f5.

2.	**♗d3-b1**	**♖f8-c8**
3.	**♖d1-d4**	**♖c5-c1!**
4.	**♖d4:d5**	. . .

If 4.♙b3, then 4...♖:f1+ 5.♕:f1 ♖c5 ▷ ♕b6-c7↓.

4.	. . .	**♖c1:f1+**
5.	**♔g1:f1**	**♖c8-c1+**
6.	**♖d5-d1**	**♖c1:d1+**
7.	**♕e2:d1**	**♕b6:b2**
8.	**♕d1-b3**	**♕b2-d2=**

A draw.

Subject: Development of activity in the centre.

No.49
Mikhalchishin — Bareev
Dortmund, 1990

All white pieces work perfectly except the knight on b3. White indends to transfer the knight from b3 to e3, where it will reinforce pressure on the d5 pawn.

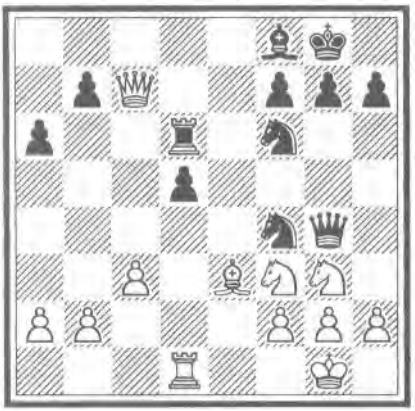
1.	**♘b3-d2!**	**♘d6-e4**
2.	**♗e5-d4**	**♘e4-c5**
3.	**♕d3-b5!**	**♙a7-a6**
4.	**♕b5-a5**	**♘c5-e6**
5.	**♗d4-b6**	**♖d8-d6**
6.	**♙c2-c3**	**♘e6-f4**
7.	**♘d2-f1**	. . .

Black's activity is stopped easily.

7.	. . .	**♕c8-g4**
8.	**♘f1-g3**	. . .

8.♘e3!?

8.	. . .	**♗e7-f8**
9.	**♖e1:e8**	**♘f6:e8**
10.	**♗b6-e3**	**♘e8-f6**
11.	**♕a5-c7!**	. . .

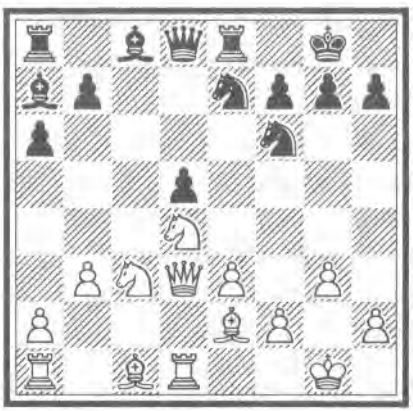


The bishop joins the play with decisive effect.

11.	. . .	**♙b7-b5**
12.	**♕c7:f7+!+-**	**♔g8:f7**
13.	**♘f3-e5+**	

White soon won.

No.50
Nei — Suba
Tallinn, 1983



Black placed his pieces harmoniously. The static weakness of the pawn on d5 isn't felt. White has a rather weakened castling position.

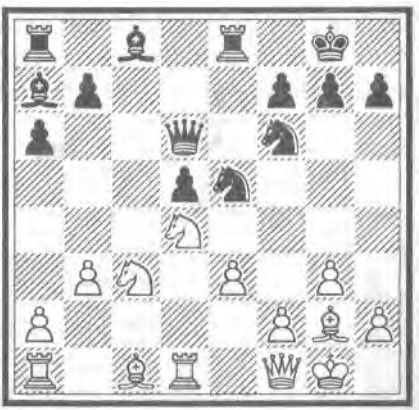
1.	. . .	**♕d8-d6!**

Preventing ♗c1-a3 and planning to regroup pieces ♘f6-g4 and ♕d6-h6 with an attack on the kingside. 1...♘g6?! 2.♘f3 = is inferior.

2.	**♗e2-f3**	**♘e7-g6!**

If 2...♘g4, then 3.♗g2 ♕h6 4.♙h3 ♘e5 5.♕f1⅞.

3.	**♗f3-g2**	**♘g6-e5**
4.	**♕d3-f1**	. . .



4.	. . .	**♗c8-g4!**

White has to choose: to weaken the pawn chain by the move ♙f3 or to realize a variation 5.♖d2!? ♖ac8 6.♗b2 ♗:d4 7.♖:d4 ♘f3+ 8.♗:f3 ♗:f3∓, which is the lesser evil.

5.	**♙f2-f3?!**	**♗g4-d7**
6.	**♔g1-h1**	**♖a8-c8**

After 6...♘c6∓ Black has got a lasting positional advantage. The weak e3 pawn and passive position of the white pieces firmly placed the initiative in Black's hands.

7.	♘c3-e2	♘e5-g6
8.	♗c1-d2	♙h7-h5
9.	♗g2-h3	♖e8-e5
10.	♗h3:d7	♕d6:d7
11.	♖a1-c1	♖c8-e8
12.	♖c1-c2	♘g6-e7
13.	♖d1-c1	♗a7-b6
14.	♘e2-f4	♘e7-f5
15.	♘d4:f5	♕d7:f5
16.	♘f4-g2	♖e5-e7
17.	♗d2-b4	♗b6:e3
18.	♘g2-h4	♕f5-h7
19.	♗b4:e7	♗e3:c1
20.	♖c2-c7	♗c1-g5
21.	♘h4-g2	♙d5-d4
22.	♙f3-f4	♘f6-d5
23.	♖c7-d7	♗g5:e7
24.	♖d7:d5	♗e7-f6
25.	♙h2-h4	♕h7-e4
26.	♖d5-d7	♖e8-c8
27.	♖d7-d6	♖c8-c2
28.	♙a2-a4	♙d4-d3
29.	♔h1-h2	♖c2-e2

White resigned.

Subject: Transition into the endgame by an exchange of queens.

No.51
Polugaevsky — Zaitsev
Vladimir, 1969

How should White continue?

1. ♕d4-a4! . . .

The plan 1.♕d3 ▷ ♗d4 is possible — changing the blocking queen with a bishop with a lasting small positional advantage. After the exchange of queens the d5 pawn loses its dynamic force and becomes weak.

1.	. . .	♕a5:a4
2.	♘c3:a4	♙b7-b6

Preventing 3.♘c5

3.	♘a4-c3	. . .

The knight has nothing to do on a4.

3.	. . .	♖d8-d7
4.	♘c3-b5!	. . .

The transfer of the knight to the blockade position d4 increases positional pressure in the centre. The rooks' doubling on the d-file

and the capture of a pawn by exchange of the darksquare bishop was weaker.

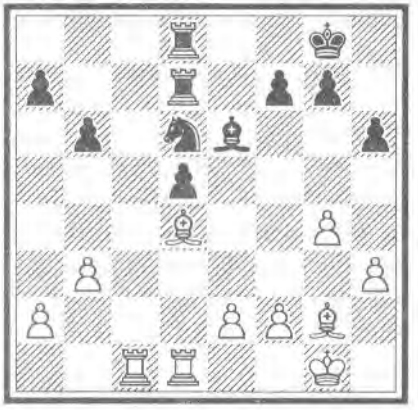
4. . . . **♖a8-d8**
5. ♙b2-b3 **. . .**

Defending against 5...♙d4.

5. . . . **♘f6-e8**
6. ♘b5-d4± **♗e7-f6**
7. ♙h2-h3 **. . .**

White strives to limit the mobility of Black's pieces.

7. . . . **♘e8-d6**
8. ♙g3-g4 **♗f6:d4**
9. ♗e3:d4± **. . .**



White's advantage is beyond doubt.

9. . . . **♙f7-f5**

9...♙f6, ▷♗f7 was stronger. This move improves the performance of White's darksquare bishop.

10. ♙f2-f3 **. . .**

Forced temporary concession, but it's better than 10.♙:f5?!

10. . . . **♘d6-b5**
11. ♙e2-e3 **. . .**

If 11.♗b2, then 11...♙d4↑↓.

11. . . . **♔g8-f7**

In case of 11...♘:d4 12.♖:d4 Black is deprived of counterplay, but it was the lesser evil.

12. ♗d4-b2 **♙f5:g4**

If 12...♙d4, then 13.♙:f5 ♗:f5 14.♙e4 ♗e6 15.♗f1±.

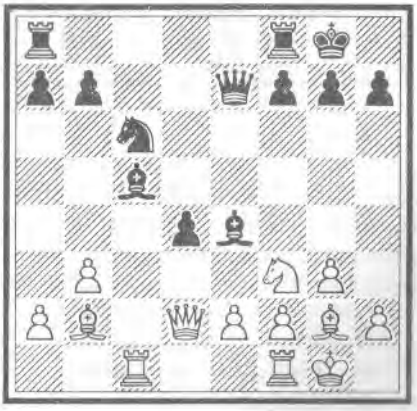
13. ♙f3:g4 **♔f7-g8**
14. ♗b2-e5 **. . .**

With the threat 15.♙a4.

14. . . . **♗e6-f7**
15. ♙a2-a4 **♖d8-e8**
16. ♗e5-f4 **♙g7-g5**
17. ♗f4-h2 **♘b5-a3**

Now was interesting 18.♖d3, ▷♙b4, or 18.♙e4 ♙d4 19.♙e5 with a winning position for White.

No.52
Hübner — Ivkov
Germany, 1975



How should White continue?

1. ♕d2-g5! . . .

White strives to transpose into the ending by exchanging queens. In the ending the weakness of the d4 pawn is of utmost importance.

1.	. . .	**♕e7:g5**
2.	**♘f3:g5**	**♗e4:g2**
3.	**♔g1:g2**	**♗c5-e7?**

3...♗b6 4.♖fd1 ♖e8 5.♔f1 ♖ad8 6.♘f3± is more persistent.

4.	**♘g5-f3**	**♗e7-f6**
5.	**♖f1-d1**	. . .

5. . . . ♙d4-d3?!

5...♙d3?! accelerates a defeat. 5...♖fd8 6.♖d2, ▷ ♖ed1 is more persistent and the pawn on d4 is doomed.

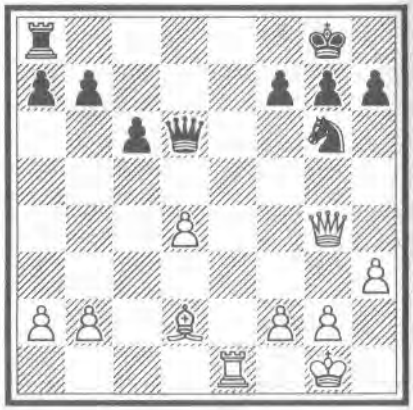
6.	**♗b2:f6**	**♙d3:e2**
7.	**♖d1-d7**	**♙g7:f6**
8.	**♖d7:b7**	. . .

White has a winning position.

No.53

Averbakh — Keres

Moscow, 1950



White has a weak isolated d4 pawn. The d5 square is an excellent blockade position for any black piece. White's bishop has no good squares and his own pawns hinder his movement. It should be noted that Black has to exchange queens to prevent a possible attack on his king.

1. . . . ♕d6-d5!

With the threat 2...♕:a2.

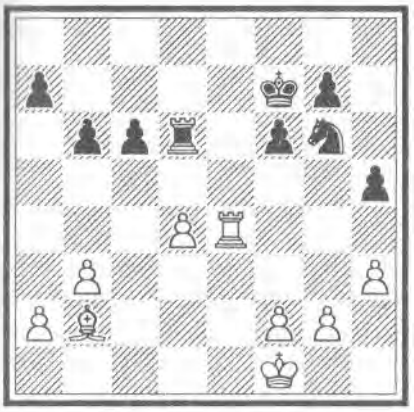
2. ♙b2-b3 ♙h7-h5!

Forcing a favourable situation for Black by the exchange of queens.

3.	**♕g4-e4**	**♕d5:e4**
4.	**♖e1:e4**	**♙f7-f6!**

Black opens the way to d5 for the king. White can only wait and see.

5.	**♔g1-f1**	**♔g8-f7**
6.	**♗d2-a5**	**♙b7-b6**
7.	**♗a5-c3**	**♖a8-d8**
8.	**♗c3-b2**	**♖d8-d6∓**



Black has a positional advantage, he has to improve his position by ♖d5, ♘f8, ♘e6.

9.	**♙g2-g4!?**	**♙h5:g4**
10.	**♙h3:g4**	**♖d6-e6?!**

Black should have abstained from an exchange of rooks because, simplifications make his defence easier for White. He should continue 10...♘f8, ▷ ♘e6, ♖d5.

11.	**♙f2-f3**	**♘g6-e7**
12.	**♗b2-c1**	**♘e7-d5**
13.	**♗c1-d2**	**♖e6-d6**
14.	**♔f1-e2**	**♖d6-d8**
15.	**♔e2-f2**	**♘d5-c7**
16.	**♙a2-a4**	**♘c7-e6**
17.	**♗d2-e3**	**♖d8-d5**
18.	**♔f2-g3**	**♔f7-e7**

After 18...♙b5 19.♔f2 ♙:a4 20.♙:a4 ♖a5 21.♙d5 ♙:d5 22.♖b4 ↑↓.

19.	**♙g4-g5?!**	**♙f6-f5!**
20.	**♖e4-e5**	**♔e7-d6**
21.	**♖e5:d5+**	**♔d6:d5**
22.	**♙g5-g6!**	**♙a7-a5!**

22...♘:d4 23.♗:d4 ♔:d4 24.♔f4 ♙b5 25.♙:b5 ♙:b5 26.♙b4 ♔c4 27.♔:f5 ♔:b4 28.♙f4! ♙a5 29.♔e4! ♙a4 30.♔d3 = (Keres) 30...♔b3 31.♙f5 ♙a3 32.♙f6 ♙a2 33.♙:g7 ±.

23.	**♔g3-h4**	**♘e6:d4**
24.	**♗e3-h6**	**♘d4-e6**
25.	**♗h6-e3**	**♙c6-c5**
26.	**♔h4-h5**	**. . .**

Now 26...♙c4 27.♙:c4+ ♔:c4 28.♗:b6 ♔b4-+ was leading to an easy win.

26.	**. . .**	**♔d5-e5?!**
27.	**♗e3-c1**	**♘e6-d4?**

27...♔d5! 28.♗b2 ♙c4 29.♙:c4+ ♔:c4 30.♗:g7 ♘:g7+ 31.♔g5 ♘e8! 32.♔:f5 ♔d5, ▷♙b6-b5-+.

28.	**♗c1-h6**	**. . .**

28.♗b2? ♔f4!

28.	**. . .**	**♔e5-f6**
29.	**♗h6-g5+**	**♔f6-e6**
30.	**♗g5-h6?**	**♙g7:h6**
31.	**♔h5-h6**	**♘d4-c6!**

And after few moves Black won.

Subject: A transition into the ending by exchanging minor pieces.

No.54
Kortchnoi — Karpov
Merano, 1981

How should Black continue?

1. . . . ♘f6-h5!

This forces an exchange of the darksquare bishops, which considerably decreases White's attack potential. Black's main task is to keep control over the d5 square.

2. ♗h4:e7 . . .

If 2.♗g3, then 2...♘:g3 3.♙h:g3 ♗f6 and White has problems with the defence of the d4 pawn.

2. . . . ♘c6:e7

It is important to keep control over the d5 square.

3. ♗c4-b3 . . .

White's position is not better so he should have thought of equalizing by 3.♙d5 ♙:d5 4.♘:d5 ♘:d5 5.♗:d5 ♘f4 6.♗e4 ♕:d1 7.♖c:d1=.

3. . . . ♘h5-f6
4. ♘f3-e5 ♗c8-d7
5. ♕d1-e2 ♖a8-c8
6. ♘c3-e4?! . . .

The exchange of minor pieces is favourable for Black, he should have thought about 6.♖fe1 and, if 6...♗c6?, then 7.♘:f7. Black has to play 6...♖c7.

6. . . . ♘f6:e4
7. ♕e2:e4 ♗d7-c6!

Black doesn't fear exchanges on c6, because the d4 pawn is potentially weaker than the c6 pawn.

8. ♘e5:c6 ♖c8:c6
9. ♖c1-c3 . . .

After 9.♖:c6 it will be 9...♙:c6! and because of the weakness of the d4-pawn Black has better chances.

9. . . .	**♕ d8-d6**
10. ♙g2-g3	**. . .**

There was no need to hurry with this move, the g3 square could be used by White for joining his heavy pieces to the attack on the black king.

10.. . .	**♖f8-d8**
11. ♖f1-d1	**♖c6-b6!**

Black prepares 12...♕d7.

12. ♕e4-e1	**♕d6-d7**

If 12...♖b4, then 13.♖c4, offering an exchange of rooks.

13. ♖c3-d3	**. . .**

If 13.♖c5, then 13...♖d6 14.♖dc1 ♘c6 15.♗a4 ♘:d4! 16.♗:d7 ♘f3+ 17.♔f1 ♘:e1 18.♗:e6 ♘d3 -+.

13.. . .	**♖b6-d6**
14. ♕e1-e4	**♕d7-c6!**
15. ♕e4-f4	**. . .**

15.♕:c6 ♘:c6 16.♙d5 ♘b4 ∓.

15.. . .	**♘e7-d5**
16. ♕f4-d2	**♕c6-b6**

17...♘b4 threatens.

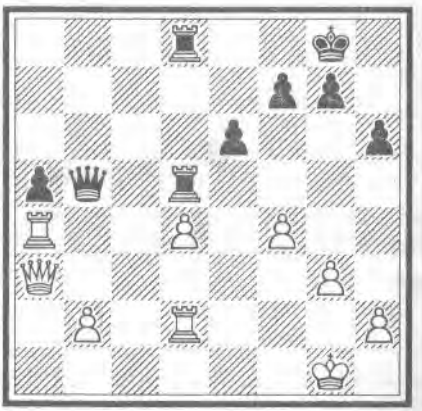
17. ♗b3:d5?	**. . .**

Dooming himself to a gloomy defence. It was better to abstain from the exchange by 17.♙a3.

17. . . .	**♖d6:d5∓**
18. ♖d3-b3	**♕b6-c6**
19. ♕d2-c3	**♕c6-d7**
20. ♙f2-f4	**. . .**

Defending from ♙e6-e5, but now the pawn screen of the white king is weakened.

20.. . .	**♙b7-b6!**
21. ♖b3-b4	**♙b6-b5**
22. ♙a2-a4	**♙b5:a4**
23. ♕c3-a3	**♙a7-a5**
24. ♖b4:a4	**♕d7-b5!**
25. ♖d1-d2	**. . .**



25.. . .	**♙e6-e5!**
26. ♙f4:e5	**♖d5:e5**
27. ♕a3-a1	**♕b5-e8!-+**
28. ♙d4:e5	**♖d8:d2**
29. ♖a4:a5	**♕e8-c6**
30. ♖a5-a8+	**♔g8-h7**
31. ♕a1-b1+	**♙g7-g6**
32. ♕b1-f1	**♕c6-c5+**
33. ♔g1-h1	**♕c5-d5+**

White resigned.

No.55
Karpov — Kuz'min
Leningrad, 1973

How should White continue?

1. ♗h4-g3! . . .

White should exchange minor pieces. The exchange of the dark-square bishops removes the defender of the weakened squares c5 and e5.

1. . . . **♗d6:g3**

There is no need to hurry with the exchange because it improves White's pawn structure. 1...♗g4!? would've been better.

2. ♙h2:g3 **♗c8-g4**
3. ♖f1-e1 **♖a8-d8**
4. ♙c2-c3 **♕c7-b6**
5. ♗b5-d3 . . .

▷ 6.♗:h7+ ♔:h7 7.♘g5+ +-.

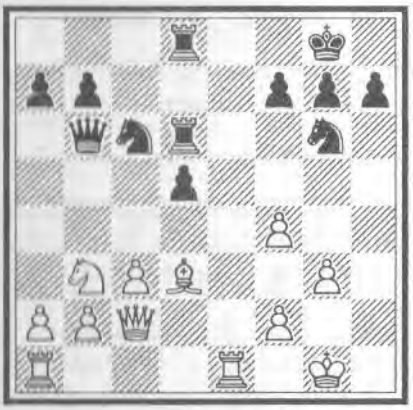
5. . . . **♘e7-g6**
6. ♕d1-c2 **♗g4:f3**

The exchange is necessary, otherwise White will control the d4 square.

7. ♙g2:f3 . . .

Black has no active plan. He wants to play ♙d5-d4, but he made so many positional compromises that this move isn't dangerous for White. White strives to limit the activity of Black's knights. For example, if 7...♙d4, then 8.♙f4! ♙:c3 9.♙:c3±.

7. . . . **♖d8-d6**
8. ♙f3-f4 **♖f8-d8**



White cannot block the d4 square because it is conrolled by Black. Black is ready to realize ♙d5-d4. White has to take measures to prevent this advance. In assessing the position it is necessary to consider the placement of the black knight on g6, which is constrained by the white pawns f4 and g3 and cannot influence the course of events very much.

9. ♙a2-a3!! . . .

White eliminated the threat ♘b4. If 9...♙d4 then 10.♙c4±.

9. . . . **♙h7-h5**
10. ♔g1-g2 . . .

White's plan includes a transfer of the knight to f3 and a doubling of rooks on the e-file.

10. . . . **♙h5-h4**
11. ♖e1-e2 **♘g6-f8**
12. ♘b3-d2 **♖d6-h6**
13. ♘d2-f3 **♙h4:g3**

Opening the game is to White's advantage because he has the initiative. If 13...♙h3, then the breakaway pawn will become an easy catch for White.

14. ♙f2:g3 **♘f8-d7**
15. ♖a1-e1 **♔g8-f8**
16. ♙g3-g4! . . .

White pawns join the fight and limit the activity of Black's pieces!

16. . . . **♕b6-c7**
17. ♙g4-g5 **♖h6-h8**
18. ♔g2-g3! . . .

White's king supports an offensive of his flank pawns!

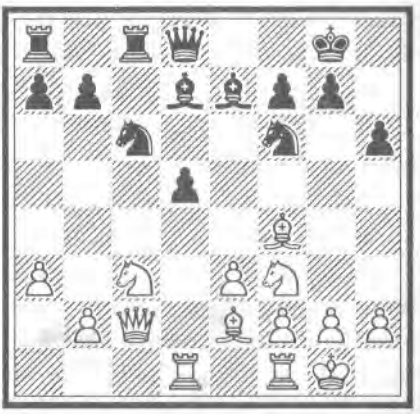
18. . . . **♘d7-c5**
19. ♗d3-f5 **♙g7-g6**
20. ♙b2-b4+- **♘c5-e4+**

20...♙:f5? 21.♙:c5 ♕d7 22.♖h2 ♔g7 23.♘h4+- is bad.

21. ♗f5:e4 **♙d5:e4**
22. ♕c2:e4 **♔f8-g7**
23. ♙b4-b5 **♘c6-a5**
24. ♕e4-e7! **♕c7:e7**
25. ♖e2:e7 **♖d8-d3**
26. ♖e7-c7 **♘a5-b3**
27. ♔g3-g4 **♖h8-f8**
28. ♖e1-e7

White won.

No.56
Karpov — Spassky
Montreal, 1979



Black's d5 pawn is weak. White has to strive for an exchange of Black's minor pieces, which can control the d4 square effectively: the knight at c6 and the darksquare bishop.

1. ♘f3-e5! . . .

1.♕b3!? ♘a5 (1...♗e6 2.♕:b7 ♘h5 3.♘e5±) 2.♕a2 ♗e6 3.♘d4, ▷ ♘:e6 and ♙e4±.

1. . . . **♗d7-e6**

Karpov recommended 1...♕e8 2.♘:c6 ♗:c6 3.♕b3 ♖d8 4.♗f3 ♘e4, but 2.♘:d7! ♕:d7 3.♗f3± is stronger.

2. ♘e5:c6! **♖c8:e6**

2... ♙:c6 3.♗a6+-.

3.	**♗e2-f3**	**♕d8-b6**
4.	**♗f4-e5!**	. . .

A very strong move, forcing the exchange of a pair of knights and consolidating White's control over the important d4 square.

4.	. . .	**♘f6-e4**
5.	**♕c2-e2!**	. . .

5.♗d4 is inferior because of 5...♗c5 6.♗:c5 ♖:c5 7.♗:e4 ♙:e4 8.♕:e4 ♕:b2 9.♘a4 ♖e5 10.♕f4 ♕b5↑↓.

5.	. . .	**♘e4:c3**
6.	**♗e5:c3**	**♖a8-d8**

6...♗:a3 7.♗:g7±.

7.	**♖d1-d3**	**♖c6-d6**
8.	**♖f1-d1**	**♖d6-d7**
9.	**♖d1-d2**	. . .

White realizes the placement of pieces, recommended by Alekhine for such positions: rooks are advanced and the queen is kept behind them.

9.	. . .	**♕b6-b5**
10.	**♕e2-d1**	**♙b7-b6**

White ties Black down by defence of the d5 pawn. Now it is necessary to create a second weakness and White starts a pawn storm on the king-side.

11.	**♙g2-g3**	. . .

There is no need to hurry, Black has no counterplay.

11.	. . .	**♗e7-f8**
12.	**♗f3-g2**	**♗f8-e7**
13.	**♕d1-h5!**	**♙a7-a6**

14.♙e4 threatens.

14.	**♙h2-h3**	**♕b5-c6**
15.	**♔g1-h2**	**♙a6-a5**
16.	**♙f2-f4!**	**♙f7-f6**

16...♙f5?! 17.♕g6 ♗f8 18.♗e5. ▷ ♙g3-g4.

17.	**♕h5-d1**	**♕c6-b5**

17...♖d6 is more persistent, putting the rook on a thrice defenced square.

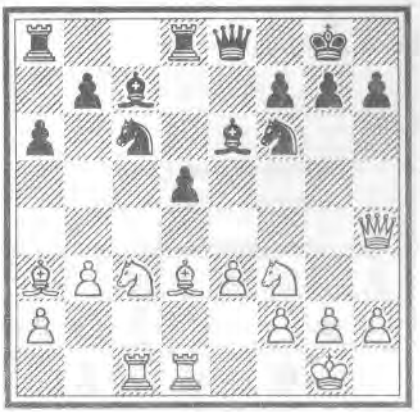
18.	**♙g3-g4**	**♙g7-g5**

18...♗d6 19.♔h1 ♗c7 is more persistent, preventing the movement of White's pawns.

19.	**♔h2-h1**	**♕b5-c6**
20.	**♙f4-f5!**	**♗e6-f7**
21.	**♙e3-e4!+-**	**♔g8-g7**
22.	**♙e4:d5**	**♕c6-c7**
23.	**♖d2-e2**	**♙b6-b5**
24.	**♖e2:e7**	**♖d7:e7**
25.	**♙d5-d6**	**♕c7-c4**
26.	**♙b2-b3**	

White won.

No.57
Rubinstein — Teichman
Teplitz-Schoenau, 1922



White's pieces are extremely well situated.

1. ♘c3-a4! . . .

1.♘e2, ▷♘d4 is not bad.
White threatens 2.♘c5 or 2.♗b2. Black has to exchange the dark-square bishops and it's to White's favour.

1. . . . **♗c7-d6**
2. ♗a3:d6 **♖d8:d6**

After the exchange of the dark-square bishops Black has minimal chances for activity, and White's knights seize the important dark squares c5 and d4.

3. ♘a4-c5 **♕e8-e7**
4. ♘f3-d4! . . .

Blocking the key d4 square.

4. . . . **♘c6-e5**
5. ♕h4-f4! . . .

White should exchange some minor and heavy pieces and leave the knight on d4 against the passive black bishop on e6 in the endgame.

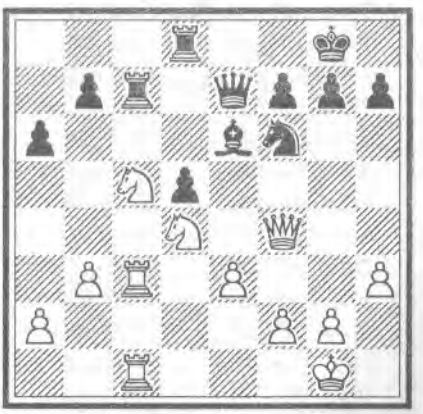
5. . . . **♘e5:d3**
6. ♖d1:d3 **♖a8-c8**
7. ♖d3-c3 . . .

White is ready to seize the c-file.

7. . . . **♖d6-d8±**
8. ♕f4-e5 . . .

White's advantage is obvious.

8. . . . **♘f6-g4**
9. ♕e5-f4 **♘g4-f6**
10. ♙h2-h3! **♖c8-c7?**



A mistake, but Black was unlikely to parry the threat 11.♘:e6 ♙:e6 12.♕e5.

11.	**♕f4:c7!+-**	**♕e7:c7**
12.	**♘c5:e6**	**♕c7:c3**

12...♕b6 13.♘:d8 ♕:d8 14.♖c8+-.

13.	**♖c1:c3**	**♙f7:e6**
14.	**♘d4:e6**	**♖d8-d7**
15.	**♙f2-f3**	**♔g8-f7**
16.	**♘e6-d4**	**♙g7-g6**

White has gradually realizes extra pawn.

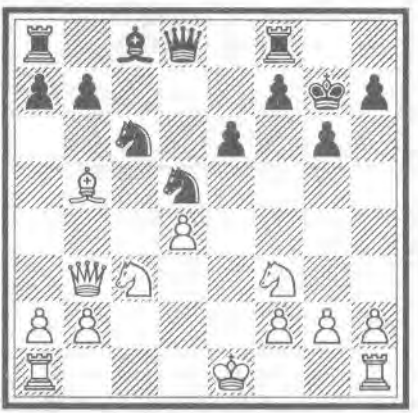
17.	**♔g1-f2**	**♔f7-e7**
18.	**♖c3-c8**	**♘f6-e8**
19.	**♔f2-e2**	**♔e7-f7**
20.	**♔e2-d3**	**♘e8-d6**
21.	**♖c8-c5**	**♘d6-e8**
22.	**♙a2-a4**	**♔f7-e7**
23.	**♙h3-h4**	**♙h6-h5**
24.	**♘d4-e2**	**♘e8-c7**
25.	**♘e2-f4**	**♔e7-d6**
26.	**♖c5-c1**	**♖d7-g7**
27.	**♙g2-g4**	**♙h5:g4**
28.	**♙f3:g4**	**♙a6-a5**
29.	**♖c1-h1**	**♙g6-g5**
30.	**♙h4:g5**	**♖g7:g5**
31.	**♖h1-h6+**	**♔d6-e5**
32.	**♘f4-g6+**	**♔e5-f6**
33.	**♘g6-f8+**	**♔f6-f7**
34.	**♖h6-h7+**	**♖g5-g7**
35.	**♖h7:g7+**	**♔f7:g7**
36.	**♘f8-d7**	**♘c7-a6**
37.	**♔d3-d4**	**♘a6-b4**
38.	**♘d7-c5**	**♙b7-b6**
39.	**♘c5-d7**	**♘b4-c2+**
40.	**♔d4-d3**	**♘c2-b4+**
41.	**♔d3-c3**	**♔g7-g6**
42.	**♘d7:b6**	**♔g6-g5**
43.	**♔c3-d4**	**♘b4-c2+**
44.	**♔d4:d5**	**♘c2:e3+**
45.	**♔d5-c5**	**♘e3:g4**
46.	**♘b6-c4**	

Black resigned.

No.58

Grau — Mikenas

Buenos Aires, 1939

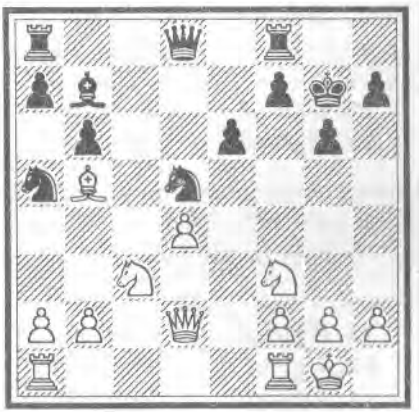


Black has reliable control over the d5 square, White has no active plan of developing the initiative.

1.	**. . .**	**♘c6-a5!**

Attacking the white queen and preparing the development of the bishop c8. It was possible 1...♘ce7 ▷ ♙b6, ♗b7, and if 2.♗c4, then 2...♘b6∓.

2.	**♕b3-c2**	**♙b7-b6**
3.	**0 - 0**	**♗c8-b7**
4.	**♕c2-d2?**	**. . .**



4.♘e4 is stronger, although after 4...♖c8 5.♕d1 ♘c4 Black's advantage is beyond any doubt.
But 5.♖ac1! would be better cutting off the knight at a5.

4. . . . ♘d5:c3!∓

The exchange of minor pieces is favourable for Black.

5. ♕d2:c3 . . .

If 5.♙:c3, then 5...♗:f3 6.♙:f3 ♕d5 7.♕d3 ♖ac8 with a significant advantage for Black.

5.	**. . .**	**♖a8-c8**
6.	**♕c3-d3**	**♗b7:f3!**
7.	**♙g2:f3**	**♕d8-g5+**
8.	**♔g1-h1**	**♖f8-d8**

White has a weak d4 pawn, and a ruined structure on the kingside. White has a hopeless position.

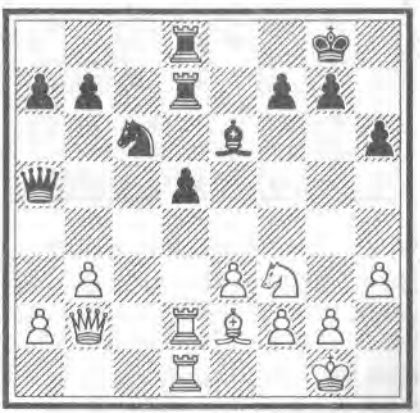
9.	**♗b5-a6**	**♖c8-c7**
10.	**♕d3-e3**	**♕g5-f6**
11.	**♖f1-d1**	**♖c7-d7**
12.	**♖a1-c1**	**♘a5-b7!**

It is necessary to force White to exchange bishop for the black knight, because he is planning to transfer Black's knight to f5. Black easily realizes his positional advantage.

13.	**♙b2-b4**	**♘b7-d6**
14.	**♗a6-d3**	**♘d6-f5!**
15.	**♗d3:f5**	**♕f6:f5**
16.	**♖d1-d2**	**♕f5-f6**
17.	**♖c1-d1**	**♖d7-d5**
18.	**♕e3-c4**	**♖d5-f5**
19.	**♖d2-d3**	**♖d8-d5**
20.	**♔h1-g2**	**♖f5-f4**
21.	**♕e4-e3**	**♕f6-h4!**
22.	**♖d3-a3**	**♙a7-a5**
23.	**♙b4:a5**	**♙b6:a5**
24.	**♕e3-c3**	**♙e6-e5!**
25.	**♖a3:a5**	**♙e5:d4**

White resigned.

No.59
Botvinnik — Zagoriansky
Sverdlovsk, 1943



How should White continue?

1. ♘f3-e5! . . .

After an exchange of knights, White gets full control over the d4 square

and increases pressure on the isolated d5 pawn.

1. . . .	**♘c6:e5**
2. ♕b2:e5	**. . .**

The white bishop obtains a firm position on f3 and the white queen acquires a free hand.

2. . . .	**♕a5-c5**
3. ♗e2-f3	**. . .**

▷ ♙e3-e4.

3. . . .	**♙b7-b6**
4. ♕e5-b2	**♖d8-c8**
5. ♕b2-e5	**♖c8-d8**
6. ♖d2-d4!	**♙a7-a5**

White completely holds Black's pieces by the d5 pawn defence, using Black's loss of counterplay. White has to create a second weakness on the kingside, which will lead to difficulties for Black in defending the pawn d5 and the king's position at the same time.

7. ♙g2-g4!	**♕c5-c6**
8. ♙g4-g5	**♙h6:g5**
9. ♕e5:g5	**♙f7-f6**

10.♖h4 was threating and 11 ♕h5.

10. ♕g5-g6	**♗e6-f7**
11. ♕g6-g3	**♙f6-f5?!**

Unnecessary weakening, though Black has difficulties in opposing the transfer of the rook from d1 to g1.

12. ♕g3-g5	**♕c6-e6**
13. ♔g1-h1	**♕e6-e5**
14. ♖d1-g1	**♖d8-f8**
15. ♕g5-h6	**♖f8-b8**

If 15...♙g6, then decides the play 16.♙h4, ▷♙h4-h5.

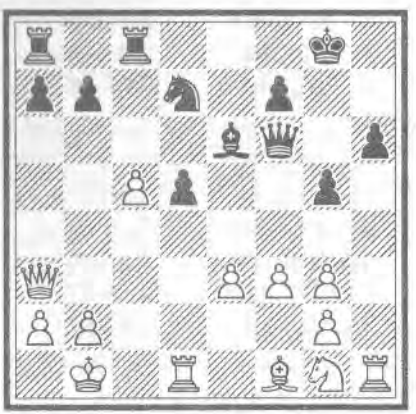
16. ♖d4-h4	**♔g8-f8**
17. ♕h6-h8+	**♗f7-g8**
18. ♖h4-f4	**♖b8-b7**
19. ♖g1-g5	**♖d7-f7**
20. ♕h8-h5	

Black resigned.

No.60

Mikenas — Botvinnik

Moscow, 1941

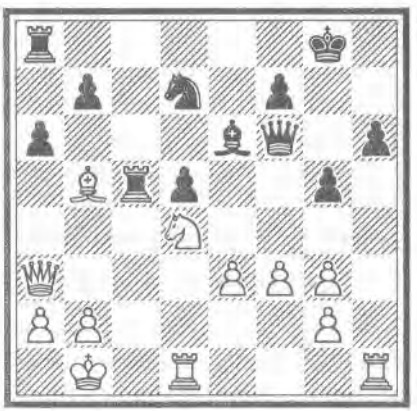


Reliable control over the d4 square and the weakness of Black's kingside guarantee White's positional advantage.

1. ♘g1-e2! . . .

1.♖c1 ♗f5+ 2.♔a1 (2.♗d3 ♕g6) 2...♘:c5 is bad and Black gets the initiative. Threatens 3...♘b3 and 3.♖:c5 ♖:c5 4.♕:c5 ♖c8-+ is impossible.

1. . . .	**♖c8:c5**
2. ♘e2-d4	**♙a7-a6**
3. ♗f1-b5!	. . .



It is necessary to capture the knight at d7 and then the white knight on d4 will have a dominating position.

3. . . .	**♖a8-c8**
4. ♗b5:d7	**♗e6:d7**
5. ♙g3-g4!±	. . .

Fixing a pawn weakness on h6.

5. . . .	**♕f6-g6+**
6. ♔b1-a1	. . .

6.♕d3? ♖c1+ -+.

6. . . .	**♕g6-f6**

Now 7.♕b4 should be played with the following, 8.♕d2 and ♖c1. After the exchange of rooks Black's position is unperspective because, the knight at d4 is superior to the lightsquare bishop. Black would be doomed to a passive defence.

7. ♕a3-d3	**♗d7-a4!**
8. ♖d1-e1	**♗a4-c2**
9. ♕d3-d2	**♗c2-h7**
10. ♖e1-c1	**♙b7-b6**
11. ♖c1:c5	**♙b6:c5**
12. ♘d4-b3	**♙c5-c4**
13. ♘b3-d4	**♖c8-e8**
14. ♖h1-e1	**♗h7-d3**
15. ♕d2-c3	**♕f6-e5**

14...♔g7 is better, preferring wait-and-see tactics.

16. ♘d4-c6!	**♕e5-d6**
17. ♘c6-b4!	**♙d5-d4**
18. ♙e3:d4	**♖e8:e1+**
19. ♕c3:e1	**♙a6-a5**
20. ♘b4:d3	**♙c4:d3**
21. ♕e1-e3	**♕d6-a6**

21...♕c6! 21.♕:d3 ♕c1+ 23.♕b1 ♕d2 24.♕g1 ♙a4 ↑↓ would have been better.

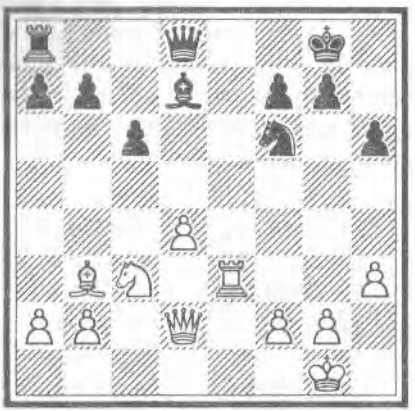
22. ♙b2-b3	**♕a6-c6**
23. ♕e3-d2	**♙a5-a4**
24. ♔a1-b2	**♙a4-a3+**
25. ♔b2:a3+-	

White won.

No.61

Andersson — Tal

Malmö, 1983



How should White continue?

1. ♘c3-e4! . . .

White strives to exchange the knight on f6, which defends Black's kingside reliably, and to use the difference between the lightsquare bishops' activities. Usually in positions with isolated pawns, it is favourable for the defending side to exchange the opponents active pieces, but this is an exception to the rule. 1. ♙d5?! ♗e6! was bad. 1.♖e5!? ▷ ♕e3 ± interesting.

1. . . . ♘f6:e4

Then 1...♘d5 2.♖g3! ♔f8 3.♗:d5 ♙:d5 4.♘d6 ±.

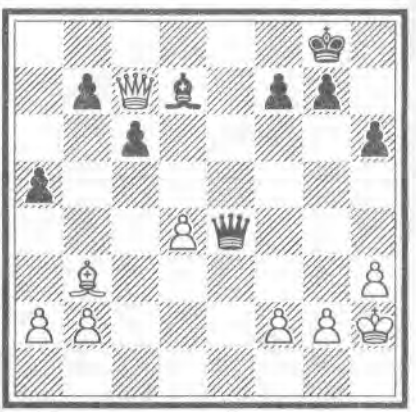
2. ♖e3:e4 ♕d8-f8
3. ♕d2-f4 ♖a8-e8
4. ♖e4:e8 ♕f8:e8
5. ♔g1-h2! . . .

The weakness of the f7 point and Black's queenside determine White's advantage.

5. . . . ♙a7-a5

If 5...♗e6, then 6.♕e5! ♗d7 (6...♔h7 7.♗:e6 ♕:e6 8.♕:e6 ♙:e6 9.♔g3 ♔g6 10.♔f4 ±) 7.♕d6 ±.

6. ♕f4-c7! ♕e8-e4



7. ♗b3:f7+! ♔g8:f7
8. ♕c7:d7+ . . .

White gradually realizes his advantage.

8. . . . ♔f7-g8
9. ♔h2-g3! ♕e4-d3+
10. ♙f2-f3 ♕d3-d2
11. ♙b2-b3 ♙b7-b5
12. ♕d7-e6+ ♔g8-h8
13. ♕e6-e8+ ♔h8-h7
14. ♕e8-e4+ ♔h7-h8
15. ♙a2-a4 ♕d2-c3
16. ♕e4-e8+ ♔h8-h7
17. ♕e8-e4+ ♔h7-h8
18. ♙a4:b5 ♙c6:b5
19. ♕e4-e8+ ♔h8-h7

20.	**♕e8:b5**	**♕c3:d4**
21.	**♕b5:a5**	**♕d4-d6+**
22.	**♔g3-f2**	**♕d6-d4+**
23.	**♔f2-e2**	**♕d4-b2+**
24.	**♕a5-d2**	**♕b2:b3**
25.	**♕d2-d3+**	**♕b3:d3+**
26.	**♔e2:d3+-**	

White wins in a few moves.

No.62

Nun — Panchenko

Hradec Kralove, 1982

A position of approximate dynamic balance. Black intends to play ♖c8 and ♘d5, creating pressure on the knight at c3.

1.	**♘f3-e5**	**♖a8-c8**
2.	**♙h2-h4?!**	**. . .**

This activity is groundless, because it's difficult to mount an attack on the kingside, and the h4 pawn may be threatened. It was necessary to continue 2.♙a3 ♘bd5 3.♘:d5 ♕:d5 4.♙f3, ▷ ♗e4 or ♗a2=.

2.	**. . .**	**♘b4-d5**
3.	**♘c3:d5**	**♕d8:d5**
4.	**♙f2-f3**	**♕d5-d6**
5.	**♙a2-a3**	**♖f8-d8**

Preparing the exchange manoeuvre 6...♘d5.

6.	**♗g5-f4**	**♘f6-h5!**

A bold decision!

7.	**♗f4-h2**	**♗e7:h4!**

Tactics serve strategy here. Now after 8.♘:f7? will follow 8...♕:d4+! 9.♖:d4 ♖c1+ -+.

8.	**♕e2-d3**	**♙f7-f5!**

8...♕:d4+? 9.♕:d4 ♖:d4 10.♗:h7+! ♔:h7 11.♖:d4 +-.

9.	**♗b1-a2?!**	**. . .**

9.♙g4 ♘g3 10.♔g2 ♘e4! 11.♘f7 ♕e7 12.♘:d8 ♖:d8∓ is more persistent and Black exerts strong pressure on White's king, but White still holds.

9.	**. . .**	**♗b7-d5**
10.	**♘e5-f7**	**♗h4-f2+!**
11.	**♔g1:f2**	**♕d6:h2**

12. ♘f7:d8	**♘h5-f4-+**
13. ♕d3-f1	**♖c8-c2+**
14. ♔f2-e3	**♘f4:g2+**
15. ♔e3-d3	**♗d5-e4+!**
16. ♙f3:e4	**♘g2-f4+**

Black won.

No.63

Braga — Portisch

Mar del Plata, 1982

Black controls the d5 square and has no difficulties. He has to prevent White's rook transfer through the d3 square to the kingside.

1. ♘f3-e5	**♗c8-b7**
2. ♙a2-a3	**♘b4-d5**
3. ♘c3-e4?!	. . .

An exchange of minor pieces leads to Black's advantage. If 3.♖d3, then 3...♘:c3 4.♙:c3 ♗d5 5.♗b5 ♙a6! 6.♘c6? ♕c7!-+ 7.♘:e7+ ♕:e7 8.♗a4 ♗c4 ∓.

3. . . .	**♘f6:e4**
4. ♕e2:e4	**♖a8-c8**
5. ♗c4-d3	**♙f7-f5!**

Black radically solves the problem of his king's security. Here the weakness of the e6 pawn is difficult to use, Black's pieces are very active.

6. ♕e4-c1	. . .

If 6.♕e2, then 6...♗g5!∓; 6...♖:c1 7.♖a:c1 ♘f4 8.♕c2 ♘:g2 9.♕c7! leads to unclear play.

6. . . .	**♔g8-h8**
7. ♗c1-d2	**♘d5-f6**
8. ♗d2-b4	. . .

This move reveals White's problems. White has to exchange the darksquare bishop to Black's advantage.

8. . . .	**♘f6-d5**
9. ♗b4-d2	**♗e7-g5!**
10. ♗d2:g5?	. . .

10.♘f3 is better, preventing the black queen's transfer to the kingside, where it will exert strong pressure on White's king.

10.	. . .	**♕d8:g5∓**
11.	**♘e5-f3**	**♕g5-h6**
12.	**♖a1-c1**	**♖c8:c1**
13.	**♖d1:c1**	**♘d5-f4**
14.	**♗d3-f1**	**♗b7:f3**
15.	**♙g2:f3**	**♕h6-g5+**
16.	**♔g1-h1**	**♙h7-h6-+**

White is in a difficult position because of the weakness of the kingside and d4 pawn.

17.	**♕e1-b4**	**♖f8-d8**

17...♖f6? 18.♖c8+ ♔h7 19.♕e7↑↓.

18.	**♕b4-d2**	**♙e6-e5!**
19.	**♙d4-d5**	**♖d8:d5**
20.	**♖c1-c8+**	**♔h8-h7**
21.	**♕d2-c2**	**♙b6-b5**
22.	**♖c8-f8**	**♖d5-d3**
23.	**♕c2-c8**	**♕g5-g2+!**

Black won.

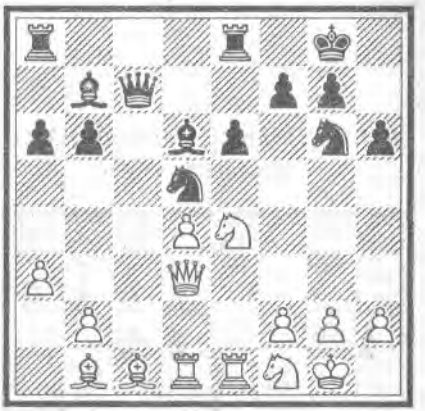
No.64

Mikhalchishin — Psakhis

Frunze, 1981

Black controls the d5 square and covers the central e5 and f4 squares. Black strives to exchange minor pieces.

1.	. . .	**♘f6-d5**
2.	**♗e3-c1**	**♕b8-c7**
3.	**♘c3-e4**	. . .



3.	. . .	**♗d6-f4!**
4.	**♙g2-g3**	**♗f4:c1**
5.	**♖d1:c1**	**♕c7-e7**
6.	**♘f1-e3**	**♘d5:e3**
7.	**♕d3:e3**	**♖a8-d8**
8.	**♖e1-d1**	**♖d8-d7?!**

Black wants to continue 9...♕d8, but White succeeds in destroying Black's plans. It was necessary to play ♘g6-e7-d5 and f7-f5, keeping the advantage.

9.	**♘e4-d2!**	. . .

White exploits the ineffective black knight's position at g6 and the b6

pawn's weakness and seizes the initiative.

9. . . .	**♘g6-f8**
10. ♘d2-c4!	**♙b6-b5**
11. ♘c4-e5	**♖d7-d6**

Now White's advantage is fixed by 12.♖c5, ▷ ♕c3 establishing control over the c-file.

No.65
Mikhalchishin — Sveshnikov
Leningrad, 1976

The absence of a white a-pawn and a black b-pawn gives White a chance to play on the kingside as well as on the queenside. Occasionally White can use the c5 and a5 squares for invasion by minor pieces.

1. ♘f3-e5	**♙h7-h6**
2. ♗g5-e3	**♖f8-e8**
3. ♕d1-e2	**♗e7-f8**
4. ♖f1-d1	**♖a8-c8**
5. ♗e3-c1?!	**. . .**

White strives to attack, he wants to transfer his queen to the kingside, but it's groundless from a strategic point of view. 5.♘c4, ▷ ♘a5 is better. For example: 5...♘fd5 6.♘a5 ♗a8 7.♗d2 ♕h4=.

5. . . .	**♖e8-e7**
6. ♕e2-e3	**♘b4-c6!**
7. ♘e5:c6	**. . .**

It was possible to continue 7.♗d3!? by switching play to the queenside.

7. . . .	**♖c8:c6**
8. ♕e3-g3	**♔g8-h8**
9. ♗c1-f4!	**. . .**

Black has been successful in exchanging the strong knight on e5, but now it's place is occupied by White's bishop.

9. . . .	**♖c7-d7**

9...♘h5? 10.♕d3

10. ♗f4-e5	**♗f8-d6!**

Black consecutively fights against White's active pieces.

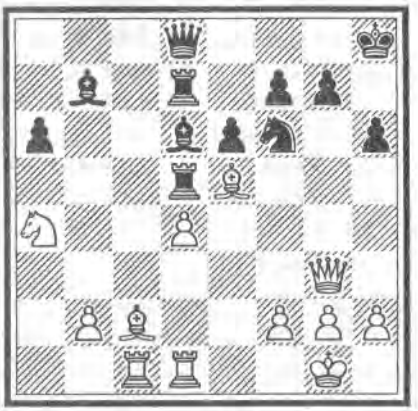
11. ♗b1-c2!	**. . .**

It's time to activate the bishop on the queenside.

11.. . .	**♖c6-b6**
12. ♘c3-a4?	**. . .**

Decentralization! After 12.♗a4 or 12.♖ab1 a position of dynamic balance has been created.

12.. . .	**♖b6-b5!**
13. ♖a1-c1	**♖b5-d5**



Black transferred the rook to d5 and created strong piece pressure in the centre.

14. ♘a4-c3	**♗d6:e5**
15. ♙d4:e5	**♘f6-e4!∓**

Black uses the weakness of the first rank and it is far from clear how White can prevent material losses, for example: 16.♕g4 □ ♘:c3 17.♙:c3 ♖:e5 ∓.

How should Black continue?

1. . . .	**♗e7-g5!**

If 1...♗f6?! then 2.♘:e6! (2.♙d5? ♙:d5 3.♖:e8+ ♖:e8 4.♘:d5 ♖e1+ ∓) 2...♘:d4! 3.♗d2! ♕f5 4.♕:f5 ♘:f5 5.♘g5 ♘d6 6.♖:e8+ ♖:e8 7.♙h4! ♙b5 8.♗b4 ♘c4 9.♖d7 ♗c6 10.♗:c4 ♙:c4 11.♖d6 ±.

If 1...♗f8?, then 2.♗:f8 ♖:f8 3.♙d5 ♙:d5 4.♘:d5 ±.

2. ♗b3:e6	**. . .**

2.♙d5 ♗:h6 3.♙:e6 ♙f6 4.♙e7+ ♔g7 5.♘e6+ ♔h8 6.♘d8 ♘:d8 7.♙:d8♕ ♖c:d8 8.♕:d8 ♕:e1+ -+.

2. . . .	**♗g5:h6**
3. ♙b2-b4	**♕a5-g5**
4. ♗e6:c8	**♖e8:c8**
5. ♙g2-g3	**♖c8-d8∓**

Black has an unsignificant advantage.

No.66
Marin — Dive
Salonika, 1988

No.67
Keres — Tal
Moscow, 1957

How should Black continue?

1. . . . ♙f7-f5!

This is a concrete approach to the position. Though Black has a weak pawn on e6, he gives White minimal activity possibilities and exploits the wrong arrangement of white pieces in the c2-c4-d4-d2 rectangle.

2. 0 - 0 ♗c8-d7!
3. ♖f1-d1?! . . .

It was better to play 3.♗e3 3...♖c8 4.♖c3 ♘a5 5.♘e5 ♖:c3 6.♙:c3 for White, which led to an unclear position.

3. . . . ♖a8-c8!

3...♗e8 4.♖c3 ♗h5 5.♗c4 ♕e4 6.♕b3±, or 3...♙b5 4.♖c3 ♘:d4 5.♘:d4 ♕:d4 6.♗e3 is inferior and White has a dangerous initiative.

4. ♗d2-e3 ♘c6-a5

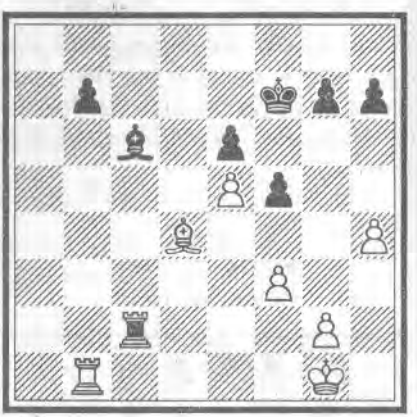
Provoking simplifications favourable for Black: White's dynamical possibilities decrease, the static weakness of the isolated d4 pawn increases.

5. ♖c4:c8 ♖f8:c8
6. ♕c2-e2 ♗e7-d6∓
7. ♘f3-e5 . . .

7.♖c1?! ♖:c1+ 8.♗:c1 ♘b3 9.♗e3 ♙b5! 10.♘e5 ♗:e5 11.♙:e5 ♗c6∓ (Tal).

7. . . . ♗d7-a4
8. ♖d1-e1 ♗d6:e5
9. ♙d4:e5 ♖c8-d8
10. ♙b2-b4 ♗a4-c6!
11. ♙f2-f3 ♕d5:d3
12. ♕e2:d3 ♖d8:d3
13. ♙b4:a5 ♖d3:a3
14. ♗e3:a7 ♖a3:a5∓
15. ♗a7-d4 ♖a5-a2
16. ♖e1-b1 ♖a2-d2
17. ♗d4-c3 ♖d2-c2
18. ♗c3-d4 ♔g8-f7
19. ♙h2-h4 . . .

19.♙h3 ♙f4 20.♖b2 ♖c1+ 21.♔h2 ♙g5 22.♗a7 ♔g6 23.♗b8 ♔f5 24.♗d6 ♙h5 25.♗b8 ♗d5 26.♗d6 ♙g4 27.♙h:g4+ 28.♙f:g4+ ♔:g4 29.♗b8 ♙b5 30.♗d6 ♖e1 31.♗b8 ♙b4 32.♗d6 ♙b3 33.♖d2 ♙f3 34.♖d4 ♖e4 35.♖:e4+ ♗:e4-+ (Euwe).



19. . . . ♔f7-g6
20. ♖b1-b4 ♙h7-h6
21. ♖b4-b2 ♖c2:b2
22. ♗d4:b2 ♔g6-h5
23. ♗b2-a3 ♔h5:h4
24. ♗a3-f8 ♔h4-g3
25. ♗f8:g7 ♙h6-h5
26. ♗g7-h6 ♗c6:f3!-+
27. ♙g2:f3 ♔g3:f3

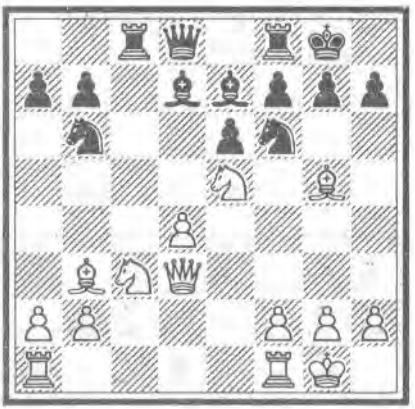
28. ♔g1-f1	**♙b7-b5**
29. ♗h6-d2	**♙h5-h4**
30. ♗d2-b4	**♙h4-h3**
31. ♔f1-g1	**♔f3-e2**

White resigned.

No.68

Bronstein — Berger

USSR, 1964



White's pieces are well situated. White intends to transfer his queen to the kingside and Black will be in a hot situation. Black has to strive to ease White's pressure by exchanging pieces.

Variation 1...♘fd5

1. . . .	**♘f6-d5!**
2. ♗b3-c2	**. . .**

If 2.♗e3?!, then the manoeuvre 2...♘:c3 3.♙:c3 ♗a4 merits attention, neutralizing the lightsquare white bishop.

But 2.♗:e7! ♘:e7+ (2...♕:e7 3.♘:d5 ♙:d5 4.♖ae1 ♕d6 5.♖e3 ♗e6 6.♙f4±) 3.♗c2 ♙g6± was stronger, White has preserved unsignificant advantage.

2. . . .	**♙g7-g6**
3. ♗g5-h6	**♘d5-b4=**

Main line in this game

1. . . .	**♘b6-d5?!**
2. ♖f1-e1	**. . .**

White mounted strong pressure on the king's position.

2. . . .	**♗d7-c6**
3. ♕d3-h3	**. . .**

Black cannot ease the pressure by 3...♙h6 4.♗:h6! ♙:h6 5.♕:h6 ♘h7 6.♗c2↑. After 3...♙g6 then 4.♗h6 ♖e8 5.♘:f7! ♔:f7 6.♕:e6#.

3. . . .	**♙a7-a6**
4. ♖a1-d1	**♙b7-b5**
5. ♗b3-c2	**♕d8-d6**

5...♙b4 changes nothing in view of 6.♘e4.

If 6.♘:d5 then 6...♗:d5 7.♗:f6 ♖:c2 and Black holds.

6. ♘e5:c6	**♖c8:c6**
7. ♗g5:f6	**♘d5:f6**
8. ♘c3-e4!	**. . .**

Black resigned.

No.69
Smyslov — Ribli
London, 1983

White's pieces are aiming at the black king, and their attack looks dangerous. Black can rely on the neutralization of White's activity by an exchange of lightsquare bishops. If 1...♘g6 (with the threat 2...♗b5), then 2.♙a4!, preventing 2...♗b5. White's subsequent plans include ♙h2-h4-h5, or ♘e2-g3-h5.

1. . . .	**♗d7-a4?**

After this move Black falls under attack.

2. ♕e4-h7+	**♔g8-f8**
3. ♖d1-c1	**♗a4-b5**
4. ♗d3:b5	**♕b6:b5**
5. ♘e2-g3	**♘e7-g6**
6. ♘f3-e5!	**♘d5-e7**
7. ♗c1:h6!	. . .

White attacks using the dynamism of his pieces.

7.♘h5 ♗:e5 8.♙:e5 ♘f5 9.♘:g7! ♘:g7 10.♗:h6 +- was good enough.

7. . . .	**♘g6:e5**

7...♗:e5 8.♖:e5 ♘:e5 9.♕:g7+ ♔e8 10.♙:e5↑.

8. ♘g3-h5!	**♘e5-f3+**
9. ♙g2:f3	**♘e7-f5**
10. ♘h5:f6	**♘f5:h6**
11. ♙d4-d5!	. . .

White's attack is very dangerous.

11. . . .	**♕b5:b2**
12. ♕h7-h8+	**♔f8-e7**

13. ♖e1:e6+!	**♙f7:e6**
14. ♕h8:g7+	**♘h6-f7**
15. ♙d5-d6+!	**♖d8:d6**
16. ♘f6-d5+	**♖d6:d5**
17. ♕g7:b2	

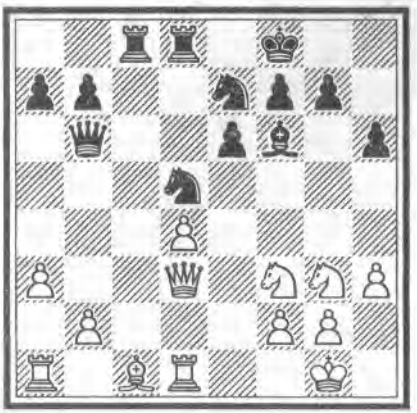
White has an advantage and he wins without much trouble.

Variation 1...♗b5!

1. . . .	**♗d7-b5!**
2. ♕e4-h7+	. . .

2.♗c2 ♘f5 3.♘g3 3...♘e7=.

2.	. . .	**♔g8-f8**
3.	**♘e2-g3**	**♗b5:d3**
4.	**♕h7:d3**	**♖a8-c8**
5.	**♙h2-h3=**	

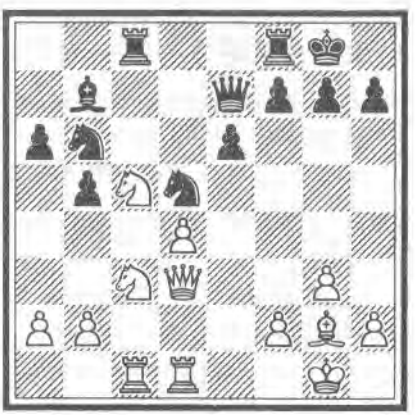


The position is equal.

No.70

Zamihovsky-Konstantinopolsky

Kiev, 1931



Black controls the d5 point, but White's knight on c5 doesn't compensate the static weakness of the d4 pawn.

1.	. . .	**♘d5-b4!**

The exchange of minor pieces is advantagous for Black because White's attack potential decreases, and it is easier to use the weak d4 pawn.

2.	**♕d3-e2**	. . .

2.♕f1 ♗:g2 3.♕:g2 was stronger, trying to keep control over the light squares. Black could continue 3...♘6d5 4.♙a3 ♘:c3 5.♙:c3 ♘d5 mainting a small advantage.

2.	. . .	**♗b7:g2**
3.	**♔g1:g2**	**♖f8-d8**
4.	**♕e2-e4**	. . .

White isn't tempted by the poisoned pawn: 4.♙a3 ♘4d5 5.♘:d5 ♘:d5 6.♘:a6? ♕b7 7.♘c5 ♘f4++ -+.

4.	. . .	**♘b6-c4**
5.	**♙a2-a3**	**♘b4-c6**
6.	**♙b2-b3**	. . .

It is impossible to take the a6 pawn because of 6.♘:a6 ♘:b2 7.♖d2 ♘c4 8.♖dd1 ♕:a3 9.♘c5 ♘:d4!∓.

6.	. . .	**♘c4-d6**
7.	**♕e4-f4**	**♘d6-f5**
8.	**♘c3-e2!**	**♙g7-g6**

Avoiding the trap: 8...♘c:d4? 9.♘:d4 ♖:c5 10.♖:c5! ♕:c5 11.♘:f5 ♖:d1 12.♕b8+ ♕f8 13.♘e7+ +-.

9.	**♙b3-b4**	**♙a6-a5**
10.	**♙b4:a5**	**♘c6:a5**

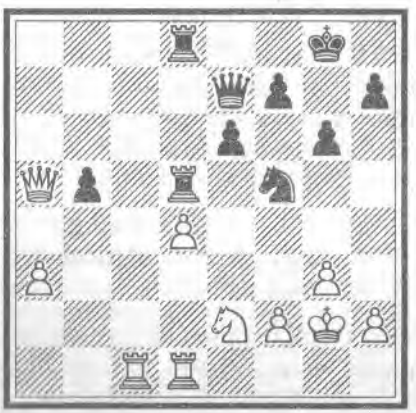
11. ♕f4-d2 **♖c8:c5!**

11...♘c4?! 12.♕b4 ♘:d4? 13.♘:d4 ♖:c5? 14.♘c6! is bad.

12. ♕d2:a5 . . .

If 12.♖:c5, then 12...♘b3 13.♕c2 ♘:c5 14.♙:c5 ♖:d1 15.♕:d1 ♕:c5 ∓.

12. . . **♖c5-d5-+**



With the deadly threat ♙e6-e5.

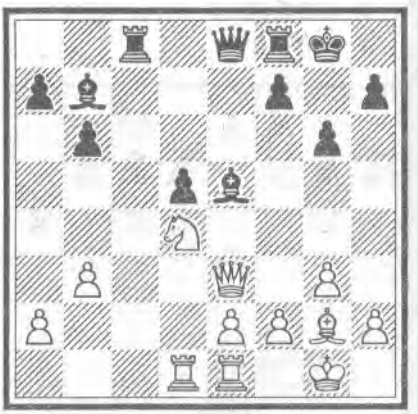
13. ♖c1-c7	**♕e7-g5**
14. ♕a5-c3	**♕g5-g4**
15. ♙f2-f3	**♕g4-g5**
16. ♔g2-f2	**♕g5-h6**
17. ♙h2-h4	**♙e6-e5!**
18. ♖c7-c8	**♕h6-f8**
19. ♖c8-c7	**♙e5:d4**
20. ♕c3-d3	**♖d5-e5**
21. ♖d1-c1	**♖e5-e3**
22. ♕d3:b5	**♙d4-d3**
23. ♘e2-f4	**♖e3:f3+!**

White resigned.

No.71

Fischer — Filip

Palma de Mallorca, 1970



1. ♘d4-b5! . . .

Forcing a favourable exchange.

1. . . .	**♕e8:b5**
2. ♕e3:e5	. . .

The pawn at d5 is weakened after the exchange of Black's darksquare bishop, dark squares near the black king are weak also and this gives White extra chances.

2. . . .	**♖f8-e8**
3. ♕e5-b2	. . .

It is necessary to keep control over the important a1-h8 diagonal.

3. . . .	**♖c8-c5**

Black strives for counterplay along the c-file.

4. ♖d1-d2	**♖e8-c8**
5. ♙h2-h4!	. . .

Striving to create a second weakness on the kingside.

5. . . . **♖c5-c3**

Black attempts to protect the weak dark squares.

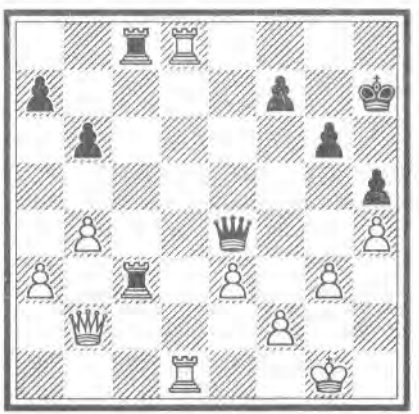
6. ♖e1-d1 **♕b5-c5**

With the threat 7...♖:g3 8.♙b4 ♖:g2+ 9.♔:g2 ♙d4+↑.

7. ♙b3-b4 **♕c5-e7**
8. ♙e2-e3 **♙h7-h5**

8...♙a5!?

9. ♙a2-a3 **♔g8-h7**
10. ♗g2:d5 **♗b7:d5**
11. ♖d2:d5 **♕e7-e4**
12. ♖d5-d8+- **. . .**



Now the rook at c3 cannot move.

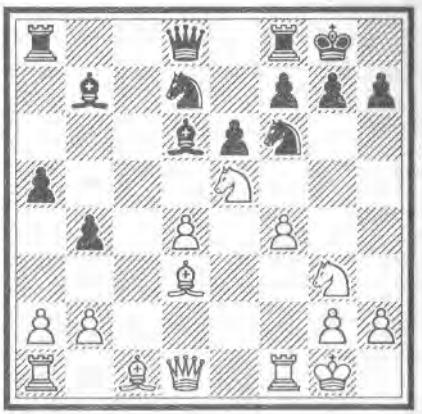
12.. . . **♕e4-f3**
13. ♔g1-h2 **♖c8-c4**
14. ♖d1-d7! **♙g6-g5**
15. ♖d8-f8 **♔h7-g6**
16. ♖f8-g8+ **♔g6-h7**
17. ♖g8:g5 **♖c4-c8**
18. ♖d7-d5 **♔h7-h6**
19. ♖d5-f5

Black resigned.

No.72

Ragozin — Capablanca

Moscow, 1936



Black completely controls the d5 square, but White has a strong forepost at e5. Assesement of this position considerably depends on Black's ability to use the weakness of the d4 pawn.

1. ♕d1-e2 **♗d6-b8**
2. ♗c1-e3 **♘f6-d5**
3. ♖a1-d1 **♘d5:e3**

Capablanca considered this exchange to be premature and recommended 3...♗a7, although White has excellent chances to play after 4.♔h1 ♘:e3 5.♕:e3 ♘f6 6.♘e4 ♘d5 (6...♗:e4 7.♗:e4 ♘d5 8.♕h3 ♙f5 9.♘c6 ▷♗d5 ±) 7.♕h3,

4. ♕e2:e3 **♗b8-a7**
5. ♗d3-e4 **. . .**

5.♔h1 is good, transposing to the above mentioned line.

5. . . . **♗b7:e4**
6. ♘g3:e4 **♖a8-c8**

6...♘f6?! 7.♘:f6+ ♙:f6 (7...♕:f6? 8.♘d7 +-) 8.♘g4 ±.

7. ♔g1-h1! . . .

7.♘d6 rather tempting, but after 7...♘:e5 8.♘:c8 ♘g4 9.♕g3 ♗:d4+ 10.♔h1 ♘e3 Black has the advantage.

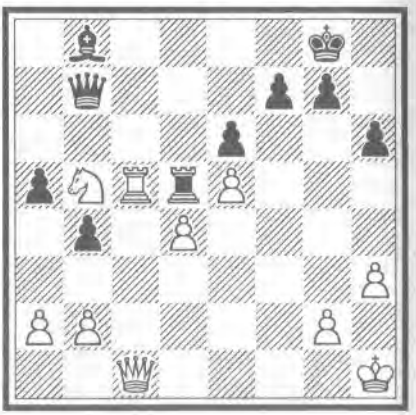
7. . . . **♕d8-e7**

If 7...♖c2, then 8.♕b3 ♖e2? 9.♘g3 +-.

8. ♖d1-c1 **♖c8:c1**
9. ♖f1:c1 **♘d7:e5**

9...♘b6 10.♖c6 ♘d5 11.♕d2, ▷♘c5±.

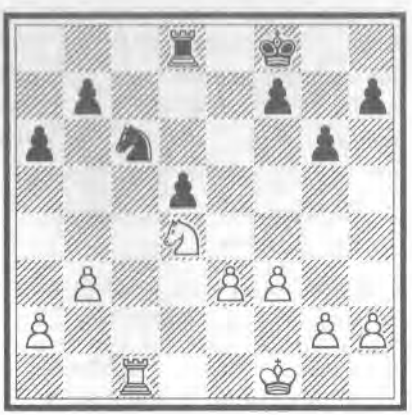
10. ♙f4:e5 **♖f8-d8**
11. ♘e4-d6 **♗a7-b8**
12. ♘d6-b5 **♕e7-b7**
13. ♖c1-c5 **♙h7-h6**
14. ♙h2-h3 **♖d8-d5**
15. ♕e3-c1



Now it necessary to maintain balance by 15... ♖:c5 16.♕:c5 ♔h7 17.♘d6 ♕a6! ½, as Ragozin recommended.

Subject: An isolated pawn in the ending.

No.73
Flohr — Vidmar
Nottingham, 1936



How should White continue?

1. ♘d4:c6! **♖d8-c8**
2. ♖c1-c5? . . .

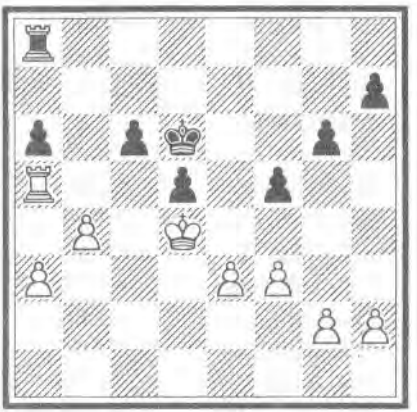
The next moves should be 2.♔e2! ♖:c6 (2...♙:c6 3.♖c5 ±) 3.♖:c6 ♙:c6 4.♙b4 ♔e7 5.♔d3 ♔d6 6.♔d4 +-.

2. . . . **♙b7:c6?**

Simple 2...♖:c6! was giving an easy draw after 3.♖:c6 (3.♖:d5 ♖c2) ♙:c6 4.♙b4 ♔e7 5.♔e2 ♔d6 6.♔d3 ♙c5!=.

3. ♔f1-e2 **♔f8-e7**
4. ♔e2-d3 **♔e7-d6**
5. ♖c5-a5 **♖c8-a8**
6. ♔d3-d4 **♙f7-f5**

7.	♙b3-b4	♖a8-b8
8.	♙a2-a3	♖b8-a8



White has firmly fixed the a6 pawn and the hanging pawn pair c6+d5 in the centre. In order to win it is necessary to create a second weakness on the kingside.

9.	♙e3-e4!	♙f5:e4
10.	♙f3:e4	♙d5:e4
11.	♔d4:e4	♖a8-a7
12.	♔e4-f4	♙h7-h6
13.	♙h2-h4	♔d6-e6
14.	♔f4-g4	♖a7-a8
15.	♙h4-h5!	♙g6-g5

White has pinned the weak h6 position and now is poised to win by a combined attack on both flanks.

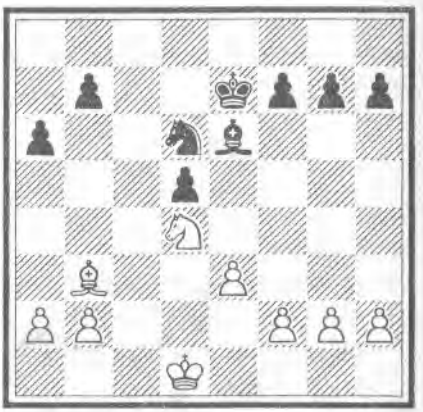
16.	♙g2-g3	♖a8-a7
17.	♔g4-f3	♖a7-a8
18.	♔f3-e4	♖a8-a7
19.	♔e4-d4	♔e6-d6
20.	♔d4-e4	♔d6-e6
21.	♖a5-e5+	♔e6-d6
22.	♖e5-e8	♙c6-c5
23.	♖e8-d8+	♔d6-c6
24.	♖d8-c8+	♔c6-b6
25.	♖c8:c5	♖a7-h7
26.	♖c5-e5	♔b6-c6
27.	♖e5-e6+	♔c6-b5
28.	♔e4-f5	♖h7-f7+
29.	♖e6-f6	. . .

White won.

No.74

Flohr — Pirc

Podebrady, 1936



This is a typical endgame position with the isolated pawn in the centre. White strives to realize his minimal positional advantage and first of all centralizes his king for that purpose.

1.	♔d1-c2	♘d6-e4
2.	♙f2-f3	♘e4-c5
3.	♔c2-c3	♔e7-d6?!

3...♘:b3! 4.♔:b3 ♙b6! was necessary, Black tries to avoid difficulties and builds his defence just like in the well known Flohr — Capablanca game.

4.	♗b3-c2!	♙g7-g6?

4...♙h6 was necessary to place the pawns on the dark squares, because the bishop is lightsquare.

5.	**♙a2-a4**	**♗e6-d7**
6.	**♙a4-a5!**	. . .

White fixes Black's pawns on the light squares.

6.	. . .	**♘c5-e6**
7.	**♙b2-b4**	. . .

After exchanging the knights the bishop endgame is advantageous for White.

7.	. . .	**♘e6-c7**
8.	**♗c2-d3**	**♗d7-e8**

Black is waiting passively. He should have risked 8...♙h6, ▷ ♙g5.

9.	**♙f3-f4**	**♗e8-d7**
10.	**♗d3-e2**	**♘c7-e8**
11.	**♘d4-b3**	**♗d7-c6**
12.	**♙g2-g4!**	. . .

White strives to fix the placement of black pawns on the kingside by advancing g and h pawns. This will give him a winning position.

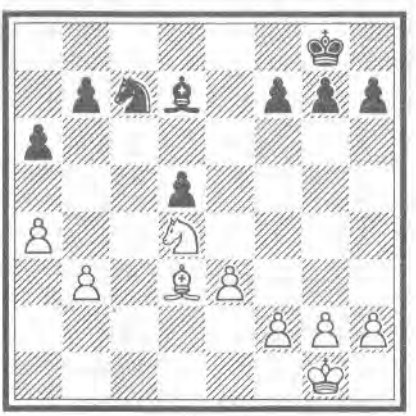
12.	. . .	**♘e8-f6**
13.	**♘b3-c5**	**♘f6-e8**
14.	**♙g4-g5+-**	**♘e8-c7**
15.	**♗e2-f3**	**♘c7-e8**
16.	**♘c5-b3**	**♗c6-d7**
17.	**♘b3-d4**	**♘e8-c7**
18.	**♗f3-e2**	**♗d7-c8**
19.	**♙h2-h4**	**♗c8-d7**
20.	**♙h4-h5**	**♘c7-e8**
21.	**♙h5-h6**	**♔d6-e7**
22.	**♗e2-f3**	**♗d7-e6**
23.	**♘d4-b3**	**♘e8-c7**
24.	**♘b3-c5**	**♗e6-c8**
25.	**♗f3-e2**	**♔e7-d6**
26.	**♗e2-d3**	**♘c7-e8**
27.	**♙e3-e4**	**♙d5:e4**
28.	**♗d3:e4**	**♘e8-c7**
29.	**♘c5:b7+**	**♗c8:b7**
30.	**♗e4:b7**	**♘c7-e6**
31.	**♗b7:a6**	**♘e6:f4**
32.	**♗a6-c4**	

Black resigned.

No.75

Polugayevsky — Mecking

Mar del Plata, 1971



How should White continue?

1. ♙a4-a5! . . .

Fixing the pawns of Black's queenside on the light squares.

1. . . . ♔g8-f8?!

1...♘e6!? 2.♘e2 ♘c5 3.♗c2± was stronger.

2. ♔g1-f1 ♔f8-e7

2...♙h6!?, ▷♘e6.

3. ♔f1-e2 ♙g7-g6?!

The move 3...♙h6!? was better in this position.

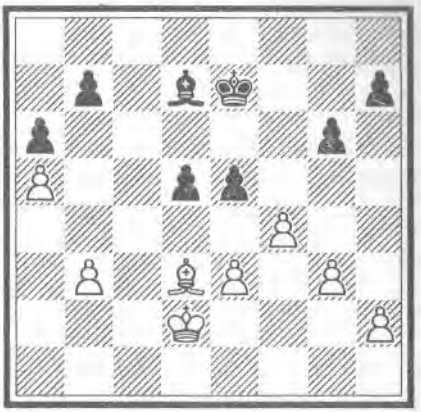
4. ♔e2-d2 ♘c7-e6
5. ♘d4:e6?! . . .

5.♔c3 ♘c5 6.♗c2±, or 6.♗e2!? ♘e4+ 7.♔b4 ♘:f2 8.♔c5 ♘e4+ 9.♔b6 ♘d6 10.♔c7 ♙g5 (10...♙f5 11.♗f3 ♗e6 12.♘e2 ±) 11.♗f3 ♗e6 12.♙g4 ±, ▷♘f5+ was better (Timman).

5. . . . ♙f7:e6

The bishop endgame is hopeless for Black after 5...♗:e6?

6. ♙f2-f4 ♙e6-e5!
7. ♙g2-g3 . . .



7. . . . ♔e7-d6?

7...♗b5! 8.♗c2 ♔d6 9.♔c3 ♗e2 10.♗b1! ♗f1 11.♔b4 ♙d4! 12.♙:d4 ♙:d4 13.♗e4 ♔c7 14.♔c5 ♙d3 15.♔d4 ♙d2 16.♗f3 ♙b6! 17.♙:b6+ ♔:b6 18.♔c3 ♔c5! 19.♔:d2 ♔d4 = (Timman).

8. ♔d2-c3 ♗d7-e6

8...♗b5 9.♗:b5 ♙:b5 10.♔b4 ♙d4 11.♙:e5+ +-.

9. ♔c3-b4 ♙e5:f4
10. ♙g3:f4± ♗e6-g4
11. ♔b4-c3 ♗g4-f3
12. ♔c3-d4 ♗f3-g2
13. ♙h2-h4 ♗g2-f3
14. ♙b3-b4 ♗f3-h1
15. ♗d3-e2 ♗h1-g2
16. ♗e2-g4 ♗g2-e4
17. ♗g4-c8 ♔d6-c7
18. ♗c8-e6 ♔c7-d6
19. ♗e6-g8 ♙h7-h6
20. ♗g8-f7 ♙h6-h5
21. ♗f7-e8 ♗e4-c2
22. ♗e8-f7 ♗c2-e4
23. ♙f4-f5! ♗e4:f5

23...♙:f5 24.♗:h5 ♔e6 25.♗e2 ♔d6 26.♙h5 ♔e6 27.♙h6 ♔f6 28.♗:a6! ♙:a6 29.♙b5! +-.

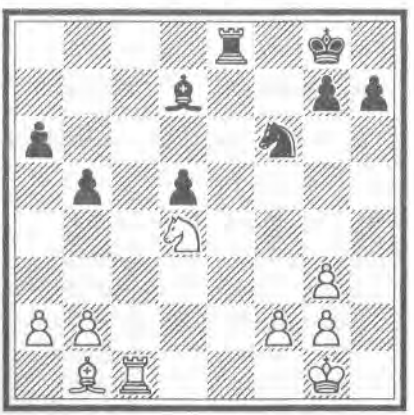
24. ♗f7:d5	**♗f5-c8**
25. ♙e3-e4	**♔d6-e7**
26. ♔d4-e5	**♙g6-g5**
27. ♙h4:g5	**♙h5-h4**
28. ♙g5-g6	**♙h4-h3**
29. ♙g6-g7	**♙h3-h2**
30. ♙g7-g8♕	**♙h2-h1♕**
31. ♕g8-f7+	**♔e7-d8**
32. ♕f7-f8+	

Black resigned.

No.76

Karpov — Hort

Budapest, 1973

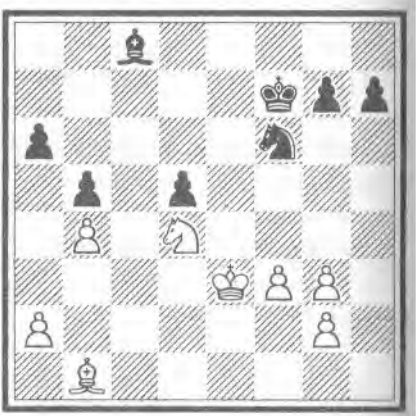


How should White continue?

1. ♙f2-f3!± . . .

By taking control over the e4 square White limits the activity of the knight on f6 and simultaneously prepares to transfer his king to the centre.

1. . . .	**♖e8-c8**
2. ♖c1:c8+	**♗d7:c8**
3. ♔g1-f2	**♔g8-f7**
4. ♔f2-e3	**♔f7-e7**
5. ♙b2-b4!	. . .



Fixing a6 and b5 pawns on squares of the same colour as that of the black bishop.

5. . . . **♙g7-g6**

5...♙h6 6.♗g6±.

6. ♙g3-g4! . . .

Now White strives to fix Black's kingside pawns on light squares.

6. . . .	**♘f6-d7**
7. ♙f3-f4	**♘d7-f8**
8. ♙g4-g5!+-	. . .

White has fulfilled his strategic task and all Black's pawns are situated on light squares!

8. . . .	**♔e7-d6**
9. ♔e3-f3	**♘f8-e6**
10. ♘d4:e6	**♗c8:e6**
11. ♔f3-e3	**♗e6-g4**
12. ♗b1-d3	**♗g4-e6**

13. ♔e3-d4	**♗e6-g4**
14. ♗d3-c2	**♗g4-e6**
15. ♗c2-b3	**♗e6-f7**
16. ♗b3-d1	**♗f7-e6**
17. ♗d1-f3	**♗e6-f7**
18. ♗f3-g4	. . .

Black resigned because of the possible loss of pawns after this manoeuvre ♗g4-c8:a6. The transition to the pawn endgame after 18...♗f7-e6 also leads to Black's defeat.

No.77

Ribli — Pinter

Baile Herculane, 1982

White has pinned Black's rooks by defence of the d5 pawn. The bishop on b2 is stronger than the knight on c6, but the weakness of the d5 pawn is not enough to realize an advantage. White should create another weakness.

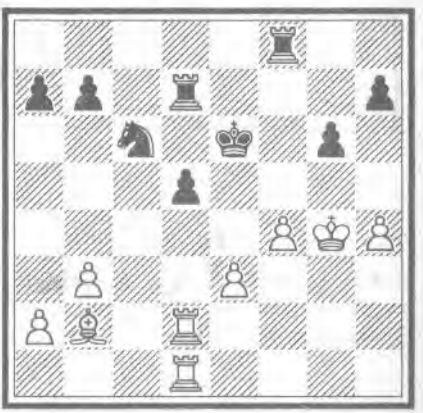
1. ♙g3-g4!	. . .

Supported by the bishop on b2, the pawn attack on the kingside must create one more weakness.

1. . . .	**♔g8-f7**
2. ♔f3-g2	**♔f7-e6**
3. ♙f2-f4	**♙f6-f5?!**

Now the bishop works more effectively and white rooks control the g-file for active operations. 3...♙g6 is stronger.

4. ♙g4:f5+	**♔e6:f5**
5. ♔g2-f3	**♔f5-e6**
6. ♙h2-h4	**♖d8-f8**
7. ♔f3-g4	**♙g7-g6?**



Black ignores White's threats ♙e3-e4.

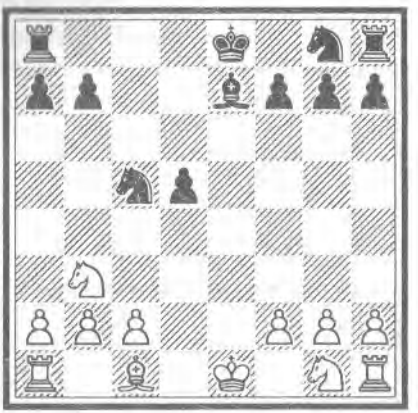
8. ♙e3-e4!	**♙h7-h5+**

8...♖fd8 9.♙:d5+ ♖:d5 10.♖:d5 ♖:d5 11.♖:d5 ♔:d5 12.♙f5 +-.

9. ♔g4-g5+-	**♙d5-d4**
10. ♗b2:d4	**♘c6-d8**
11. ♗d4-g7	**♘d8-f7+**
12. ♔g5:g6	**♘f7-h8+**
13. ♔g6-h6	**♘h8-f7+**
14. ♔h6:h5	

Black resigned.

No.78
Flohr — Botvinnik
Leningrad, 1933



1. . . . **♘c5-a4!**

The knight on the edge of the board keeps a perfect position because it prevents the development of the bishop on c1.

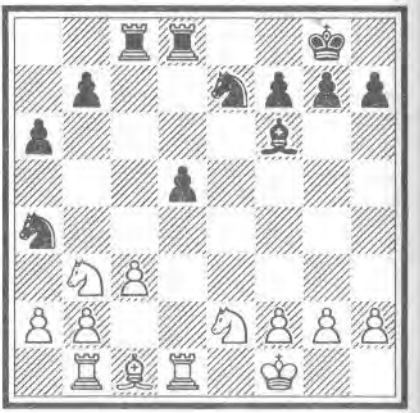
2. ♘g1-e2 **♗e7-f6!**

The bishop takes up an active position and releases the e7 square for the knight, where it can join in the struggle for the blockaded square d4.

3.	**♙c2-c3**	**♘g8-e7**
4.	**0 - 0**	**0 - 0**
5.	**♖f1-d1**	**♖f8-d8**
6.	**♖a1-b1**	. . .

Otherwise it is difficult to develop the bishop on c1.

6.	. . .	**♖a8-c8**
7.	**♔g1-f1**	**♙a7-a6!**



The knight on a4 has performed its duty, now it has to be transferred to a more active position, but immediate 7...♘b6?! is worse because of 8.♗e3! ♘c4 9.♗d4±.

8. ♘e2-d4 . . .

8.♗e3 ♘f5!↑↓.

8.	. . .	**♘a4-b6**
9.	**♘b3-a5**	**♘b6-c4**
10.	**♘a5:c4**	. . .

10.♘:b7? ♖d7! ∓.

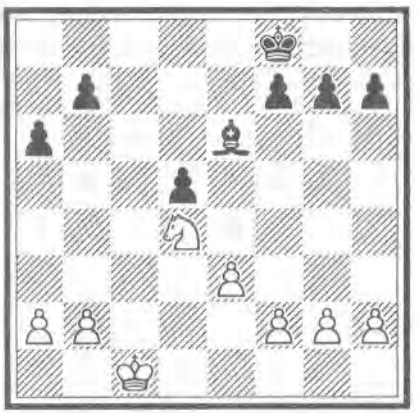
10.	. . .	**♙d5:c4**
11.	**♗c1-e3**	**♘e7-d5**
12.	**♘d4-f3**	

A draw.

No.79

Flohr — Capablanca

Moscow, 1936

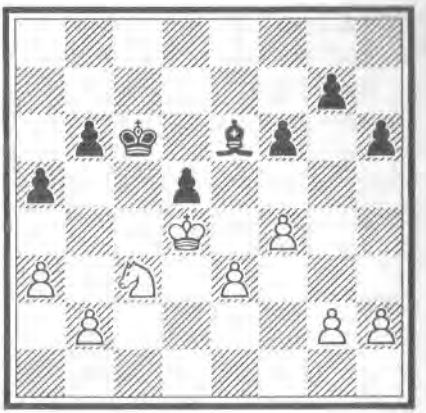


White has an advantage, which is determined by the weak isolated pawn d5 and the knight's superiority over the bishop.

1.	. . .	**♔f8-e7**
2.	**♔c1-d2**	**♔e7-d6**
3.	**♔d2-c3**	**♙b7-b6**

Black's plan of defence: the bishop controls the light squares, Black's pawns are placed on dark squares; Black strives to limit the activity of White's king and knight and to prevent the creation of pawn weaknesses.

4.	**♙f2-f4**	**♗e6-d7**
5.	**♘d4-f3**	**♙f7-f6**
6.	**♔c3-d4**	**♙a6-a5**
7.	**♘f3-d2**	**♗d7-c8**
8.	**♘d2-b1**	**♗c8-e6**
9.	**♘b1-c3**	**♔d6-c6**
10.	**♙a2-a3**	**♙h7-h6**



11.	**♙g2-g3**	**♙h6-h5?!**

Black breaks the rule by setting the pawn on the light square, and at once he runs into difficulties.

12.	**♙b2-b4**	**♙a5:b4**
13.	**♙a3:b4**	**♔c6-d6**
14.	**♙b4-b5**	**♙g7-g6**

14...♗f7?! 15.♙f5! ♗g8 16.♘e2 ♗f7 17.♘f4±.

15.	**♘c3-a4**	**♔d6-c7**
16.	**♘a4-c3**	**♔c7-d6**
17.	**♙f4-f5!**	**♙g6:f5**

17...♗:f5 18.♘:d5 ♗d7 19.♘:f6 ♗:b5 20.♘d5 ±.

18.	**♘c3-e2**	**♗e6-d7?!**

18...♗g8! 19.♘f4 ♗f7 20.♙h3 ♗e8 ⇅.

19.	**♘e2-f4**	**♗d7-e8**
20.	**♘f4:d5**	**♗e8:b5**
21.	**♘d5:b6**	**♗b5-c6**

Black has to prevent White's knight from transferring to f4.

22.	**♘b6-c4+**	**♔d6-e6**
23.	**♘c4-b2**	**♗c6-b5**
24.	**♘b2-d1**	**♗b5-e2**
25.	**♘d1-f2**	**♗e2-f1!**
26.	**♘f2-d3**	**♗f1:d3**
27.	**♔d4:d3**	**♔e6-e5**
28.	**♔d3-e2**	**♔e5-e4**
29.	**♙h2-h3**	. . .

29.♔f2 ♙h4! =.

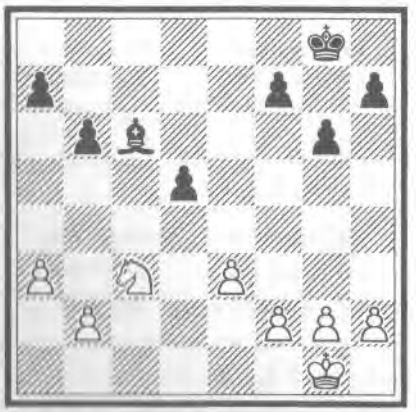
29.	. . .	**♔e4-d5**
30.	**♔e2-f3**	**♔d5-e5**

Draw.

No.80

Belavenets — Rauser

Moscow, 1937



White stands slightly better because of the weakness of the d5 pawn.

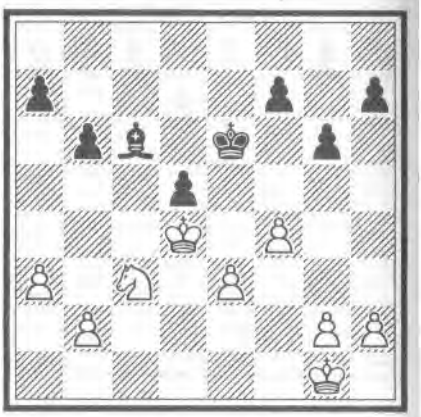
1.	**♔g1-f1**	**♔g8-f8**

1...♔g7, ▷♔g7-f6-e5 was better.

2.	**♙f2-f3**	. . .

2.♔e2? ♙d4! ∓.

2.	. . .	**♔f8-e7**
3.	**♔f1-e2**	**♔e7-e6**
4.	**♔e2-d3**	**♔e6-e5**
5.	**♙f3-f4+**	**♔e5-e6**
6.	**♔d3-d4**	. . .



6.	. . .	**♔e6-d6**

White has to create one more weakness to increase his advantage. It may be created on the kingside, where the black pawns are positioned rather clumsily.

7.	**♙b2-b4**	**♔d6-e6**
8.	**♙b4-b5**	. . .

White strengthens his position on the queenside as much as possible.

8.	. . .	**♗c6-b7**
9.	**♘c3-a2**	**♔e6-d6**
10.	**♘a2-b4**	**♔d6-e6**

10...♙f6! would have been better, striving to prevent a second weakness on the kingside.

11.	**♙g2-g4!**	. . .

White has started creating a second weakness on the kingside. 11.♘c6? is weaker because of 11...♗:c6

12.♙:c6 ♔d6 13.♙c7 ♔:c7 14.♔:d5 ♙f5!=.

11. . . ♙f7-f5

11...♙h6! 12.♘c6! ♗:c6 13.♙:c6 ♔d6 14.♙c7 ♔:c7 15.♔:d5+- ♔d7 16.♙e4 ♔c7 17.♙e5 ♔d7 18.♙f5 ♙:f5 19.♙:f5 ♔c7 20.♙e6 ♙f6 21.♙h3 ♙h5 22.♙h4 ♙a6 23.♙a4 ♙a5 24.♔c4 ♔c6 25.♙e7 +- (Belavenets).

12. ♙g4-g5 . . .

Now White is striving to play ♙h2-h4-h5-h6, then it will be possibile to realize his positional advantage connected with the knight sacrifice on f5 or g6.

12. . . . ♔e6-d6
13. ♙h2-h3! . . .

13.♙h4?! ♔e6 14.♘a2 ♔d6 15.♘c3 ♔e6 16.♘e2 ♗c8 17.♘g3 ♗d7 18.♙a4 ♗e8 and Black prevented ♙h4-h5.

13. . . . ♔d6-e6
14. ♘b4-a2 ♔e6-d6
15. ♘a2-c3 ♔d6-e6
16. ♙h3-h4 ♔e6-d6
17. ♘c3-e2 ♗b7-c8?

17...♙a6! 18.♘c3 (18.♙a4 ♙a5) 18...♙:b5 19.♘:b5+ ♔c6! 20.♘c3 ♔d6 21.♘a4 ♔c6 22.♔e5 ♔b5 23.♘b2 ♔c5 24.♔f6 ♙d4 25.♙:d4+ ♔:d4 26.♔g7 ♔e4 27.♔:h7 ♔:f4 28.♔:g6 ♔g4 29.♙h5 ♙f4 30.♙h6 ♗e4+ 31.♔f6 ♔h5± (Belavenets).

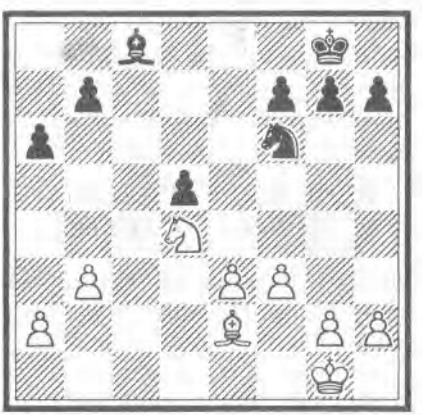
18. ♘e2-g3 ♗c8-d7
19. ♙a3-a4 ♔d6-e6
20. ♙h4-h5!+- ♗d7-e8

20...♙:h5?! 21.♘:h5 ♗c8 22.♔c3! ♔f7 23.♔d3 ♔e7 24.♘f6 +-.

21. ♙h5-h6 ♔e6-d6
22. ♘g3-e2 . . .

White wins after 22...♗d7 23.♘c3 ♗e6 24.♘a2 ♗f7 (24...♗c8 25.♘b4 ♗b7 26.♘d3 ♗c8 27.♘e5, ▷♘:g6 +-) 25.♘b4 ♗e6 26.♘c6 ♙a5 27.♙:a6! ♔:c6 28.♙a7 ♔b7 29.♔e5 ♗d7 30.♔f6 ♗:a4 31.♔g7 ♙b5 32.♔:h7 ♙b4 33.♔:g6 ♙b3 34.♙h7 ♗e8+ 35.♔f6 ♙b2 36.♙h8♕ ♙b1♕ 37.♙a8♕+ +-.

No.81
Averbakh — Matanovic
Belgrad, 1961



White has some slight positional advantage. White plans to centralize his king and to fix black pawns on light squares.

1. ♔g1-f2 ♔g8-f8
2. ♔f2-e1 . . .

2.♔g3 ♙g5!

2.	. . .	**♔f8-e7**
3.	**♔e1-d2**	**♔e7-d6**

3...♙a5 4.♔c3 ♔d6 5.♙b4 ♙b6 6.♙:a5 ♙:a5 7.♘b3 ±.

4.	**♙b3-b4**	. . .

White strives to fix Black's queenside pawns on light squares.

4.	. . .	**♘f6-e8?**

Averbakh recommended placement of the black bishop on d7 to prevent the white a-pawn from moving, and transfer of the knight to e7, from where it would defend the kingside.

5.	**♗e2-d3**	**♙g7-g6?!**

The positionally correct decision would have been 5...♙h6! In such positions the defending side has to place his pawns on the squares of colour opposite to that of his own bishop.

6.	**♔d2-c3**	**♘e8-c7**
7.	**♙a2-a4**	**♙b7-b6?**

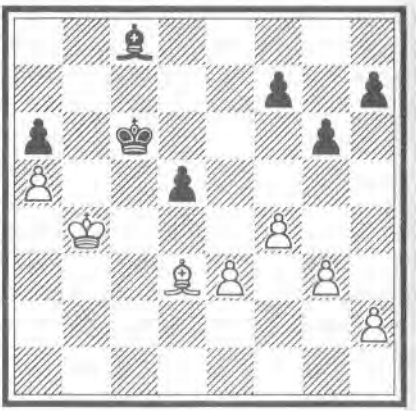
Black creates a weakness himself on a6. 7...♗d7 would have been better.

8.	**♙a4-a5**	**♙b6:a5**
9.	**♙b4:a5**	**♔d6-c5**
10.	**♘d4-b3+**	**♔c5-d6**
11.	**♔c3-b4**	**♘c7-e6**
12.	**♙g2-g3**	**♘e6-d8?!**

12...♙h6 would have been better.

13.	**♘b3-d4**	**♘d8-c6+**
14.	**♘d4:c6**	**♔d6:c6**
15.	**♙f3-f4!**	. . .

White has to create a second weakness on the kingside.



15.	. . .	**♙f7-f5?**

If 15...♙h6, then 16.♙e4! ♙:e4 17.♗:e4+ ♔d6 18.♔c4 ♗g4 19.♔d4 ♗e2 20.♗c2 ♗g4 21.♗d3 ♗c8 22.♙h4 ♗b7 23.♙g4! ♗c8 24.♙g5 ♙:g5 25.♙h:g5 ♗b7 26.♗c4 +-.

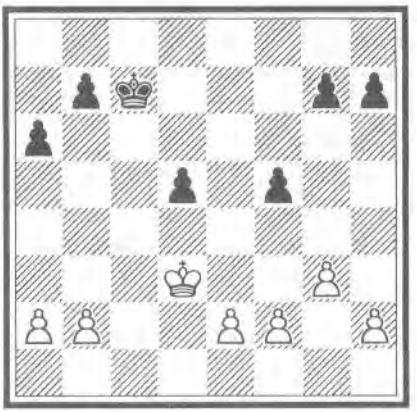
16.	**♙h2-h4**	**♔c6-d6**
17.	**♙h4-h5!**	. . .

Intending ♙h5-h6.

17.	. . .	**♙g6:h5**
18.	**♔b4-c3**	. . .

Black resigned because of 18...♔c5 19.♗f1! ♗b7 20.♗e2 ♗c8 21.♗d3 ♙d4+ 22.♙:d4+ ♔d5 23.♗c4+ ♔d6 24.♙d5 ♔c5 25.♙d6 ♔:d6 26.♔d4 ♗b7 27.♗f1 ♗c8 28.♗d3 +-.

No.82
Barcza — Golombek
Budapest, 1952
Variation in the game



The White's king is more active than Black's. The weakness of the d5 pawn and vulnerability of the f5 pawn cause problems for Black. These nuances gave White solid chances to win.

1. ♔d3-e3! **♔c7-d6**

1...♙g5 2.♙h4 ♙h6 3.♙:g5 ♙:g5 4.♙f4 ♙g4 5.♔d4 ♔d6 6.♙b4 ♙b6 7.♙a4 +-.

2. ♔e3-f4 **♔d6-e6**
3. ♔f4-g5 **♔e6-e5**

3...♙d4 4.♙f4 ♙g6 5.♔h6 ♔d5 6.♔:h7 ♔e4 7.♔:g6 ♔c3 8.♙h4 ♔:e2 9.♙h5 ♙d3 10.♙h6 ♙d2 11.♙h7 ♙d1♕ 12.♙h8♕ +-.

4. ♙a2-a3 **♙b7-b5**
5. ♙b2-b4 **♔e5-e4**
6. ♙h2-h4 **♙d5-d4**

6...♔e5 7.♙h5 ♔e4 8.♙h6 +-.

7. ♙h4-h5 **♙h7-h6+**
8. ♔g5-g6 **♙f5-f4**
9. ♙g3:f4 **♔e4:f4**
10. ♔g6:g7 **♔f4-g5**
11. ♙f2-f3 **♔g5-f4**

11...♔:h5 12.♔f6 ♔h4 13.♔e5 +-.

12. ♔g7:h6 **♔f4-e3**
13. ♔h6-g6 **♔e3:e2**
14. ♙h5-h6 **♙d4-d3**
15. ♙h6-h7 **♙d3-d2**
16. ♙h7-h8♕ **♙d2-d1♕**
17. ♕h8-e5+ **♔e2-f2**
18. ♙f3-f4+- . . .

In the game followed:

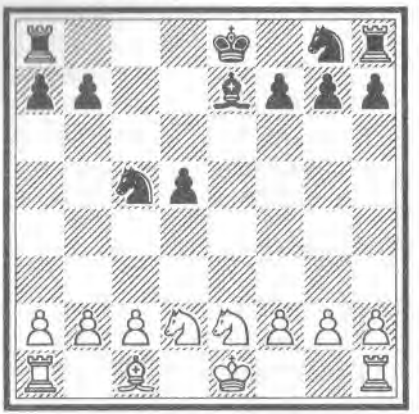
1. ♔d3-d4 **♔c7-d6**
2. ♙b2-b4 **♙b7-b6**
3. ♙h2-h4 **♙h7-h5**
4. ♙a2-a4 **♙a6-a5**
5. ♙b4:a5 **♙b6:a5**
6. ♙f2-f4 **♙g7-g6**
7. ♙e2-e3 **♔d6-c6**
8. ♔d4-e5 **♔c6-c5**
9. ♔e5-f6 **♔c5-c4!**
10. ♔f6:g6 **♔c4-d3**
11. ♔g6:f5 **♔d3:e3**
12. ♔f5-g5 **♙d5-d4**
13. ♙f4-f5 **♙d4-d3**
14. ♙f5-f6 **♙d3-d2**
15. ♙f6-f7 **♙d2-d1♕**
16. ♙f7-f8♕ **♕d1-g4+**

And soon the game was drawn.

No.83

Iljin-Zhenevsky — Botvinnik

Leningrad, 1932



Black should find correct places for his minor pieces in order to control the blockade d4 square and compensate for the static weakness of the d5 pawn.

1.	. . .	**♘c5-e6!**
2.	**♘d2-f3**	**♗e7-f6!**
3.	**♗c1-e3**	**♘g8-e7**
4.	**0-0-0**	**0 - 0**
5.	**♖h1-e1**	**♖f8-d8**
6.	**♘f3-d4**	**♘e7-c6=**

Black has realized his plan.

7.	**♙f2-f4?**	. . .

Unnecessary weakening.

7.	. . .	**♖d8-e8**

Black intends to get an advantage from the weakening of the e4 square. If 7...♘c:d4?!, then 8.♘:d4 ♗:d4 9.♗:d4 ♘:f4 10.♖e7 ♙b6 11.♖f1 ♘e6 12.♖f:f7 ♘:d4 13.♖:g7+ = (Botvinnik).

8.	**♘d4:e6**	**♖e8:e6**

8... ♙:e6!? =.

9.	**♗e3-f2**	**♖a8-c8**
10.	**♙a2-a3**	. . .

10.♖:d5? ♘b4 11.♖c5 ♖ce8 ∓.

10.	. . .	**♘c6-a5**
11.	**♙c2-c3**	. . .

11.♖:d5? ♘c4 12.♙c3 ♖ce8 -+.

11.	. . .	**♘a5-c4?**

11...♖ce8! 12.♘g3 ♖:e1 13.♖:e1 ♖:e1+ 14.♗:e1 ♗h4 15.♗f2 ♗:g3 16.♗:g3 ∓.

12.	**♘e2-d4**	**♖e6-e4**
13.	**♖e1:e4**	**♙d5:e4**
14.	**♘d4-c2±**	**♙a7-a5**
15.	**♘c2-e3**	**♘c4:e3**
16.	**♗f2:e3**	**♙b7-b5**
17.	**♗e3-d4**	**♗f6-e7**
18.	**♙f4-f5**	**♙b5-b4**
19.	**♙a3:b4**	**♙a5:b4**
20.	**♖d1-e1**	**♙b4:c3**
21.	**♙b2:c3**	**♖c8-e8!**
22.	**♔c1-c2**	**♗e7-d6**
23.	**♙h2-h3**	**♗d6-g3!**

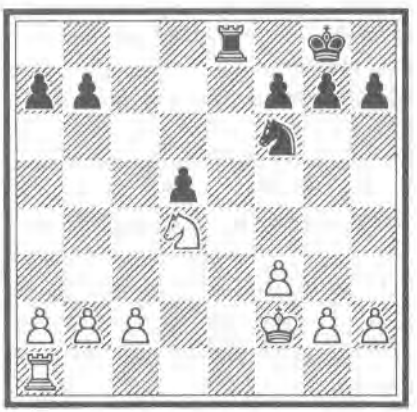
24.	♖e1-e2	♙f7-f6
25.	♖e2-e3	♗g3-f2
26.	♖e3-e2	♗f2-g3
27.	♖e2-e3	♗g3-f2
28.	♖e3-e2	♗f2-g3
29.	♔c2-d1	♔g8-f7
30.	♖e2-e3	♗g3-f2
31.	♖e3-e2	♗f2:d4
32.	♙c3:d4	♙g7-g6
33.	♙g2-g4	♙g6:f5
34.	♙g4:f5	♙e4-e3
35.	♔d1-c2	♖e8-e4
36.	♔c2-d3	♖e4-f4
37.	♖e2:e3	♖f4:f5

A draw.

No.84

Parma — Puc

Ljubljana, 1969



White's advantage is determined by the d5 pawn weakness and by the more active position of his king, which is ready to join play immediately unlike the black king.

1.	♖a1-d1	♙a7-a6
2.	♖d1-d3	♖e8-c8
3.	♙c2-c3	♔g8-f8
4.	♙g2-g4!	. . .

Seizing the space on the kingside and preparing the knight's transfer to e3, where it will put pressure on the d5 pawn.

4.	. . .	♘f6-d7

Black transfers his knight to b6 in order to avoid ♙g4-g5.

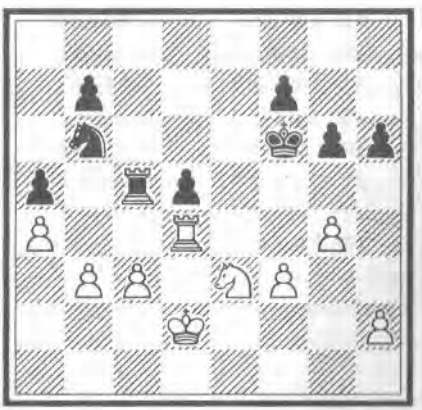
5.	♘d4-f5	♘d7-b6
6.	♙b2-b3	. . .

6.♘d6?! ♖c6! 7.♘:b7 ♘a4 8.♖:d5 ♖b6 ↑↓.

6.	. . .	♙g7-g6
7.	♘f5-e3	♖c8-c5
8.	♔f2-e2	♙h7-h6?

8...♔e7!?, ▷♔e6.

9.	♔e2-d2	♔f8-g7
10.	♖d3-d4!	♙a6-a5
11.	♙a2-a4	♔g7-f6



12. ♙b3-b4!	**♙a5:b4**
13. ♙c3:b4	**♖c5-c6**
14. ♙a4-a5	**♘b6-c8**
15. ♖d4:d5+-	**♔f6-e6**
16. ♙f3-f4	**♘c8-d6**
17. ♖d5-e5+	**♔e6-d7**
18. ♖e5-d5	**♔d7-e6**
19. ♙f4-f5+	**♙g6:f5**
20. ♙g4:f5+	**♔e6-e7**
21. ♙b4-b5	**♖c6-c8**
22. ♙a5-a6	**♙b7:a6**
23. ♙b5:a6	**♔e7-d7**
24. ♖d5-a5	**♔d7-c6**
25. ♔d2-d3	**♔c6-b6**
26. ♖a5-a4	**♘d6-b5**
27. ♙a6-a7!	**♖c8-d8+**

If 27...♘:a7?, then 28.♘c4+ ♔b7 29.♘d6+ +-.

28. ♘e3-d5+!	**♔b6-b7**

28...♖:d5+ 29.♔e4 ♘c3+ 30.♔f4 ♘:a4 31.♙a8♕ +-.

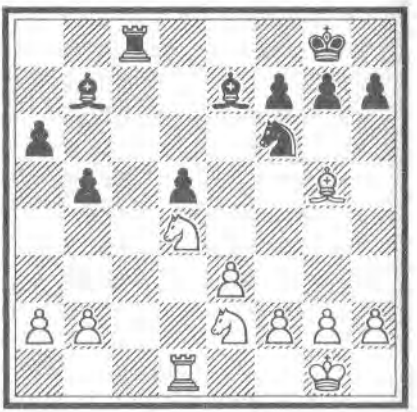
29. ♙a7-a8♕+	**♖d8:a8**
30. ♖a4-b4	**♖a8-a5**
31. ♘d5-c3	**♔b7-c6**
32. ♖b4:b5	**♖a5:b5**
33. ♘c3:b5	**♔c6:b5**
34. ♔d3-d4	**♔b5-c6**
35. ♔d4-e5	**♔c6-d7**
36. ♔e5-f6	**♔d7-c8**
37. ♔f6-g7	**♔e8-e7**
38. ♙f5-f6+	**♔e7-e6**
39. ♙h2-h3	

Black resigned.

No.85

Capablanca — Teichmann

Berlin, 1913



White's advantage is obvious, he reliably blocked the d5 pawn and al his pieces keep active positions Black's pieces are badly placed. The pin of the knight on f6 by the bishop on g5 is very unpleasant.

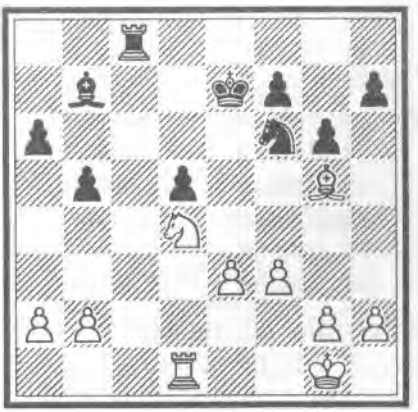
1. ♘d4-f5!	**♔g8-f8**

If 1...♗d8, then 2.♘d6 ♖c7 3.♘:b7 ♖:b7 4.♗:f6 ♗:f6 5.♖:d5 ♖c7 6.♖d2± and White has an extra pawn.

2. ♘f5:e7	**♔f8:e7**
3. ♘e2-d4	**♙g7-g6□**

White threatens to play 4.♘f5.

4. ♙f2-f3!±	. . .



Emphasizing Black's helplessness, who is forced to give up his h-pawn to get rid of the pin.

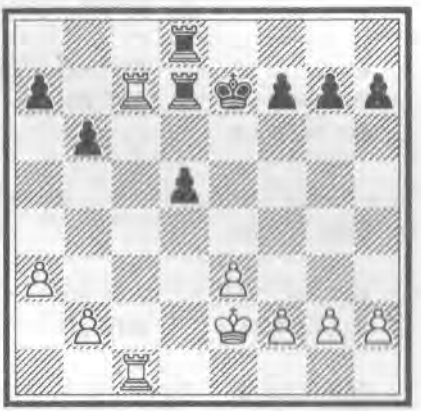
4.	. . .	**♙h7-h6**
5.	**♗g5:h6**	**♘f6-d7**
6.	**♙h2-h4**	**♘d7-c5**
7.	**♗h6-f4±**	**♘c5-e6**
8.	**♘d4:e6**	**♔e7:e6**
9.	**♖d1-d2**	**♖c8-h8?**

9...♙b4 ▷ ♙a5, ♗a6 is better, in an attempt to activate. White should continue ♙g2-g4 and ♙h4-h5, creating the passed pawn.

10.	**♖d2-c2**	**♖h8-c8**
11.	**♖c2:c8**	**♗b7:c8**
12.	**♔g1-f2**	**♙d5-d4**
13.	**♙e3:d4**	**♔e6-d5**
14.	**♔f2-e3**	**♗c8-e6**
15.	**♔e3-d3**	**♔d5-c6**
16.	**♙a2-a3**	**♗e6-c4+**
17.	**♔d3-e3**	**♗c4-e6**
18.	**♗f4-h6**	**♔c6-d5**
19.	**♗h6-g7**	

White won.

No.86
Bareev — Farago
Italy, 1990



1.	**♔e2-d3**	. . .

White's king moves towards d4 — this is the ideal place for the king to put pressure on the d5 pawn. One weakness isn't enough for the win, so White has to create a second weakness.

1.	. . .	**♖d7:c7**
2.	**♖c1:c7+**	**♖d8-d7**
3.	**♖c7-c8**	. . .

Exchanging one pair of rooks serves White's purpose because it minimizes the possibilities of Black's counterplay.

3.	. . .	**♙h7-h5?!**

Incorrect, 3...♙a5 was stronger. White should have replied by 4.♙g4!, preventing ♙h7-h5 and striving to create a second weakness on the queenside.

4. ♙b2-b4! . . .

White begins to create the second weakness on the queenside.

4.	. . .	**♔e7-e6**
5.	**♔d3-d4**	**♙f7-f6**
6.	**♙h2-h4**	. . .

Preventing Black's manoeuvre 6...♙h4, ▷♙g5.

6.	. . .	**♔e6-f5**
7.	**♙f2-f3**	**♔f5-g6**

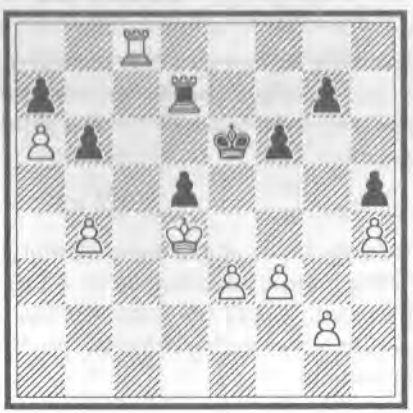
7...♙g5 8.♙:g5 ♙:g5 9.♖f8+ ♔g6 10.♖e8 ▷♖e5 +-, ✕ "d5".

8.	**♙a3-a4**	**♔g6-f7**
9.	**♙a4-a5**	**♔f7-e6**

9...♙:a5 10.♙:a5 ♔e6 11.♖c6+ ♔e7 12.♔c5 ♔f7 13.♖d6 +-.

10. ♙a5-a6 . . .

Fixing the weakness at a7.



10.	. . .	**♔e6-d6**
11.	**♙b4-b5**	**♔d6-e6**
12.	**♙g2-g3**	**♙g7-g6**
13.	**♖c8-e8+**	**♔e6-d6**
14.	**♖e8-f8**	**♔d6-e6**
15.	**♖f8-c8**	**♔e6-d6**
16.	**♖c8-c6+**	**♔d6-e7**
17.	**♙g3-g4**	**♔e7-f7**
18.	**♙g4:h5**	**♙g6:h5**

Now Black has three weak pawns a7, d5 and h5, so his position is hopeless.

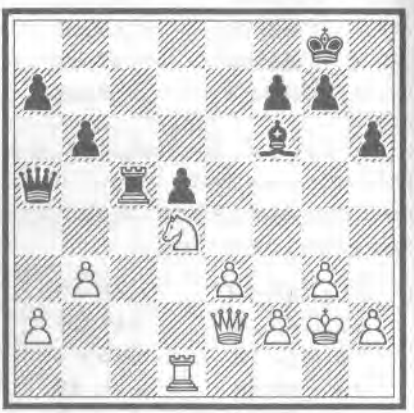
19. ♖c6-c8+-

And White won.

No.87

Georghiu — Petrosian A.

Bagneux, 1982



How should White continue?

1. ♙h2-h4! . . .

▷♙h4-h5, seizing space on the kingside.

1. . . . **♕a5-b4?!**

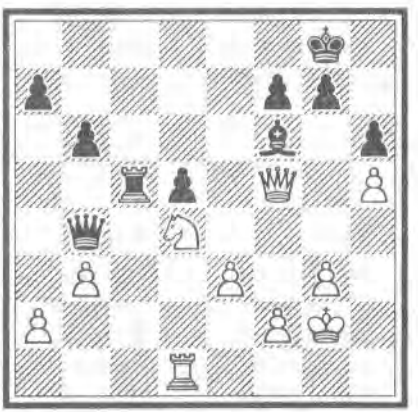
Black plays without any plan. If 1...♗:d4!?, then 2.♖:d4 ♕c3 3.♕f3± ♕c2 4.♙b4±; or 1...♙b5?! 2.♘f5±. Black's problems are caused by his decentralized queen.

2. ♙h4-h5 ♖c5-c7
3. ♕e2-f3 ♖c7-c5

3...♕c5 4.♖d2!± ▷♖c2.

4. ♕f3-f5 . . .

White prepares an attack on the black king, using the decentralization of the black queen and constraint of the rook, which has to defend the d5 pawn.



4. . . . ♕b4-a3
5. ♕f5-d7 . . .

Black's pieces get stuck on the queenside and cannot help their king.

5. . . . ♔g8-f8

If 5...♕:a2, then 5.♕e8+ ♔h7 7.♕:f7 +-.

6. ♘d4-b5+- . . .

A well coordinated attack of White's queen and knight is very efficient. It leaves no chance for the black king..

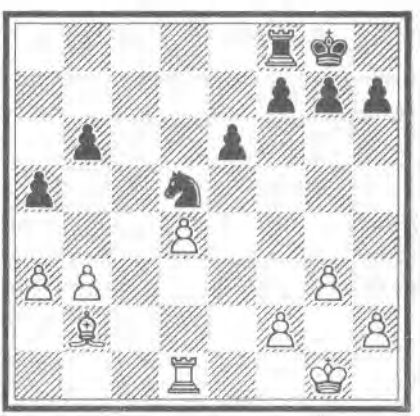
6. . . . ♕a3-b4
7. ♘b5-d6 ♔f8-g8
8. ♕d7:f7+ ♔g8-h7
9. ♖d1:d5 ♖c5-c2?

Apparently time-trouble left its mark on Black's play.

10. ♕f7-g6+ ♔h7-h8
11. ♕g6:c2

Black resigned.

No.88
Chloupek — Shtohl
Praha, 1992



1. . . . ♖f8-b8!

Black doesn't occupy the c-file in full awareness of the fact that an ending without rooks gives White excellent chances to draw the game. He has decided to use the cooperation of his rook and knight in a different way.

2.	**♖d1-c1**	**♔g8-f8**
3.	**♔g1-f1**	**♔f8-e8**
4.	**♔f1-e2**	**♔e8-d7**
5.	**♔e2-d3**	. . .

It is quite clear why White avoided 4.♙h4 ♙h5 — in this case almost all his pawns would be placed on the dark squares and Black is sure to play ♙f7-f6, ♖h8-g8 and ♙g7-g5 with the idea of creating the passed pawn or after ♙g5:h4 to create a weak pawn on h4.

5.	. . .	**♙g7-g5!**
6.	**♙f2-f3**	. . .

Once more White has a problem — which pawn to move: 6.♙f3 or 6.♙h3.

6.	. . .	**♙h7-h5**
7.	**♖c1-c2**	**♙g5-g4!**

Fixing the pawns on the dark squares.

8.	**♖c2-f2**	**♙f7-f5**
9.	**♗b2-c1**	**♙b6-b5!**

Now it is time to start play on the other flank and to create weakness in White's position along the c-file.

10.	**♙f3:g4**	. . .

10.♙h3 ♙h4! 11.♙f:g4 ♙:g3 12.♖f3 ♙f4 13.♗:f4 ♘:f4 14.♖:f4 ♙g2-+.

10.	. . .	**♙h5:g4**
11.	**♗c1-f4**	**♖b8-c8**
12.	**♗f4-d2**	**♙a5-a4**
13.	**♙b3:a4**	**♙b5:a4**
14.	**♗d2-b4**	**♖c8-c1**
15.	**♖f2-b2**	**♘d5-f6!**

Black's knight has completed its task on d5 and now is transferred to a better position.

16.	**♗b4-c5**	**♘f6-e4**
17.	**♖b2-b7+**	**♔d7-c6**
18.	**♖b7-b6+**	**♔c6-c7**
19.	**♖b6:e6**	. . .

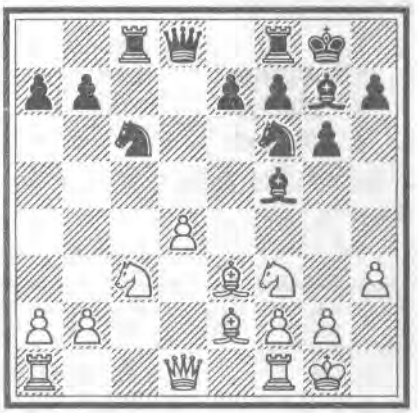
After 19.♖b2 ♖c3+ 20.♔e2 ♔c6 and 21...♔d5 White is helpless.

19.	. . .	**♖c1:c5**
20.	**♙d4:c5**	**♘e4:c5+**
21.	**♔d3-d4**	**♘c5:e6+**
22.	**♔d4-e5**	**♔c7-d7**
23.	**♔e5:f5**	**♘e6-d4+**
24.	**♔f5:g4**	**♘d4-b5**
25.	**♔g4-f4**	**♘b5:a3**
26.	**♔f4-e4**	**♘a3-c4**
27.	**♔e4-d3**	**♙a4-a3**

White resigned.

Subject: Blockade of an isolated pawn. Control of the blockade square.

No.89
Bisguier — Karpov
Skopje, 1972



White threatens ♙d4-d5. How should Black continue?

1. . . . ♗f5-e6!

Consolidating his control over the blockade d5 square and hampering the transfer of the white queen to b3, where it could put pressure on the important squares d5 and b7.

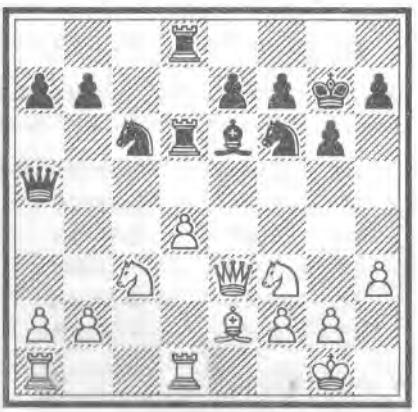
2. ♕d1-d2 . . .

2.♘g5 ♗d5 3.♘:d5 should be played, exchanging the strong lightsquare bishop. Now White is losing control over the position because he has no active plan, and Black keeps increasing pressure on the d4 pawn.

2. . . . ♕d8-a5
3. ♗e3-h6 ♖f8-d8
4. ♗h6:g7 ♔g8:g7
5. ♖f1-d1 ♖d8-d6!

5...♖d7?! 6.♗b5!

6. ♕d2-e3 ♖c8-d8∓



7. ♙a2-a3 ♗e6-b3
8. ♖d1-d2 . . .

8.♘b5? ♗:d1 9.♘:d6 ♗:e2 10.♘:b7 ♕b6 11.♘:d8 ♗:f3 12.♕:f3 ♘:d8 ∓.

8. . . . ♖d6-e6
9. ♕e3-f4 ♘f6-d5!

The exchange of minor pieces leads to Black's advantage.

10.♘c3:d5 ♖d8:d5
11.♙g2-g4 . . .

Preventing 11...♖f5.

11.. . . ♙g6-g5!

Driving the queen away to a passive position, where it cannot influence the course of events.

12. ♕f4-g3 **♖e6-f6**
13. ♗c2-d1 . . .

13.♖d3 ♗c4 14.♖e3 ♗:e2 15.♖:e2 ♖:f3 16.♕:f3 ♘:d4 ∓.

13. . . **♗b3-c4**
14. ♙b2-b3 **♗c4-a6**

14...♖:f3?! 15.♗:f3 ♕:d2 16.♙:c4! ♖:d4 17.♗:c6 ♙:c6 18.♕e5+ =.

15. ♙b3-b4 **♕a5-d8**

Avoiding unnecessary complications after 15...♘:b4 16.♗b3 ♖d6 17.♕e5!

16. ♗d1-b3 **♘c6:d4!-+**
17. ♖d2:d4 **♖d5:d4**
18. ♘f3:g5 **♖d4-d3**
19. ♕g3-h4 **♙h7-h6**
20. ♘g5:f7 **♕d8-d4**
21. ♖a1-e1 **♖d3:h3**

White resigned.

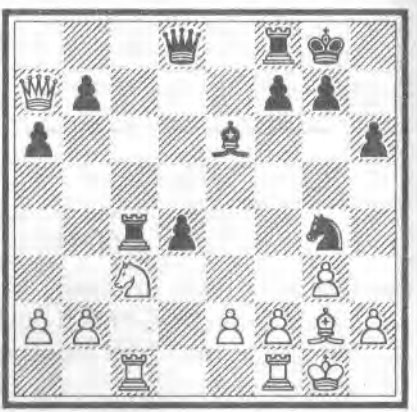
No.90
Andersson — Murray
Moscow, 1982

Assessment of the position depends on who of the opponents controls the key d4 square. If White had the move, then after 1.♘a4 ♗a7 2.♖:c6 ♙:c6 3.♗d4 ± he would have an advantage. Black uses his turn to move in order to increase the activity of his pieces.

1. . . **♘f6-g4!**
2. ♗e5-d4 **♗c5:d4**
3. ♕d1:d4 **♖c6-c4**
4. ♕d4-a7 . . .

4.♕d2?! ♙d4 3.♘e4 ♖:c1 4.♖:c1 ♗:a2 ∓.

4. . . . **♙d5-d4**



5. ♘c3-e4 **♙d4-d3!**

5...♖:c1? 6.♖:c1 ♗:a2 7.♕:b7 ±.

6. ♙e2:d3 **♖c4:c1**

6...♕:d3? 7.♖cd1±.

7. ♖f1:c1 **♕d8:d3=**
8. ♙h2-h3?! . . .

8.♕:b7!? ♗d5 9.♕d7 ♗:e4 10.♕:g4 ♗:g2 11.♔:g2 ♕d5+ =.

8. . . . **♘g4-e5**

9. ♘e4-c3 . . .

9.♕:b7?! ♘f3+ 10.♗:f3 ♕:f3 ↑↓.

9. . . . ♙b7-b5

9...♕d2!?

10. ♖c1-d1 . . .

10.♕:a6? ♙b4 11.♘b5 ♕d2! 12.♖a1 ♕:b2 -+.

10. . . . ♕d3-c2
11. ♕a7-d4 ♕c2:b2!?
12. ♖d1-d2 . . .

12.♕:e5 ♙b4 ∓; 12.♖b1 ♕c2 13.♗e4 ♗f5! ∓.

12. . . . ♕b2-c1+
13. ♖d2-d1 ♕c1-c2
14. ♗g2-e4 ♗e6-f5
15. ♗e4:c2 ♘e5-f3+
16. ♔g1-f1 ♘f3:d4
17. ♗c2:f5! ♘d4:f5
18. ♘c3-d5! . . .

A position approximate balance.

No.91
Beliavsky — Inkov
Salonika, 1988

White's position is better because of pressure along the half open a-file and the possibility to exploit the weakness of the d5 isolated pawn. The absence of Black's darksquare bishop makes his defence a complicated task.

How should White continue?

1. ♖a1-a4! . . .

White improves his control over the key d4 square.

1. . . . ♗c8-e6
2. ♙g2-g4 ♘f5-d6
3. ♙f2-f4! ♘d6-e4
4. ♙f4-f5 ♘e4:c3
5. ♙b2:c3 ♗e6-d7
6. ♖a4-d4 ♙h7-h5

If 6...♙h6, then 7.♙c4! ♙:c4 8.♗:c4 ♕c7 9.♕b3 ±.

7. ♙g4:h5 ♘f6-e4
8. ♗e2-d3 ♖f8-e8
9. ♕d1-g4 ♕d8-b6
10. ♙c3-c4! ♖a8-c8

10...♘f6 11.♕g2 ♙:c4 12.♙h6 ♘h5 13.♗e2 +-.

11. ♕g4-g2 ♕b6-h6
12. ♖d4:d5 ♘e4-f6
13. ♙e3-e4 ♕h6:h5
14. ♗c1-b2 . . .

Black resigned.

No.92

Capablanca — Lasker Em.

Havana, 1921

White's position is better because of Black's pawn weaknesses b6, e6, f6. Black's defence is based on the knight at d5. Thus White's main task is to drive this knight away from the key square d5.

1. ♕a3-b3! . . .

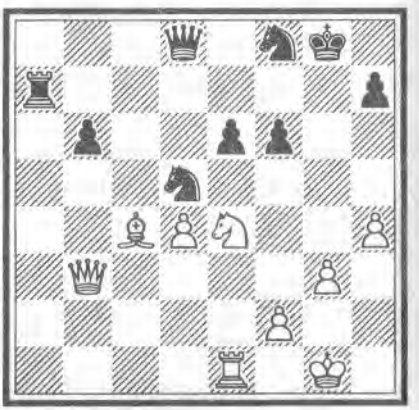
White threatens 2.♗c4 and ♗:d5.

1. . . . **♖c7-g7**

Black strives to provoke the move ♙g2-g3 to deprive White of the possibility to transfer his queen to the kingside through g3.

2. ♙g2-g3 **♖g7-a7**

3. ♗f1-c4! . . .



Black cannot keep his knight at d5.

3. . . . **♖a7-a5**

4. ♘e4-c3! . . .

After exchanging the knight Black's defence falls in.

4. . . . **♘d5:c3**

5. ♕b3:c3+- . . .

White's win is a question of time.

5. . . . **♔g8-f7**

6. ♕c3-e3 **♕d8-d6**

7. ♕e3-e4 **♖a5-a4**

8. ♕e4-b7+ **♔f7-g6**

9. ♕b7-c8 **♕d6-b4**

10. ♖e1-c1 **♕b4-e7**

11. ♗c4-d3+ **♔g6-h6**

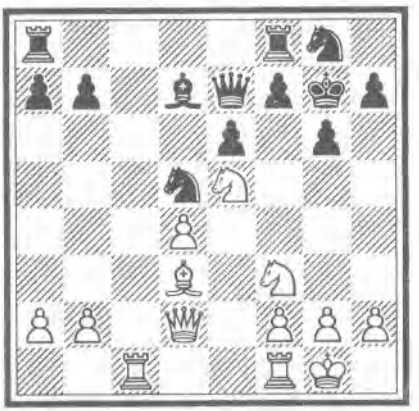
12. ♖c1-c7	**♖a4-a1+**
13. ♔g1-g2	**♕e7-d6'**
14. ♕c8:f8+	

Black resigned because of 14...♕:f8 15.♖:h7#.

No.93

Capablanca — Alekhine

Petersburg, 1913



Assessment of the position strongly depends on Black's ability to control the d5 point.

1. ♗d3-e4!	. . .

The knight at d5 is a key element of Black's defence. White strives to exchange his bishop (it is restricted by Black's pawns) for the more valuable knight.

1. . . .	**♗d7-b5?!**

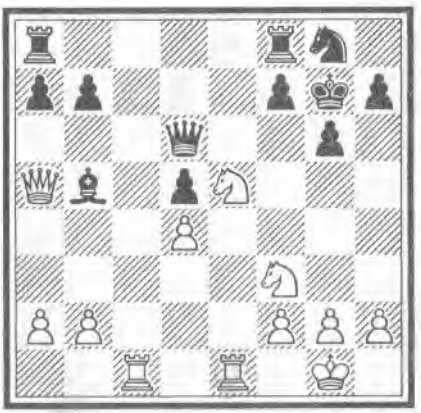
This move leads to a difficult position. It was necessary to strive for control over the d5 point. After 1...♘gf6 2.♗:d5 ♘:d5 3.♘g4± White has a slight advantage.

2. ♖f1-e1	**♕e7-d6**

Now in reply to 2...♘gf6 may follow 3.♗:d5 ♘:d5 4.♖c5 ♙a6 (4...♘c7 5.♕a5 ♙b6 6.♖:c7 ♕:c7 7.♕:b5 +-) 5.♖:d5 ♙:d5 6.♘g4 ♕d6 7.♕h6+ ♔g8 8.♘g5 +-.

If 2...♘df6, then 3.♕a5 ±.

3. ♗e4:d5!	**♙e6:d5**
4. ♕d2-a5!	. . .



By using the open c-file, his superior development and the dark square weakness in Black's camp, White decides the game immediately by an invasion of the queenside.

4. . . .	**♙a7-a6**
5. ♕a5-c7!	**♕d6:c7**
6. ♖c1:c7+-	. . .

Black is unprotected against threats 7.♖:b7 or 7.♘g5.

6. . . .	**♙h7-h6**
7. ♖c7:b7	**♖a8-c8**
8. ♙b2-b3	**♖c8-c2**
9. ♙a2-a4	**♗b5-e2**
10. ♘f3-h4	**♙h6-h5**
11. ♘h4:g6	**♖f8-e8**
12. ♖b7:f7+	**♔g7-h6**

13. ♙f2-f4 ♙a6-a5
14. ♘g6-h4+-

White won.

No.94
Karpov — Vaganian
Skopje, 1976

In such positions the struggle is centered around the d4 square. White strives to place a blocking piece on that square and Black aspires to organize an active piece counterplay. If Black manages to advance his pawn d5-d4 and exchange it, this will simplify the game and give an equal position.

1. ♗c1-e3 . . .

White proposes exchanging dark-square bishops in fighting for the d4 square.

1. . . . **0 - 0**

1...♗c7? 2.♙g4! ♗g6 3.♗:g6 ♙:g6 4.♘c5 ±.

2. ♗e3:b6 ♕d8:b6
3. ♕d1-c2 . . .

The pin of the knight at f3 causes White's queen some discomfort, but Black cannot use this circumstance by 3...♖e8 because the rook on e8 is protected insufficiently.

3. . . . **♖f8-d8**
4. ♖a1-d1 ♙a6-a5

The pawn moves to fight for control over the d4 square. Now if 5.♕e3, then 5...♕:e3 6.♖:e3 ♗:f3 7.♖:f3 ♙a4 8.♘d4 (8.♘d2?! ♙a3 9.♙b3 ♙d4∓) 8...♘:d4 9.♙:d4=.

5. ♗d3-b1! . . .

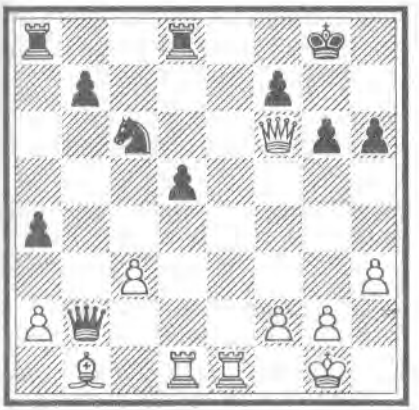
Planning regrouping of the white pieces to attack the black king.

5. . . . **♗h5:f3**

5...♙a4 6.♘bd4 ♘:d4 7.♖:d4 ♘c6 8.♖h4 ♗:f3 9.♕:f3 ♕:b2? 10.♕f5 ♙g6 11.♕f6+-.

6. ♕e2:f3 ♙a5-a4
7. ♘b3-d4 ♕b6:b2
8. ♘d4:c6 ♘e7:c6
9. ♕f3-f5 ♙g7-g6
10. ♕f5-f6± . . .

Black's pieces left his king without any defence.



10. . . . **♖d8-d7**

10...♖e8?! 11.♗:g6! ♙:g6 12.♕:g6+ ♔f8 13.♕:h6+ ♔g8 14.♖e6 +-.

11. ♗b1-f5! ♖d7-e7

11...♙:f5 12.♖d3 ♙f4 13.♕:f4 ♕c2 14.♖g3+ ♔h7 15.♕f6 ♖g8 16.♖:g8 ♔:g8 17.♖e8+ ♔h7 18.♖h8 #.

12. ♖e1:e7 **♘c6:e7**
13. ♗f5-d3 **♘e7-f5**

13...♔f8 14.♖b1 ♕:a2 15.♖:b7 ♖e8 16.♗:g6 +-.

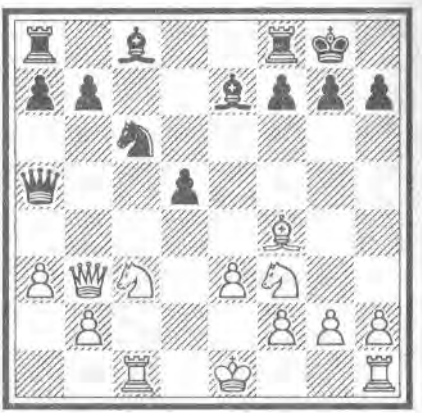
14. ♗d3:f5 **♙g6:f5**
15. ♖d1-e1! **♕b2:a2**
16. ♕f6:h6 . . .

16.♖e3? ♙f4! 17.♕:f4 ♕b1+ 18.♔h2 ♙a3! 19.♖g3+ ♕g6! =.

16. . . . **♙a4-a3**
17. ♕h6-g5+ **♔g8-f8**
18. ♕g5-f6 **♔f8-g8**
19. ♕f6:f5 **♕a2-d2**
20. ♖e1-e7+-

White has a winning advantage, for example 20...♖f8 21.♕g4+ ♔h7 22.♖e5 +-.

No.95
Taimanov — Larsen
Vinkovcy, 1970

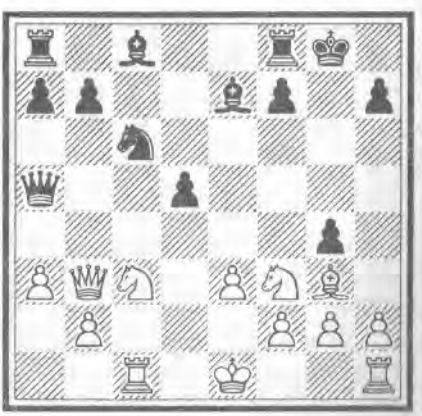


Black decides to struggle actively for the d4 square, exploiting the fact that the white king isn't castled. After the natural 1...♖d8 2.0-0 it is difficult for Black counterplay actively. How should Black continue?

1. . . . **♙g7-g5!**
2. ♗f4-g3 . . .

2.♗:g5 ♗:g5 3.♘:g5 ♙d4 -+.

2. . . . **♙g5-g4**



3. ♘f3-d4? . . .

Natural, but bad!

Now if 3.♘d2, then 3...♙d4 4.♘c4 ♕h5 ½; or 3.♘d4 ♘:d4 4. ♙:d4 ♗g5 5.♖c2 ♖e8+ 6.♖e2 ♖:e2+ 7.♔:e2 ♗d7∓.

3.♘e5! ♙d4! 4.♙:d4 (♘:c6 ♙:c6 5.♙:d4 ♗a6) ♘:d4 5.♕d5 ♕d8!± (Larsen) is better.

3.	. . .	**♘c6:d4**
4.	**♙e3:d4**	**♗e7-g5**
5.	**0 - 0**	**♗g5:c1**
6.	**♖f1:c1**	**♗c8-e6**
7.	**♙h2-h3**	**♙g4:h3**
8.	**♗g3-e5**	**♙f7-f6**
9.	**♘c3-e4**	**♙f6:e5**
10.	**♕b3-g3+**	**♗e6-g4!!-+**
11.	**♕g3:g4+**	**♔g8-h8**
12.	**♘e4-g5**	**♕a5-d2**
13.	**♖c1-c7**	**♕d2:f2+**
14.	**♔g1-h2**	**♕f2:g2+-+**

No.96

Podgaets — Polugayevsky

Moscow, 1973

The weakness of the pawn on d5 isn't felt, Black has active piece play in the centre.

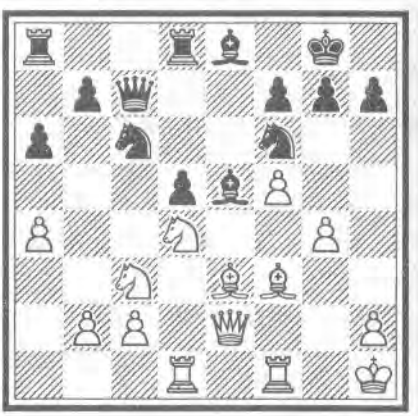
1. . . . ♗e7-d6!

Black weakens White's kingside pawns.

2. ♙g2-g4 ♗d6-e5!

The piece play in the centre is the best remedy against White's flank attack.

3. ♖a1-d1 . . .



3. . . . ♘f6-e4!∓

Black emphasizes the insufficiency of White's control over the d4 square and threatens 4...♘:d4 5.♗:d4 ♗:d4 6.♖:d4 ♘c3 -+.

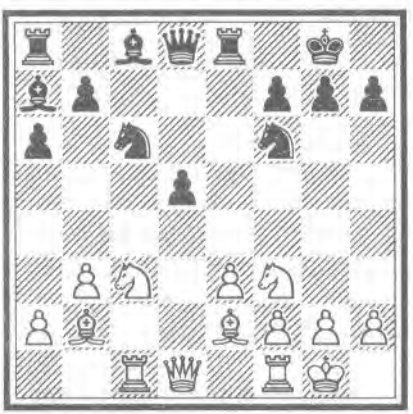
4. ♘c3-b1 . . .

It is difficult to give White good advice.

4.	. . .	♘c6:d4
5.	♗e3:d4	♗e8:a4
6.	♗d4:e5	♕c7:e5
7.	♘b1-c3	♗a4-c6
8.	♗f3:e4	♙d5:e4

Black has a positional advantage and an extra pawn. White's position is hopeless.

No.97
Pinter — Podzelny
Bad Worishofen, 1986



1.	♖c1-c2!	. . .

White doesn't block the isolated pawn, but immediately organizes pressure by his rooks.

1.	. . .	♗c8-e6
2.	♖c2-d2	♕d8-e7
3.	♕d1-b1!	. . .

White's queen releases the d1 square for the rook at f1 and takes control over the e4 and f5 squares.

3.	. . .	♖a8-d8
4.	♖f1-d1	♙h7-h6
5.	♗b2-a1	. . .

Intending to ♕b1-b2, ♘c3:d5 +-.

5.	. . .	♗a7-c5
6.	♙h2-h3	. . .

If 6.♕b2, then 6...♗a3.

6.	. . .	♖d8-d7
7.	♘c3-a4	♗c5-b4?!

7...♗a7 8.♕b2± is better.

8.	♘a4-b6!	. . .

Provoking favourable simplifications.

8.	. . .	♗b4:d2

8...♖7d8 9.♗:f6±.

9.	♘b6:d7	♗e6:d7
10.	♖d1:d2±	. . .

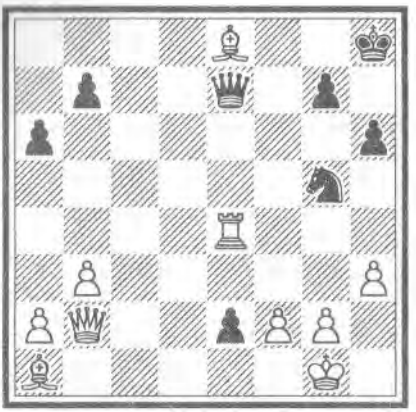
White has an advantage, due to the exchange of his knight for the important darksquare black bishop.

10.	. . .	♙d5-d4

Strategically Black has a bad position and he attempts to make the play unclear. If 10...♘e4, then 11.♖:d5 ♘:f2 12.♔:f2 ♕:e3+ 13.♔g3 ♕:e2 14.♖:d7 +-.

11.	♘f3:d4	♘f6-e4
12.	♘d4:c6	♗d7:c6
13.	♕b1-b2	♙f7-f5
14.	♖d2-d4	♘e4-g5
15.	♗e2-c4+	♔g8-h8
16.	♗c4-d5	♙f5-f4

17.	**♗d5:c6**	**♙f4:e3**
18.	**♗c6:e8**	**♙e3-e2**
19.	**♖d4-e4!+-**	. . .



Black resigned because of the possible variation 19...♘:e4 20.♕:e2 ♕:e8 21.♙f3 ♘f6 22.♕:e8+ ♘:e8 23.♗e5 +-.

No.98
Ragozin — Verer
Corr., 1932-33

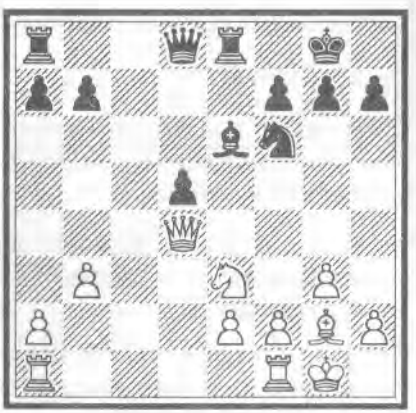
White's position should be preferred because both sides have exchanged a bishop and a knight, but Black has difficulties displaying his activity.

1	**♘d2-c4!**	. . .

White begins to attack the d5 pawn at once. Commonplace 1.♘f3 is weaker. The isolated pawn in this situation must be attacked, not blocked!

1.	. . .	**♖e5-e8**
2.	**♘c4-e3**	**♗c8-e6**
3.	**♕d1-d4!±**	. . .

The queen is usually a bad blocker, but here it keeps a strong centralized position and Black's pieces cannot disturb it. It is a direct effect of the exchange of darksquare bishops.



3. . . . ♕d8-a5

4.	**♖f1-c1**	**♖a8-c8**
5.	**♙a2-a4**	**♙b7-b6**
6.	**♖c1:c8**	**♖e8:c8**
7.	**♙b3-b4**	**♕a5-a6**
8.	**♗g2-f3**	**♙h7-h6**
9.	**♔g1-g2**	**♕a6-b7**
10.	**♖a1-d1**	. . .

Now all white pieces are attacking the d5 pawn.

10.	. . .	**♕b7-d7**
11.	**♙b4-b5**	**♖c8-c5**
12.	**♙g3-g4!**	. . .

White wants to attack the knight at f6 and to win the central black pawn, fixing Black's pieces by defence of the d5 pawn.

12.	. . .	**♕d7-c7**
13.	**♙h2-h4**	**♖c5-c1**
14.	**♖d1:c1**	**♕c7:c1**
15.	**♙g4-g5!?**	. . .

15.♘:d5?! ♘:d5 16.♗:d5 ♗:d5 17.♕:d5 ♕f4 ↑↓.

15.	. . .	**♙h6:g5**
16.	**♙h4:g5**	**♘f6-h7**
17.	**♕d4-e5!**	**♕c1-a3**
18.	**♘e3:d5**	**♘h7-f8**

18...♕:a4? 19.♙g6!+- ♘f8 20.♘e7+.

19.	**♘d5-f4**	. . .

▷20.♘f4-h5.

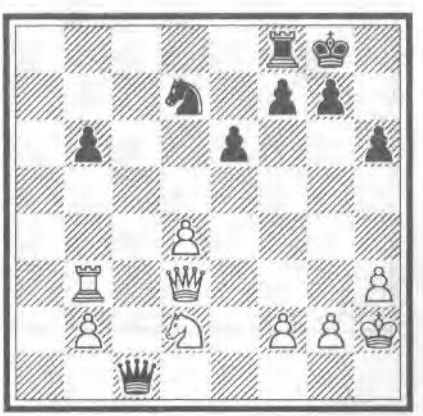
19.	. . .	**♙g7-g6**
20.	**♗f3-d5**	**♕a3:a4**
21.	**♘f4:e6**	**♕a4-g4+**
22.	**♕e5-g3**	**♕g4:g3+**
23.	**♔g2:g3**	**♙f7:e6**
24.	**♗d5-c6+-**	**♔g8-f7**
25.	**♔g3-f4**	**♔f7-e7**

25...♘h7 26.♗e4 ♔g7 27.♗d3 ♔f7 28.♗c2 ♔g7 29.♗b3 ♔f7 30.♔e5! ♘:g5 31.♙f4 ♘h7 32.♔d6! ♘f8 33.♙e4 ♔f6 34.♗c2 ♘h7 35.♙e5+ ♔f7 36.♗b3 ♘f8 37.♗a2 +- (Ragozin).

26.	**♔f4-e5**	**♘f8-h7**
27.	**♙f2-f4**	**♘h7-f8**
28.	**♙e2-e3**	**♘f8-h7**
29.	**♗c6-b7**	**♘h7-f8**
30.	**♗b7-c8**	**♘f8-d7+**
31.	**♗c8:d7**	**♔e7:d7**
32.	**♙e3-e4**	

Black resigned.

No.99
Knaak — Inkov
Germany, 1982



Black has a slight advantage because of his superior pawn configuration (two pawn islands against three).

1. . . . **♘d7-f6!**

Establishing control over the blockade square.

2. ♘d2-c4?! **. . .**

White wants to play 3.♘c4-e3 equalizing.
After 2.♕c3!? will follow ♕e1 3.♕e3 ♕d1∓ ▷4.♖:b6? ♘d5 -+.

2. . . . **♕c1-f4+**
3. ♔h2-g1 **♖f8-c8!**

Unexpectedly White finds his king in problems.

4. ♕d3-e3 **. . .**

4. . . . **♕f4-f5!∓**

Exchange of the queens led to equalization of the position.

5. ♘c4-d6 **♕f5-b1+**
6. ♔g1-h2 **♖c8-c1**

Black attacks the king, his heavy pieces are situated as recommended by R. Rety — the rook is in front of the queen.

7. ♕e3-d3 **♖c1-h1+**
8. ♔h2-g3 **♕b1-c1**
9. ♖b3-c3 **. . .**

9.♕e3? ♕c7! 10.♕e5 ♕:d6! 11.♕:d6 ♘e4+ -+.

9. . . . **♕c1-g5+**
10. ♔g3-f3 **♕g5-h5+**
11. ♔f3-g3 **♙g7-g5!-+**

Defending from checkmate and forcing an attack.

12. ♕d3-e3 **♙g5-g4**
13. ♖c3-c8+ **♔g8-h7**
14. ♘d6-e8 **♘f6:e8**

14...♖:h3+? 15.♙:h3 ♕:h3+ 16.♔f4 ♘d5+ 17.♔e5 ♘:e3 18.♘f6+ ♔g7 19.♖g8#.

15. ♖c8:e8 **♙g4:h3**
16. ♕e3-e4+ **♔h7-g7**
17. ♙g2:h3 **♕h5:h3+**
18. ♔g3-f4 **♕h3-h4+**

If 19.♔e5, then ♕h2+ (19...♕:f2? 20.♕g4+ +-) 20.♙f4 ♕f2 -+.

White resigned.

Subject: Blockade of an isolated pawn by a piece.

No.100
Kavalek — Larsen
Solingen, 1970

This position is favourable for White, he had time to play ♙a2-a3 and now the b4 square is inaccessible for the black knight, and this prevents Black from controlling the d5 square. White can use it to build up pressure on the kingside and in the centre.

1. ♗d3-c2 . . .

White is threatening 2.♕d3.

1. . . . ♖f8-e8

Black has no time to unload, which is typical in such positions: 1...♘d5 because of 2.♕d3 ♙g6 3.♗h6±.

2. ♕d1-d3 **♙g7-g6**
3. ♙h2-h4 **♖a8-c8**
4. ♖a1-d1 **♙a7-a6**

4...♘d5?! 5.♘:d5 ♙:e5± (5...♕:d5 6.♗b3 ♕a5 7.♙d5! ♙:d5 (7...♖cd8 8.♙:e6! ♖:d3 9.♙:f7+ +-) 8.♗:d5 ♖cd8 9.♕b3 +-) 6.♗a4! ♗:g5 7.♙:g5 ♖:e1+ 8.♖:e1 ♘e7 9.♘e5 ♗c6 10.♕f3! ♙f5 11.♙:f6 ♗:a4 12.♘f7! +-.

5. ♗c2-b3 **♘c6-a5**

Black struggles against ♙d4-d5 but weakens the e5 square.

6. ♗b3-a2 **♙b6-b5**
7. ♘f3-e5 **♘f6-d5**

The following exchanges allow White to transform his advantage.

8. ♗a2:d5 **♗b7:d5**
9. ♗g5:e7 **♖e8:e7**

9...♕:e7? 10.♘:g6 ♙h:g6 11.♘:d5 ♕:h4 12.♘c3, ▷ ♙d4-d5.

10. ♘c3:d5 **♕d8:d5**

10...♙:d5!?±.

11. ♘e5-g4! **♕d5-d8**
12. ♙d4-d5!± **♙e6:d5**
13. ♕d3-d4 **♖e7:e1+**
14. ♖d1:e1 **♕d8-f8**

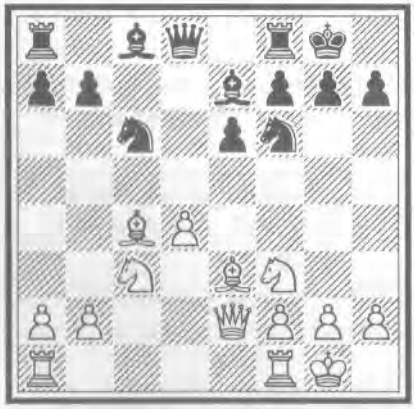
15.	**♘g4-f6+**	**♔g8-h8**
16.	**♖e1-e8!**	**♖c8:e8**
17.	**♘f6:e8+**	**♙f7-f6**
18.	**♘e8:f6**	**♘a5-b3**
19.	**♕d4-e5**	**♙d5-d4**
20.	**♙g2-g4**	**♙d4-d3**
21.	**♙g4-g5**	**♙d3-d2**
22.	**♕e5-d5**	**♕f8-c8**
23.	**♕d5:b3**	**♕c8-c1+**
24.	**♔g1-g2**	**♕c1-c6+**
25.	**♘f6-d5**	**♔h8-g8**
26.	**♙f2-f3**	. . .

White won.

No.101

Spassky — Petrosian T.

Moscow, 1966



White has completed his development, his further actions depend on Black's plan. For example: 1...♙b6 2.♖ad1 (▷ ♙d4-d5) ♘b4 3.♘e5 ♗b7 4.♙f4 ±.

1.	. . .	**♘c6-a5!**

Forcing White's bishop out of the a2-g8 diagonal.

2.	**♗c4-d3**	**♙b7-b6**
3.	**♗e3-g5**	. . .

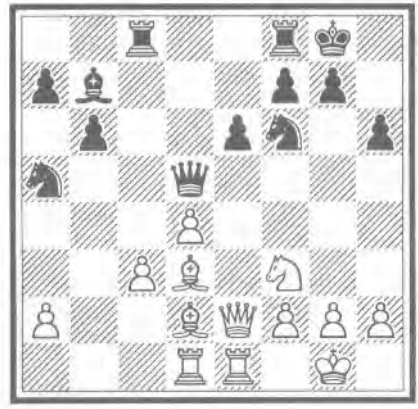
White refuses the standard attack 3.♘e5 ♗b7 4.♙f4 because of 4...♘d5!

3.	. . .	**♗c8-b7**
4.	**♖a1-d1**	**♖a8-c8**
5.	**♖f1-e1**	**♙h7-h6!**
6.	**♗g5-c1?!**	. . .

Loss of tempo, more interesting was 6.♗d2!?.

If 6.♗h4?!, then 6...♘d5 7.♗:e7 (7.♕e4 ♙g6) ♕:e7 ∓.

6.	. . .	**♗e7-b4!**
7.	**♗c1-d2**	**♗b4:c3**
8.	**♙b2:c3**	**♕d8-d5∓**



Black controls the c4 square and is ready to block it. His position is better.

9.	**♕e2-f1**	**♕d5:a2**

9...♘c4!? is good enough.

10.	**♘f3-e5**	**♘a5-b3**
11.	**♖e1-e2**	. . .

If 11.♗h6, then 11... ♖:c3! 12.♖e3 ♖fc8 13.♖g3 ♘h5! 14.♖g5 ♖c1∓.

11.	. . .	**♘b3:d2**

11...♕a3!? 12.♗e1 ♘c1! ∓.

12.	**♖e2:d2**	**♕a2-d5**
13.	**♙c3-c4**	**♕d5-d6**
14.	**♕f1-e2**	**♖f8-d8∓**

Black has an extra pawn and a better position.

15.	**♙h2-h3**	**♘f6-d7**
16.	**♘e5-g4**	**♙h6-h5**

16...♕f4!?

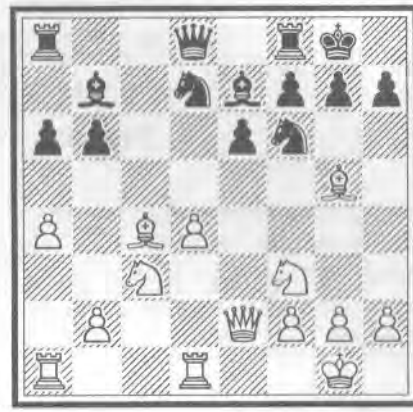
17.	**♘g4-e3**	**♙g7-g6**
18.	**♖d2-a2**	**♖c8-a8**
19.	**♕e2-c2**	**♔g8-g7∓**

Now Black wins without much trouble.

No.102

Petrosian T. — Larsen

Biel, 1976



Black has a rather strained position with especially unpleasant pressure on the a6 pawn. If now 1...♘d5, then 2.♘:d5 ♗:g5 3.♘c3 ♗f6 4.♙d5 ♙:d5 5.♘:d5 ±.

1.	. . .	**♖f8-e8!?**
2.	**♖a1-c1**	**♘d7-f8**
3.	**♘f3-e5**	. . .

Plans of attacking the king such as ♖d1-d3-h3 are useless because the knight's position on f8 makes Black's defence firm.

3.	. . .	**♘f6-d5**
4.	**♗c4:d5**	. . .

4.♗e3 was possible, avoiding the exchange of darksquare bishops.

4.	. . .	**♗b7:d5**
5.	**♗g5:e7**	**♖e8:e7**

6.	**♘c3:d5**	**♕d8:d5**
7.	**♖c1-c3!**	. . .

White's plan has become clear — the capture of the c-file and play on the queenside.

7.	. . .	**♙f7-f6?!**

A typical move defending the e5 square and limiting the white knight's activity. But B. Larsen considers that modest 7...♖b7, ▷ ♙b6-b5 is better.

8.	**♘e5-c4**	**♕d5-d8**

Now after 8...♖b7 follows 9.♘e3 ♕d7 10.♙d5±.

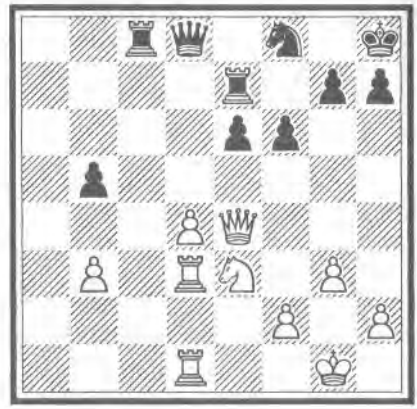
9.	**♙g2-g3**	**♖e7-d7**
10.	**♖c3-d3**	**♔g8-h8**
11.	**♕e2-e4**	**♖a8-c8**
12.	**♙b2-b3**	**♙b6-b5?!**

Black has two weak pawns on e6 and b6, his desire to get rid of them is clear. 11...♕c7, ▷♕c6 would have been better.

13.	**♙a4:b5**	. . .

13.♘e3!? ♖e7 14.♙d5! ♙:d5 15.♕:d5 with a more active position for White.

13.	. . .	**♙a6:b5**
14.	**♘c4-e3**	**♖d7-e7**

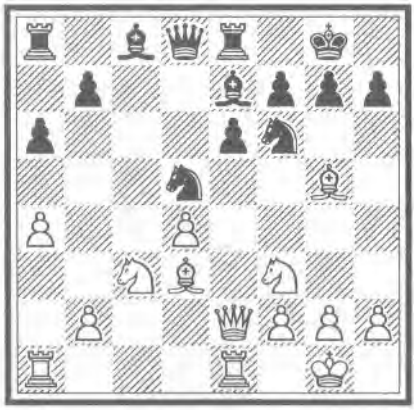


15.	**♙d4-d5!**	**♙e6:d5**
16.	**♕e4:d5±**	**♕d8-e8**
17.	**♔g1-g2**	**♖e7-e5**
18.	**♕d5-b7**	**♙h7-h6**
19.	**♙b3-b4**	**♘f8-e6**
20.	**♙h2-h4**	**♖c8-b8**
21.	**♕b7-f3**	**♘e6-f8**
22.	**♘e3-f5**	**♕e8-g6**
23.	**♘f5-d6**	**♙h6-h5**
24.	**♖d3-d5**	**♘f8-d7**
25.	**♘d6-f7+**	**♕g6:f7**
26.	**♖d5:d7**	**♕f7-g6**
27.	**♖d1-d4**	**♖b8-e8**
28.	**♖d7-b7**	**♕g6-b1**
29.	**♕f3-d3!**	**♕b1:d3**
30.	**♖d4:d3**	**♖e8-c8**
31.	**♙f2-f4**	**♖e5-e2+**
32.	**♔g2-f3**	**♖e2-b2**
33.	**♖b7:b5**	**♖c8-c4**
34.	**♖b5:h5+**	**♔h8-g8**
35.	**♔f3-g4**	**♖c4:b4**
36.	**♖d3-d8+**	**♔g8-f7**
37.	**♖h5-h8**	**♖b4-b7**
38.	**♖h8-f8+**	**♔f7-e7**
39.	**♔g4-f5**	**♖b2-b3**
40.	**♙g3-g4**	**♖b3-g3**

41.	**♖d8-e8+**	**♔e7-d6**
42.	**♙g4-g5**	**♙f6:g5**
43.	**♙h4:g5**	**♖b7-b5+**
44.	**♔f5-g6**	

Black resigned.

No.103
Portisch — Panno
Lugano, 1968



1.	**♘f3-e5**	**♙h7-h6?!**
2.	**♗g5:f6!**	. . .

Starting implementation of a plan to establish control over the d5 point.

2.	. . .	**♘d5:f6**
3.	**♖a1-d1**	**♗e7-b4**
4.	**♕e2-f3!**	. . .

Continuation of play to get control over the d5 point.

4.	. . .	**♖e8-e7**
5.	**♗d3-c2**	**♖e7-c7**
6.	**♗c2-b3**	**♕d8-f8**
7.	**♖e1-e3!**	. . .

Getting rid of the pin and preparing the breakthrough ♙d4-d5.

7. . . . ♗c8-d7

8. ♙d4-d5! . . .

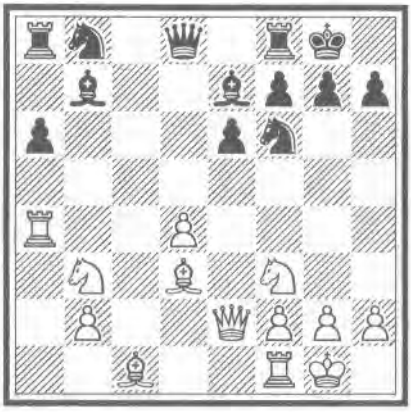
The precisely calculated move.

8.	. . .	**♗b4:c3**
9.	**♖e3:c3**	**♖c7:c3**
10.	**♕f3:c3**	**♖a8-c8**
11.	**♕c3-h3!**	**♖c8-d8**
12.	**♘e5:d7**	**♖d8:d7**
13.	**♙d5:e6**	**♖d7:d1+**
14.	**♗b3:d1**	**♕f8-b4**
15.	**♙e6:f7+**	**♔g8:f7**
16.	**♗d1-b3++-**	. . .

White gradually realizes his advantage.

Subject: Activity development on the queen-side.

No.104
Barcza — Keres
Budapest, 1952



Black reliably controls the d5 square. White cannot attack the king, and his rook and knight on b3 don't cooperate with other pieces.

1.	. . .	**♗b7-c6!**
2.	**♖a4-a1**	**♕d8-b6!**

It is advantageous for Black to transfer the bishop to b5. As a rule, any exchange of equivalent pieces is favourable for the side fighting against the opponent's isolated pawn.

3.	**♘b3-a5**	**♗c6-b5**
4.	**♘a5-c4**	. . .

White avoids an unfavourable exchange. White is not satisfied by the variation 4.♗:b5 ♕:b5 5.♕:b5 ♙:b5 6.♗g5∓.

4.	. . .	**♕b6-b7**
5.	**♘f3-e5**	. . .

5.♗e3 ♘c6 6.♖ac1 ♘b4 7.♗b1 ♙a5∓ is better.

5.	. . .	**♘b8-c6**
6.	**♗c1-e3?**	. . .

White should capture the knight on c6 and only then develop his bishop.

6.	. . .	**♘c6-b4!**

Black drives away White's pieces to unfavourable positions.

7.	**♗d3-b1**	**♖a8-c8**
8.	**♖f1-c1**	**♖f8-d8∓**

Black's pieces are excellently placed, the pins on the c-file and along the a6-f1 diagonal are very strong. It gives Black additional advantages, i.e. exerting pressure on the d4 point and full control over the d5 square.

9.	**♙b2-b3**	**♙g7-g6**
10.	**♙f2-f3**	. . .

10.♘d3!?

10.	. . .	**♘f6-d5**
11.	**♗b1-e4?**	. . .

11.♔h1!?

11.	. . .	**♙f7-f5!**
12.	**♗e4:d5**	**♙e6:d5**
13.	**♘c4-a5**	**♖c8:c1+**
14.	**♗e3:c1**	**♕b7-b6**
15.	**♕e2-d1**	**♖d8-c8**
16.	**♔g1-h1**	**♘b4-c2**
17.	**♘a5-c6**	**♖c8:c6**
18.	**♘e5:c6**	**♕b6:c6-+**

Black won.

No.105

Rosentalis — Mikhalchishin

Lvov, 1987

The position is characterized by active arrangement of the white knights, but White's control of the d5 square is insufficient. Therefore Black should play 1...♗e8! 2.♖d1 ♘d5 and prevent the white bishop from moving to g5.

1.	. . .	**♖a8-c8**
2.	**♗c1-g5**	**♙h7-h6**
3.	**♗g5-d2**	**♘c6-b4**
4.	**♙a2-a3**	**♘b4-d5**
5.	**♖f1-e1**	**♗d7-a4**

Another possibility was 5...♖c7 and then 6...♕b8 and 7...♖fc8.

6.	**♙b2-b3**	**♗a4-e8**
7.	**♙b3-b4**	**♙a7-a6**
8.	**♖a1-c1**	**♘d5-c7**

Black wants to exchange light-square bishops after 9...♗b5.

9.	**♗c4-b3**	**♗e8-b5**
10.	**♘e5-d3**	**♘c7-d5**
11.	**♖c1:c8**	**♕d8:c8**
12.	**♘f3-e5**	**♖f8-d8**
13.	**♕e2-f3**	**♙a6-a5**
14.	**♙b4:a5**	**♗e7:a3**
15.	**♗d2:h6**	**♕c8-c3**

A position of dynamic balance is now clear.

No.106

Flohr — Euwe

Karlsbad, 1932

How should White continue?

1. ♕d4-d3! . . .

White has a better position. His plans include the transfer of the knight from c3 to d4.

1. . . . ♘d5-d4

If 1...♘a6?, preventing transfer to d4, then 2.♘b4 ♕:a3 3.♘:d5 ♕:d3 4.♘:e7+ ♔f8 5.♘:d3 ♔:e7 6.♗:b7 +-.

If 1...♘h6, then 2.♗e3, ▷ ♗d4 ±.

2. ♘c3-e4 ♗e6-f5
3. ♗g5:f6 ♗f5:e4

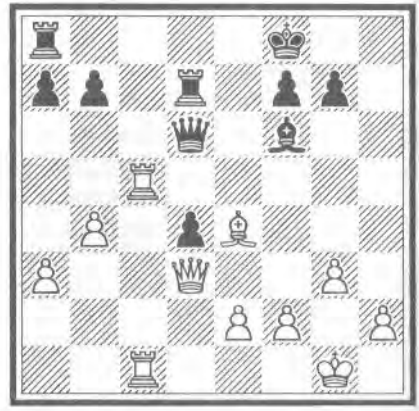
If 3...♘:f6, then 4.♖c4 ±.

After 3...♗:f6 4.♘:f6+ ♘:f6 5.♕f3, ▷ ♘b4, ♖c5 ±.

4. ♗g2:c4 ♗e7:f6
5. ♗e4:h7+± ♔g8-f8
6. ♗h7-e4 . . .

White has an extra pawn and a positional advantage.

6. . . . ♖d8-d7
7. ♘b2-b4 ♕a5-b6
8. ♖c1-c5 ♕b6-d6
9. ♖f1-c1 . . .



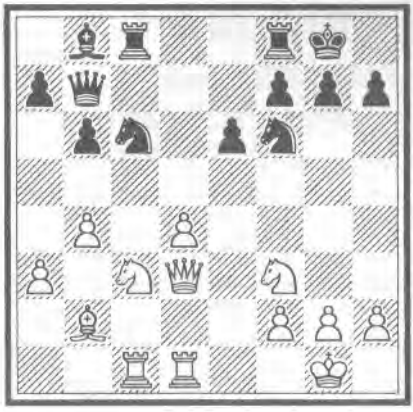
9. . . . ♖a8-d8
10. ♕d3-f3 ♘b7-b6
11. ♖c5-c6 ♕d6-e5
12. ♗e4-d3 ♕e5-d5
13. ♕f3-g4 ♕d5-e5
14. ♘f2-f4! ♕e5-c3+
15. ♔g1-g2 ♘a7-a6
16. ♖c1-c2 ♘a6-a5
17. ♖c6:b6 ♘a5:b4
18. ♘a3:b4+-

White has two extra pawns and a winning position.

No.107

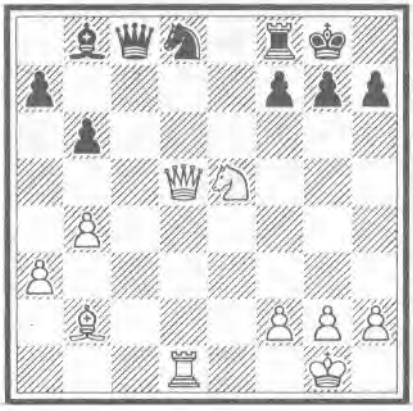
Portisch — Browne

Amsterdam, 1971



How should White continue?

1.	**♙d4-d5!**	**♙e6:d5**
2.	**♘c3:d5**	**♘f6:d5**
3.	**♕d3:d5**	**♘c6-d8**
4.	**♖c1:c8**	**♕b7:c8**
5.	**♘f3-e5**	. . .



As a result of the breakthrough White's pieces occupy active positions and are aimed at the kingside.

5.	. . .	**♕c8-c2**

He should simplify his position by 5...♗:e5 6.♕:e5 ♘c6, but after 7.♙f4! White has an initiative.

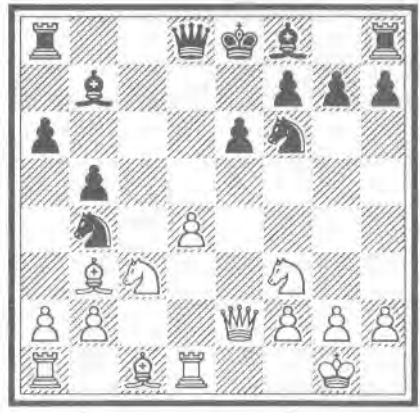
6.	**♘e5-d7**	**♖f8-e8**
7.	**♗b2:g7!**	**♔g8:g7**
8.	**♕d5-d4+**	**♗b8-e5**
9.	**♘d7:e5**	**♘d8-e6**
10.	**♕d4-a1+-**	. . .

White has a decisive advantage.

No.108

Spassky — Avtonomov

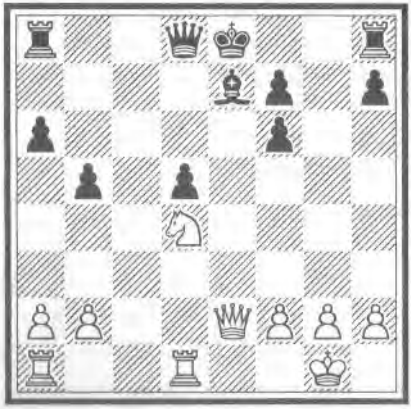
Leningrad, 1949



White has significant development advantage. The Black king hasn't

castled yet and the d4 pawn isn't blocked by any black piece, but the most important factor in this position is the undeveloped Black's king flank.

1.	**♙d4-d5!±**	**♘b4:d5**
2.	**♗c1-g5**	**♗f8-e7**
3.	**♗g5:f6**	**♙g7:f6**
4.	**♘c3:d5**	**♗b7:d5**
5.	**♗b3:d5**	**♙e6:d5**
6.	**♘f3-d4+-**	. . .



White has transformed his development advantage into a strong attack, Black is unable to protect his numerous weaknesses.

6.	. . .	**♔e8-f8**

6...♕d7 7.♖c1 ♖a7 8.♖ac1 ♔f8 9.♕h5 ▷ ♘f5 +-.

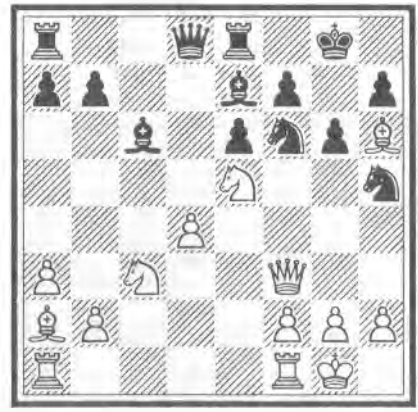
7.	**♘d4-f5**	**♙h7-h5**
8.	**♖d1:d5!**	**♕d8:d5**
9.	**♕e2:e7+**	**♔f8-g8**
10.	**♕e7:f6**	

Black resigned.

No.109

Shamkovich — Kolarov

Varna, 1989



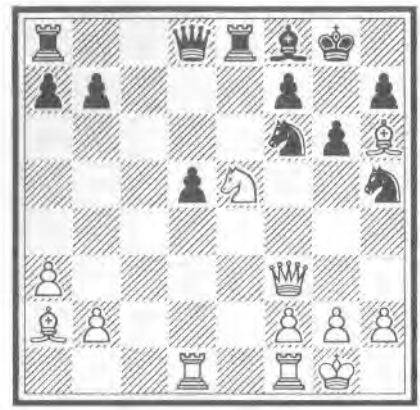
How should White continue?

1.	**♙d4-d5!**	**♗c6:d5**

1...♙:d5 2.♙g4 ♘g7 3.♗:g7 ♔:g7 4.♙g5 +-.

2.	**♘c3:d5**	**♙e6:d5**
3.	**♖a1-d1!**	**♗e7-f8**

In reply to 3...♗d6 follows 4.♘:f7! ♗:h2+ 5.♔h1 +-.



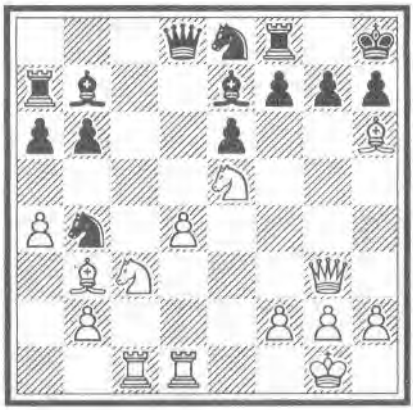
4. ♘e5:f7! **♕d8-b6?!**

4...♕e7!? was better.

5. ♗h6:f8 **♖e8:f8**
6. ♘f7-g5 **♕b6:b2**
7. ♗a2:d5+ **♘f6:d5**
8. ♕f3:d5++- . . .

White has a decisive advantage.

No.110
Petrosian T. — Spassky
Moscow, 1971



How should White continue?

1. ♙d4-d5! . . .

White strives to open play by advance of the d-pawn and to use Black's positional weaknesses: dangerous opposition of the rook on d1 and the queen on d8, bad positions of the rook on a7 and the knight on e8.

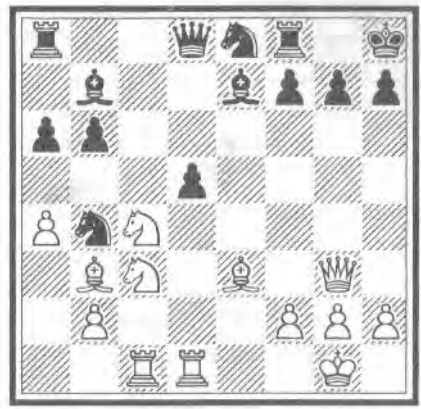
1. . . . **♙e6:d5**

1...♙:h6 2.♙:e6 (2.♘:f7+ ♖:f7 3.♙:e6 ♖g7 4.♖:d8 ♖:g3 5.♖:e8+ ♖g8 6.♖:e7 ♗:g2! =, if 7.♖e8?, then 7...♖:e8 8.♔:g2 ♘d3! -+) 2...♘d6 3.♙:f7 +- (3.♘:f7+ ♘:f7 4.♖:d8 ♘:d8 %).
Also bad 1...,♘:d5 2.♘:d5 ♙:d5 3.♗e3! (3.♗:d5? ♗:d5 4.♘c6 ♗:c6! 5.♖:d8 ♗:d8 6.♖:c6 ♙:h6 %) 3...♖a8 4.♘c6 ±.

2. ♗h6-e3! **♖a7-a8**

2...♙a5 3.♘:d5! ♘:d5 4.♗:d5 ♗:d5 5.♘c6 +-, or 2...♗c5 3.♙a5 ♘f6 4.♘a4 ±.

3. ♘e5-c4! . . .



3. . . . **♘e8-d6**

3...♗c5?! 4.♘a5!±.

4. ♗e3:b6 . . .

4.♘:b6 ♘f5! 5.♕h3 ♘:e3 6.♕:e3 ♗g5 7.♙f4 ♗f6 %.

4. . . . **♕d8-b8**

4...♕d7?! 5.♘e3! ♕e6 6.♗c5 ♙a5 7.♗:b4 ♙:b4 8.♘c:d5 ±.

5. ♘c4-a5 . . .

5.♘e3! would have been better.

5.	. . .	**♘d6-f5?**

5...♖c8! would have been more stubborn.

6.	**♕g3:b8**	**♖a8:b8**
7.	**♘a5:b7**	**♖b8:b7**
8.	**♙a4-a5**	**♗e7-g5**
9.	**♖c1-b1**	**♙d5-d4**
10.	**♘c3-d5**	**♘b4-c6**
11.	**♗b3-a4**	**♖f8-c8**
12.	**♙f2-f4**	**♘c6-e7**
13.	**♖b1-c1**	**♖c8-b8**
14.	**♙f4:g5**	**♘e7:d5**
15.	**♗a4-c6**	**♖b7:b6**
16.	**♙a5:b6**	**♘d5-e3**
17.	**♙b6-b7**	**♘e3:d1**
18.	**♖c1:d1**	**♙g7-g6**
19.	**♙g2-g4**	**♘f5-g7**
20.	**♖d1:d4**	**♘g7-e6**
21.	**♖d4-d7**	

Black resigned.

No.111

Psakhis — Geller

Erevan, 1982

White is lagging behind in development, and the important h1-a8 diagonal is weakened. White's king and queen can be threatened by Black's heavy pieces.

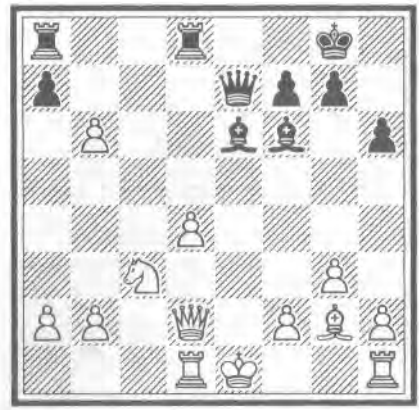
How should Black continue?

1.	. . .	**♙d5-d4!**
2.	**♗f1-g2**	. . .

2.♘e4? ♗d5 3.♘:f6+ ♕:f6 4.♕:d4 ♕:f3 5.♙b7 ♖d7!! 6.♕a4 ♕:d1+ 7.♕:d1 ♗:h1 8.♙f3 ♖:d1+ 9.♔e2 ♖d2!+ -+.

2.	. . .	**♘b8-c6**
3.	**♘f3:d4**	**♘c6:d4**
4.	**♙e3:d4**	. . .

4.♗:a8 ♖:a8 5.♙:d4 ♗d5+ 6.♕e2 ♗:h1 7.♕:e7 ♗:e7 8.♙:a7 ♖:a7 ∓.



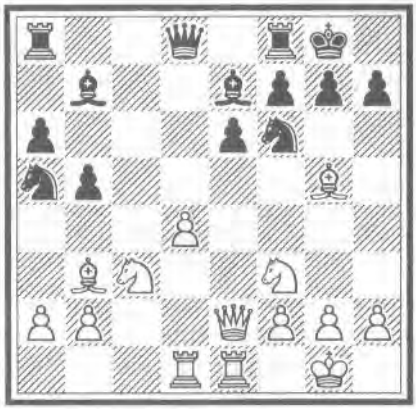
4.	. . .	**♗e6-h3+**
5.	**♔e1-f1**	**♖d8:d4**
6.	**♕d2-e3**	. . .

6.♕:d4 ♗:d4 7.♖:d4 would have been better, although here Black also has an advantage.

6.	. . .	♕**e7-b7**
7.	♙**f2-f3**	♖**d4:d1+**
8.	♘**c3:d1**	♕**b7-a6+**
9.	♔**f1-g1**	♖**a8-d8**
10.	♘**d1-f2**	♗**f6-d4**
11.	♕**e3-e1**	♗**d4:f2+**

White resigned because of possible 12.♔:f2 ♕:b6+ 13.♔f1 ♗c8 -+.

No.112
Boleslavsky — Kotov
Zurich, 1953



How should White continue?

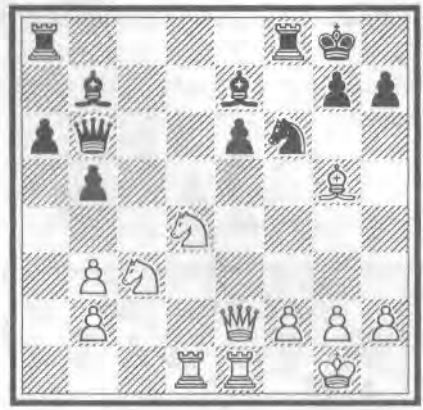
1. ♙**d4-d5!** . . .

White's pieces keep excellent positions and are mobilized to attack. Black's positional shortcomings are: no reliable control of the central squares, the opposition of the rook on d1 and queen on d8, the unprotected bishop on e7 in case of an opening of play in the centre.

1. . . . ♘**a5:b3□**

1...♘:d5 2.♗:d5 ♗:d5 3.♖:d5! ♙:d5 4.♗:e7 +-.

2.	♙**d5:e6**	♕**d8-b6**
3.	♙**a2:b3**	♙**f7:e6**
4.	♘**f3-d4**	. . .



4. . . . ♗**e7-d6**

4...♗c5 5.♕:e6+ ♔h8 6.♕:b6 ♗:b6 7.♖e7 ±.

5. ♕**e2:e6+** ♔**g8-h8**

And now 6.♗f4 ♗c5 7.♕:b6 ♗:b6 8.♖e7 was leading to significant advantage for White.

No.113
Petrosian T. — Spassky
Moscow, 1971

Assessment of this position depends on the estimation of the consequences of move 1.♙d5.

1. ♙d4-d5 **♙e6:d5**
2. ♘c3:d5 **♘f6:d5**
3. ♗b3:d5 . . .

3. . . . **♘b4:d5!**

If 3...♗e6?, then 4.♗h6! ♙:h6 5.♗:e6 ♕e8 6.♘:f7+ ♖:f7 7.♗:f7 ♕:f7 8.♕b8+ ♗f8 9.♖d8 ♔g7 10.♖:f8! +-.

4. ♘e5-c6?! **♘d5-c3!**

Now White should think about equalization! White's position is only slightly better because the d-pawn advance didn't bring him real advantages.

No.114
Eingorn — Gelfand
Tallinn, 1989

Black has an uncastling king and a weakened queenside, White's pieces have occupied active positions. The best way for White to realize his development advantage is to open play.
How should White continue?

1. ♙d4-d5! . . .

1.♖c1 0-0 2.♘e5± promised White a minimal advantage.

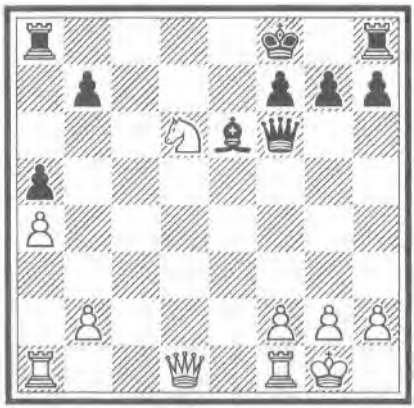
1. . . . ♙e6:d5

1...♘:d5 2.♗:e7 ♔:e7 3.♕g4 and White has a strong initiative for his pawn.

2. ♗g5:f6 ♗e7:f6
3. ♘c3:d5 ♗c8-e6!?

After the natural 3.0-0 could follow 4.♘cb6 ♖a6 5.♘:c8 ♕:c8 6.♕b3. The centralized knight and vulnerable a5 and b7 pawns decide White's advantage.

4. ♘d5:f6+ ♕d8:f6
5. ♘c4-d6+ ♔e8-f8



6. ♘d6:b7?! . . .

6.♘:b7 gives the advantage away. 6.♕d2! ♙h5 (6...♖d8 7.♖a3±) 7.♙f4! ± is better and the unprotected position of Black's king decides White's advantage.

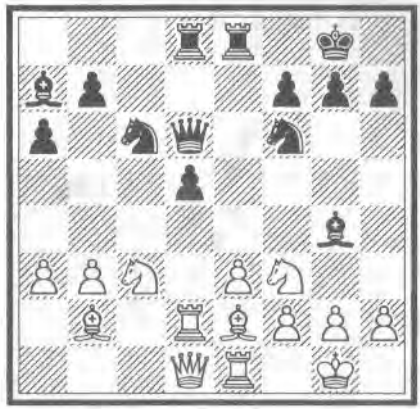
6. . . . ♕f6-e7!
7. ♕d1-d6□ ♕e7:d6
8. ♘b7:d6 ♔f8-e7!
9. ♘d6-b5 ♖h8-d8
10. ♘b5-c7 . . .

10.♖fd1 ♖ab8 11.♘d4 ♔f6 12.♘:e6 ♖:d1+ 13.♖:d1 ♔:e6 =.

10. . . . ♖a8-b8=
11. ♘c7:e6 ♙f7:e6
12. ♖a1-b1 ♖d8-d7
13. ♙b2-b3 ♖d7-d3
14. ♖f1-e1 ♖b8:b3

Draw.

No.115
Virtenzon — Tal
Luzern, 1982



How should Black continue?

1. . . . ♙d5-d4!

All Black's pieces have been brought into play. White's control over d4 square is not reliable enough. Black realizes the breakthrough ♙d5-d4, which increases the activity of his pieces. White's king can be the subject of attack.

2. ♘f3:d4 . . .

2.♘b1 ♗:f3 3.♗:f3 ♙:e3 4.♙:e3 ♖:e3! -+.
2.♔h1 ♗:f3 3.♗:f3 ♗b8 4.♙g3 ♙:c3 ♖:d6 ♖:d6 6.♕c2 ♙:b2 -+.
2.♙:d4, was evidently the lesser evil, due to 2...♗:f3 3.♗:f3 ♖:e1+ 4.♕:e1 ♘:d4 ∓ is playable.

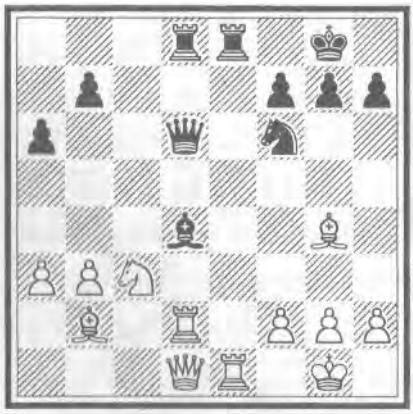
2. . . . ♘c6:d4
3. ♙e3:d4 . . .

3.♗:g4 ♘:g4 (3...♘f3+ -+ is good enough is) 4.♕:g4 ♘f3+ 5.♙:f3 ♕:d2 6.♖e2 ♕d7 -+.

3. . . . ♗a7:d4

With the threat 4...♗:f2+.

4. ♗e2:g4 . . .



4. . . . ♖e8:e1+?!

4...♘:g4! 5.♙g3 ♕h6 6.♖:e8+ (6.♙h4 ♖:e1+ -+) ♖:e8 7.♙h4 ♘:f2 8.♖:f2 ♕e3 9.♘e4□ ♗:b2 (9...♖:e4!? 10.♗:d4 ♖:d4 11.♕f3 ♕:f3 12.♖:f3 ♙g6∓) 10.♕d7 ♖f8 ∓ would have been better.

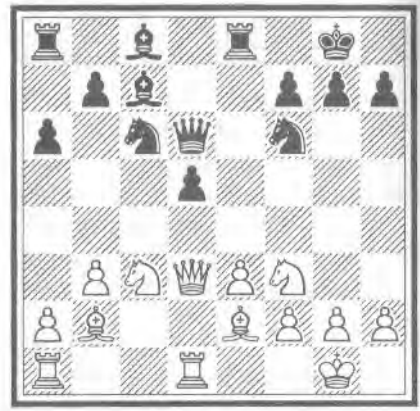
5. ♕d1:e1 ♘f6:g4
6. ♘c3-e4 . . .

6.♙g3 ♕h6 7.♕e7!? ♖f8 8.♘e4 ♗:b2 (8...♕:h2+ 9.♔f1 ♕h1+ 10.♔e2 ♗e5 11.♖d8 ♕:e4+ 12.♔f1 ♘h2+ 13.♔g1 ♘f3+ leads to unclear play) 9.♖d8 ♙g6 10.♙h3 ♗:a3 -+.

6. . . . ♕d6:h2+
7. ♔g1-f1 ♕h2-h1+
8. ♔f1-e2 ♕h1:g2
9. ♔e2-d1 ♕g2-f3+
10. ♕e1-e2 ♕f3-h1+
11. ♕e2-e1 ♕h1-f3+
12. ♕e1-e2 ♕f3:b3+

White resigned.

No.116
Tal — Agzamov
USSR, 1981



How should Black continue?

1. . . . ♙d5-d4!

Black uses the power of the diagonal battery "queen+bishop". The knight on f3 is the main defender of White's king, and his overload is felt constantly.

2. ♙e3:d4 . . .

2.♘a4 ♗g4 3.♙g3 ♙:e3! 4.♕:d6 ♙:f2+ 5.♔g2 ♗:d6 ∓.

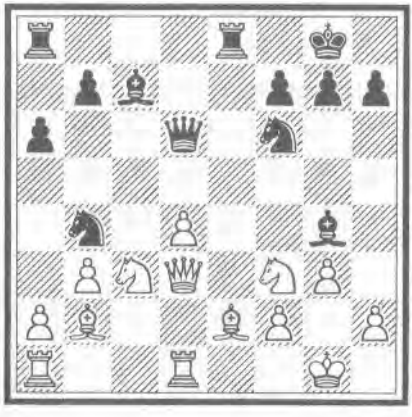
2. . . . ♗c8-g4

This forces the weakening of the king and creates the possibility of pinning the knight on f3 in some variations.

3. ♙g2-g3 . . .

If 3.♔f1, then 3...♘b4! 4.♕d2 ♗:f3 5.♗:f3 ♕:h2 6.♙g3 ♘g4 7.♘e4 ♙f5 8.♕:b4 ♖:e4 9.♕d2 ♗a5! 10.♕c2 ♘e3+ -+.

3. . . . ♘c6-b4!



4. ♗b2-a3 . . .

4.♕d2 ♖:e2! 5.♕:e2 ♖e8 -+.

4. . . . ♘b4:d3

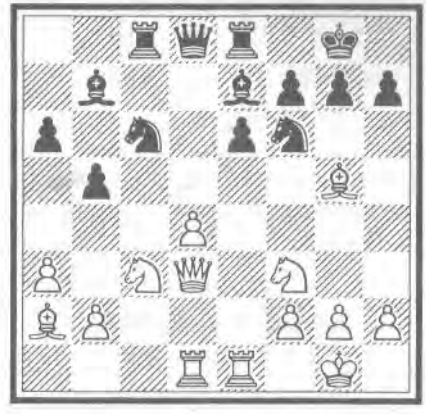
5. ♗a3:d6 ♗c7:d6

5...♘:f2 6.♗:c7 ♘:d1 7.♖:d1 ♖ac8 8.♗a5 ♙b6 -+ was playable.

6. ♖d1:d3 ♗d6-b4!
7. ♗e2-f1 ♗g4-f5-+
8. ♘c3-d1 ♗f5:d3
9. ♗f1:d3 ♘f6-d5-+

Black realized his advantage and gradually won.

No.117
Portisch — Bilek
Budapest, 1975



How should White continue?

1. ♗g5:f6! ♗e7:f6
2. ♙d4-d5! . . .

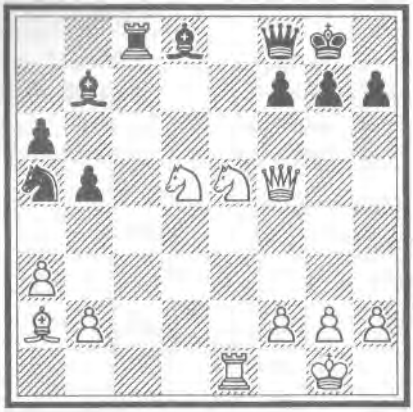
White's piece activity decides his advantage.

2. . . . ♙e6:d5
3. ♖e1:e8+ ♕d8:e8
4. ♘c3:d5 ♗f6-d8

4...♗:b2 5.♘g5 ♙g6 6.♘:f7! +-.

5. ♖d1-e1 ♕e8-f8

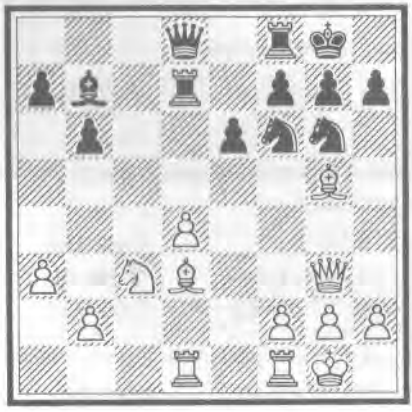
6. ♕d3-f5 **♘c6-a5**
7. ♘f3-e5 . . .



7. . . . **♙g7-g6**
8. ♕f5-d7 **♗b7:d5**
9. ♕d7:c8 . . .

Black resigned.
For example: 9...♗:a2 10.♘d7 ♗e6 11.♖:e6 +-.

No.118
Kasparov — Psakhis
La Manga, 1990



Black's pieces exert pressure on the isolated d4 pawn and it seems he is all right. However, some disharmony in the rook's disposition on d7, and the pin of the knight on f6, allows White to develop strong activity and to use his advantage of two bishops.

1. ♙d4-d5 **♙e6:d5**

If 1...♗:d5, then 2.♗b5 ♖c7 (2...♖d6 3.♗:f6 ♙:f6 4.♘e4 +-) 3.♘:d5 ♙:d5 4.♗:f6 ♙:f6 5.♕b3 ♘e7 6.♖d4±.

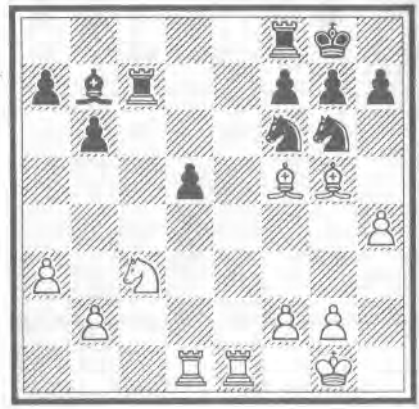
2. ♗d3-f5 **♖d7-e7**
3. ♙h2-h4! . . .

With the threat 4.♗:f6 ♙:f6 5.♙h5 +-.

3. . . . **♕d8-c7**

Black offers an exchange of queens, striving to ease the growing pressure of White's pieces.

4. ♕g3:c7 **♖e7:c7**
5. ♖f1-e1! . . .



White's pieces dominate over the Black's they have concentrated their

fire-power on all important central squares.

5. . . . ♖c7-e7

5...♙h6 6.♗:f6 ♙:f6 7.♙h5 ♘f4 (7...♘e7? 8.♘b5 +-) 8.♙g3 ♘:h5 9.♘:d5 ♗:d5 10.♖:d5±.

6. ♘c3-b5! . . .

White doesn't grant Black a moment's respite, reminding him of the weakness of the queenside pawns.

6. . . . ♖f8-e8

6...♙a6 7.♘d6 ♗c6 8.♘c8±.

7. ♖e1:e7 ♘g6:e7
8. ♗f5-h3 ♗b7-c8
9. ♗h3:c8 ♖e8:c8

9...♘:c8 10.♗:f6 ♙:f6 11.♖:d5 would have been more persistent, although here White's position is technically won.

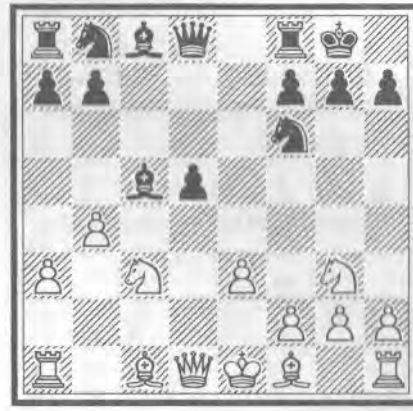
10. ♘b5:a7 ♖c8-c2
11. ♙b2-b4 ♔g8-f8
12. ♗g5-e3 ♘e7-f5
13. ♗e3:b6 ♘f6-g4
14. ♗b6-c5+ ♔f8-e8
15. ♘a7-b5 ♖c2-a2
16. ♘b5-c3 ♖a2:a3
17. ♘c3:d5 ♙f7-f6
18. ♙b4-b5 ♖a3-b3
19. ♙b5-b6

Black resigned.

No.119

Euwe — Alekhine

The Netherlands, 1937



1. . . . ♙d5-d4!

White hasn't finished his piece development and has started play on the queenside. Counterplay in the centre is always effective in reply to unprepared play on the flank.

2. ♙b4:c5 . . .

Other continuations are worse, for example 2.♘ce4 (2.♘a4 ♙:e3 3.♘:c5 ♙:f2+ 4.♔e2 ♗g4+ -+) 2...♘:e4 3.♘:e4 ♗b6 ∓.

2. . . . ♙d4:c3
3. ♕d1-c2?!∓ . . .

3.♕:d8 ♖:d8 4.♘e2 ♘e4 5.♙f3 ♘:c5 6.♘:c3 ♘c6 ∓ would have been better. White's backwardness is felt more acutely when the queens are on the board.

3. . . . ♕d8-a5
4. ♖a1-b1?! . . .

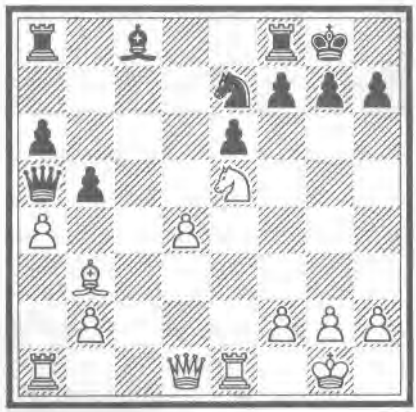
White strives to recapture the pawn but only aggravates his position. 4.♗d3 would have been better, striving to develop the kingside.

4.	. . .	**♗c8-d7**
5.	**♖b1-b3?**	**♗d7-a4**
6.	**♕c2:c3**	**♕a5-d8-+**

No.120

Bondarevsky — Ravinsky

Moscow, 1940



How should White continue?

1.	**♙d4-d5!**	. . .

White's pieces keep the active positions, Black's pieces are disconnected. The modest position of the queen on a5 and the unprotected rook on a8 allow White to achieve an advantage by tactical means.

1.	. . .	**♙e6:d5**

1...♘:d5 2.♘:f7 ♙:a4!? (2...♖:f7 3.♗:d5 ♖b8 4.♖:e6 +-) 3.♘g5 ±.

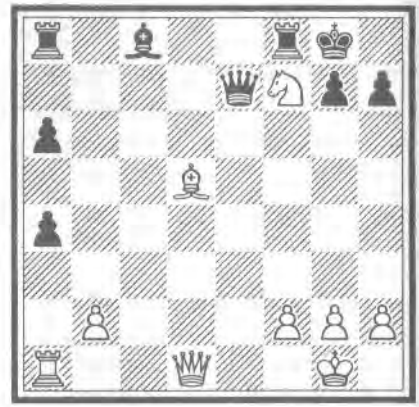
2.	**♘e5:f7!**	**♙b5:a4!?**

2...♖:f7 3.♖:e7! (3.♗:d5? ♕:e1+ 4.♕:e1 ♘:d5 ∓) 3...♖:e7 4.♕:d5+ +-.

3.	**♖e1:e7**	**♕a5-c5!**
4.	**♗b3:d5**	. . .

4.♘h6+? ♔h8.

4.	. . .	**♕c5:e7**



5.	**♘f7-g5+±**	. . .

5.♘h6++ ♔h8 6.♗:a8 ♗d7 7.♗f3 ♙:h6 is inferior. It is not easy for White to prove his advantage.

5.	. . .	**♔g8-h8**
6.	**♘g5:h7!**	**♖f8-d8**
7.	**♘h7-f6!**	. . .

7.♕h5 ♗g4!; or 7.♘f8? ♕g5↑↓.

7.	. . .	**♕e7-e5**

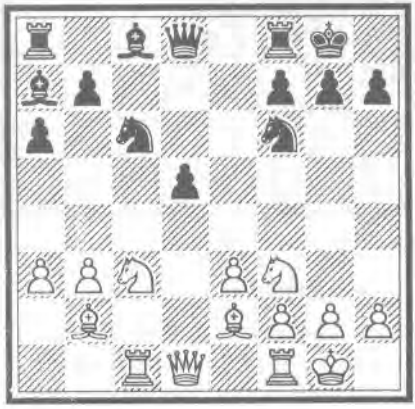
7...♕:f6 8.♕h5+ ♕h6 9.♕:h6+ ♙:h6 10.♗:a8 ♖d2 11.♗c6 +-.
7...♙:f6 8.♕h5+ ♕h7 9.♕:h7+ ♔:h7 10.♗:a8 +-.

8.	**♕d1:a4**	**♕e5:f6**

9. ♗d5:a8+-

White gradually realizes his advantage.

No.121
Reshevsky — Ghitsesku
Tel Aviv, 1964



1. . . . ♙d5-d4?

A hasty move. The black pieces are less developed, and so the opening of the play isn't good for Black. 1...♗e6 would have been better.

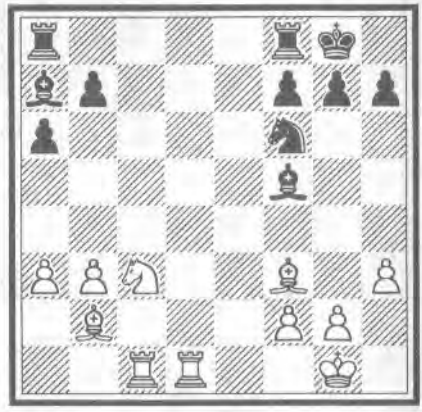
2. ♙e3:d4 ♘c6:d4
3. ♘f3:d4 ♕d8:d4

3...♗:d4 4.♗f3 ♖b8 5.♘a4 ♗:b2 6.♘:b2 ♗e6 7.♘d3±▷♘c5. Black's problems are due to strong pressure on his queenside.

4. ♕d1:d4 ♗a7:d4
5. ♖f1-d1 ♗d4-a7
6. ♙h2-h3! . . .

An important move! If 6.♗f3, then 6...♗g4 7.♗:b7 ♗:d1 8.♗:a8 ♗:b3 =.

6. . . . ♗c8-f5
7. ♗e2-f3± . . .



White's pressure on Black's queenside defines his advantage.

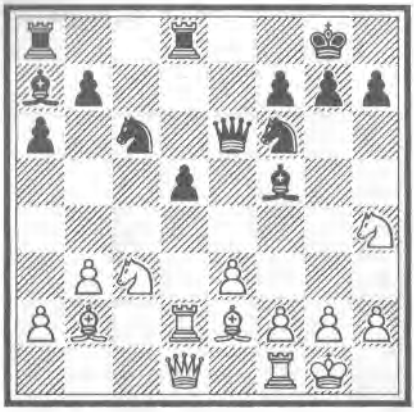
7. . . . ♖a8-b8
8. ♙g2-g4! ♗f5-g6
9. ♙g4-g5 ♘f6-h5

The march of the g-pawn allowed White to throw two black pieces out of the centre.

10. ♘c3-d5 ♖f8-e8
11. ♖c1-c7 ♔g8-h8
12. ♘d5-e7+- ♘h5-f4
13. ♘e7:g6+ ♙h7:g6
14. ♖c7:f7 ♘f4:h3+
15. ♔g1-g2 ♘h3:f2
16. ♖d1-d7

Black resigned.

No.122
Agzamov — Simic
Belgrad, 1982



White's control of the blockade square d4 is not reliable enough, but the position of the black bishop on f5 makes a precise calculation of the breakthrough 1...♙d4 consequently necessary.

1.	. . .	**♙d5-d4!=**
2.	**♗e2-c4!**	. . .

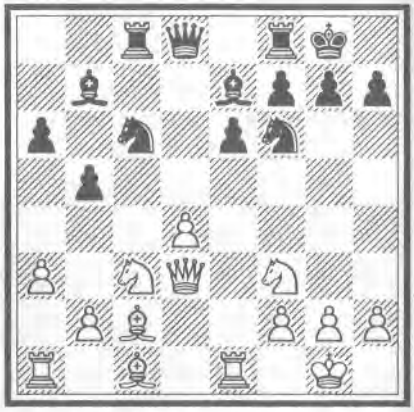
2.♙:d4 ♘:d4 ∓.

2.	. . .	**♗f5-g4!**
3.	**♗c4:e6**	**♗g4:d1**
4.	**♘c3:d1!=**	. . .

4.♗:f7+ ♔:f7 5.♘:d1 ♙:e3 6.♖:d8 ♙:f2+ 7.♘:f2 ♖:d8 ∓; or 4.♙:d4 ♙:e6∓.

4.	. . .	**♙f7:e6**
5.	**♙e3:d4**	**♘c6:d4**
6.	**♖f1-e1**	**♖d8-d6**
7.	**♗b2:d4**	**♗a7:d4**
8.	**♘h4-f3**	**♖a8-d8=**

No.123
Lukac — Flesz
Solnok, 1975



How should White continue?

1.	**♙d4-d5!**	. . .

White maintains a combined attack on the kingside and in the centre. He opens play by advancing ♙d4-d5 and uses the power of the "battery" (the bishop on c2 and the queen on d3).

1.	. . .	**♙e6:d5**
2.	**♗c1-g5!**	**♘f6-e4**

2...♙g6? 3.♖:e7 ♕:e7 4.♘:d5 +-.

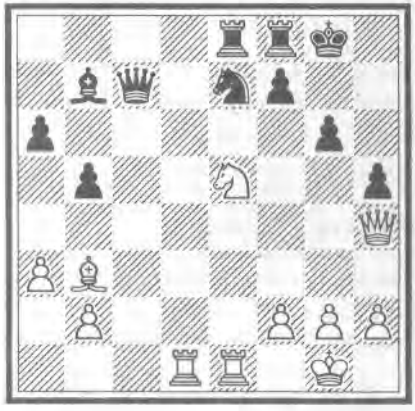
3.	**♘c3:e4**	**♙d5:e4**
4.	**♕d3:e4**	**♙g7-g6**
5.	**♖a1-d1**	. . .

Is bad 5.♗:e7 ♕:e7 6.♕:e7 ♘:e7 7.♗e4 and the position is equalized.

5.	. . .	**♕d8-c7**
6.	**♕e4-h4**	**♖c8-e8**

6...♙f6 7.♗f4 ♘e5 8.♘d4 ±, or 8.♗b3+ ♔h8 9.♘:e5±.

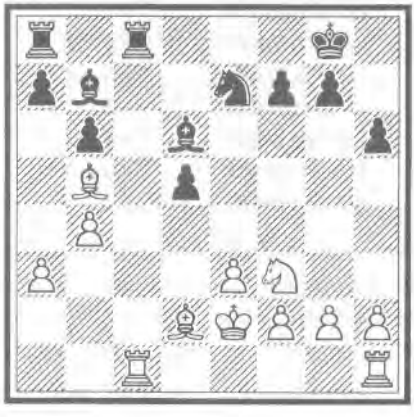
7.	**♗c2-b3**	**♙h7-h5**
8.	**♗g5:e7**	**♘c6:e7**
9.	**♘f3-e5+-**	. . .



9.	. . .	**♖e8-d8**
10.	**♖d1:d8**	**♕c7:d8**
11.	**♘e5:f7!**	**♖f8:f7**
12.	**♕h4:e7**	

Black resigned.

No.124
Yusupov — Timman
Tilburg, 1987



White threatens with ♗c3 or ♘d4 to take the d4 square under his control, retaining a slight advantage. But Black finds a really unexpected pawn sacrifice.

1.	. . .	**♙d5-d4!**
2.	**♙e3:d4**	**♙a7-a6!**

It is necessary to keep off White's bishop. 2...♘d5?! 3.♘e5! ♙f6 4.♗c6± is inferior.

3.	**♖c1:c8+**	**♖a8:c8**
4.	**♗b5-d3**	**♘e7-d5**

The pawn sacrifice has led to activation of the black pieces, which compensate for the missing pawn.

5.	**♖h1-c1**	**♖c8:c1**
6.	**♗d2:c1**	**♘d5-f4+**
7.	**♗c1:f4**	**♗d6:f4**

Black uses his activity to pass to a theoretically drawn position with the bishops of opposite colour.

8.	**♙a3-a4**	**♗f4-d6**
9.	**♙b4-b5**	**♙a6:b5**
10.	**♗d3:b5**	**♗b7:f3+**
11.	**♔e2:f3**	**♔g8-f8**

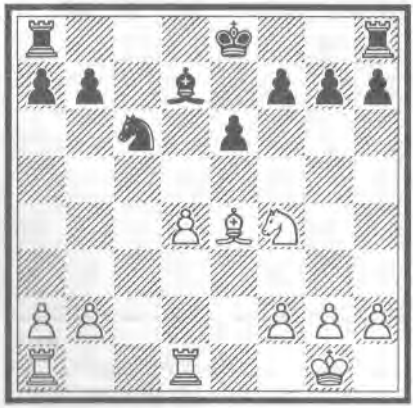
12. ♔f3-e4	**♗d6-a3**
13. ♔e4-d5	**♗a3-b2**
14. ♗b5-c4	**♔f8-e7**
15. ♙f2-f3	**♗b2-c3**
16. ♗c4-d3	**♗c3-b2**
17. ♗d3-f5	**♗b2-c3**
18. ♗f5-g4	**♗c3-b2**
19. ♗g4-h5	**♙f7-f6**
20. ♗h5-g6	**♗b2-a1**

Some moves later the players agree to a draw.

No.125

Ivanchuk — Hellers

Manila, 1987



1. ♘f4-d3 . . .

The obvious 1.♙d5?! gave no real advantage: 1...♙:d5 2.♘:d5 0-0-0.

1. . . . **♖a8-c8**

There was nothing good in 1...♙b6 2.♘e5 ♖c8 3.♗:c6 ♗:c6 4.♖ac1 ♗b7 5.♖:c8 ♗:c8 6.♖c1 with decisive penetration of the rook into the seventh rank.

2. ♙d4-d5 . . .

The breakthrough was very timely. 2.♘c5 ♙b6 3.♘d7 ♔d7 4.♙d5 ♘e7 was inferior.

2. . . . **♙e6:d5**

3. ♗e4:d5 **♙b7-b6**

Black has to parry the threat 4.♘c5. After 3...0-0 4.♘c5 ♖c7 5.♘:d7 ♖:d7 6.♗:c6 ♖:d1 7.♖:d1 ♙:c6 8.♖d7 he was to lose a pawn.

4. ♖d1-e1+ **♔e8-f8**

5. ♖a1-d1 . . .

The hasty 5.♘e5? enables the opponent to solve the problem of his defence by 5...♘:e5 6.♖:e5 ♖c5!

5. . . . **♙g7-g6**

6. ♘d3-e5 **♘c6:e5**

7. ♖e1:e5 **♖c8-e8**

8. ♖e5:e8+ **♗d7:e8**

9. ♖d1-c1 **♔f8-e7**

10. ♖c1-c8 **♖h8-f8**

11. ♖c8-a8 **♙a7-a5**

12. ♖a8-a6 **♔e7-d6**

13. ♗d5-b3 **♗e8-b5**

Black has to part with his pawn because there is absolutely no hope in 13...♔c7 14.♖a8 for him.

14. ♖a6:b6+ **♔d6-c5**

15. ♖b6-b7 **♖f8-e8**

16. ♙h2-h4 **♙a5-a4**

17. ♗b3:f7 **♖e8-e1+**

18. ♔g1-h2 **♖e1-e2**

19. ♔h2-g3 **♖e2:b2**

20. ♗f7-e8 . . .

White drastically completes the realization of his advantage by transferring the game into a pawn ending.

20. . . . **♙h7-h6**

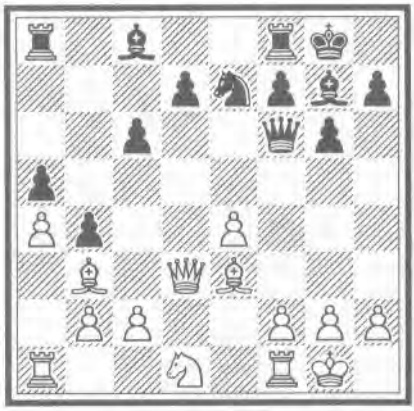
There was no relief in 20...♙a3 21.♖:b5 ♖:b5 22.♗:b5 ♔:b5 23.♔f4 ♔c4 24.♔e3 ♔c3 25.♙g4 ♔b2 26.♔d2 ♔:a2 27.♔c2 either.

21.♙h4-h5	**♙g6-g5**
22.♖b7:b5+	**♖b2:b5**
23.♗e8:b5	**♔c5:b5**
24.♙f2-f4	**♙g5:f4+**
25.♔g3:f4	**♔b5-b4**
26.♙g2-g4	**♔b4-a3**
27.♙g4-g5	**♙h6:g5+**
28.♔f4-e3	

Black resigned.

Subject: Pawn structure transformation. Fixing backward pawns.

No.126
Tarrasch — Alekhine
Carlsbad, 1923

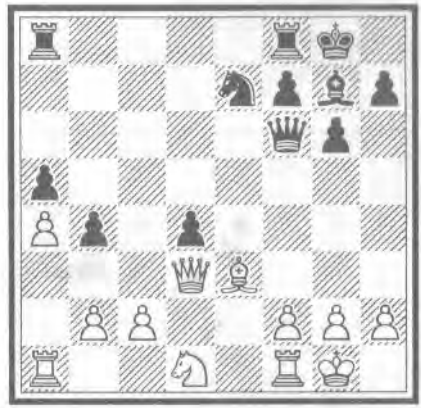


How should Black continue?

1. . . . ♙d7-d5!

Black is ready for the voluntary isolation of his d-pawn.

2.♙e4:d5	**♗c8-a6**
3.♗b3-c4	**♗a6:c4**
4.♕d3:c4	**♙c6:d5**
5.♕c4-d3	**♙d5-d4!∓**



Black's b4 pawn and his isolated d-pawn have fixed White's weak pawn at c2. The possibility of pressure on this pawn decides Black's advantage.

6. ♗e3-d2	**♖a8-c8**
7.♖f1-e1	**♖c8-c7**
8.♙b2-b3	**. . .**

▷♘b2-c4.

8. . . .	**♖f8-c8**
9.♖a1-c1	**♕f6-f5!**

Offering exchange of the main defender of the c2 pawn.

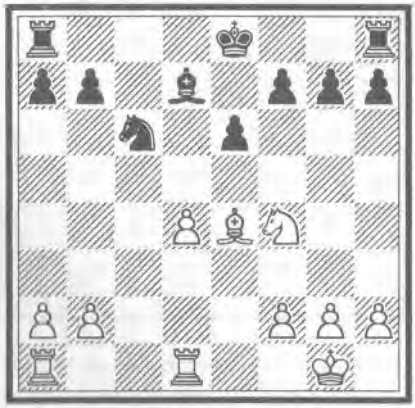
12. ♔f3-e4	**♗d6-a3**
13. ♔e4-d5	**♗a3-b2**
14. ♗b5-c4	**♔f8-e7**
15. ♙f2-f3	**♗b2-c3**
16. ♗c4-d3	**♗c3-b2**
17. ♗d3-f5	**♗b2-c3**
18. ♗f5-g4	**♗c3-b2**
19. ♗g4-h5	**♙f7-f6**
20. ♗h5-g6	**♗b2-a1**

Some moves later the players agree to a draw.

No.125

Ivanchuk — Hellers

Manila, 1987



1. ♘f4-d3 . . .

The obvious 1.♙d5?! gave no real advantage: 1...♙:d5 2.♘:d5 0-0-0.

1. . . . **♖a8-c8**

There was nothing good in 1...♙b6 2.♘e5 ♖c8 3.♗:c6 ♗:c6 4.♖ac1 ♗b7 5.♖:c8 ♗:c8 6.♖c1 with decisive penetration of the rook into the seventh rank.

2. ♙d4-d5 . . .

The breakthrough was very timely. 2.♘c5 ♙b6 3.♘d7 ♔d7 4.♙d5 ♘e7 was inferior.

2. . . . **♙e6:d5**

3. ♗e4:d5 **♙b7-b6**

Black has to parry the threat 4.♘c5. After 3...0-0 4.♘c5 ♖c7 5.♘:d7 ♖:d7 6.♗:c6 ♖:d1 7.♖:d1 ♙:c6 8.♖d7 he was to lose a pawn.

4. ♖d1-e1+ **♔e8-f8**

5. ♖a1-d1 . . .

The hasty 5.♘e5? enables the opponent to solve the problem of his defence by 5...♘:e5 6.♖:e5 ♖c5!

5. . . . **♙g7-g6**

6. ♘d3-e5 **♘c6:e5**

7. ♖e1:e5 **♖c8-e8**

8. ♖e5:e8+ **♗d7:e8**

9. ♖d1-c1 **♔f8-e7**

10. ♖c1-c8 **♖h8-f8**

11. ♖c8-a8 **♙a7-a5**

12. ♖a8-a6 **♔e7-d6**

13. ♗d5-b3 **♗e8-b5**

Black has to part with his pawn because there is absolutely no hope in 13...♔c7 14.♖a8 for him.

14. ♖a6:b6+ **♔d6-c5**

15. ♖b6-b7 **♖f8-e8**

16. ♙h2-h4 **♙a5-a4**

17. ♗b3:f7 **♖e8-e1+**

18. ♔g1-h2 **♖e1-e2**

19. ♔h2-g3 **♖e2:b2**

20. ♗f7-e8 . . .

White drastically completes the realization of his advantage by transferring the game into a pawn ending.

20. . . . **♙h7-h6**

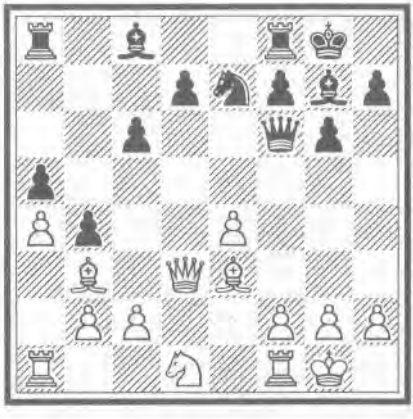
There was no relief in 20...♙a3 21.♖:b5 ♖:b5 22.♗:b5 ♔:b5 23.♔f4 ♔c4 24.♔e3 ♔c3 25.♙g4 ♔b2 26.♔d2 ♔:a2 27.♔c2 either.

21.♙h4-h5	**♙g6-g5**
22.♖b7:b5+	**♖b2:b5**
23.♗e8:b5	**♔c5:b5**
24.♙f2-f4	**♙g5:f4+**
25.♔g3:f4	**♔b5-b4**
26.♙g2-g4	**♔b4-a3**
27.♙g4-g5	**♙h6:g5+**
28.♔f4-e3	

Black resigned.

Subject: Pawn structure transformation. Fixing backward pawns.

No.126
Tarrasch — Alekhine
Carlsbad, 1923



How should Black continue?

1. . . .	**♙d7-d5!**

Black is ready for the voluntary isolation of his d-pawn.

2.♙e4:d5	**♗c8-a6**
3.♗b3-c4	**♗a6:c4**
4.♕d3:c4	**♙c6:d5**
5.♕c4-d3	**♙d5-d4!∓**

Black's b4 pawn and his isolated d-pawn have fixed White's weak pawn at c2. The possibility of pressure on this pawn decides Black's advantage.

6.♗e3-d2	**♖a8-c8**
7.♖f1-e1	**♖c8-c7**
8.♙b2-b3	**. . .**

▷♘b2-c4.

8. . . .	**♖f8-c8**
9.♖a1-c1	**♕f6-f5!**

Offering exchange of the main defender of the c2 pawn.

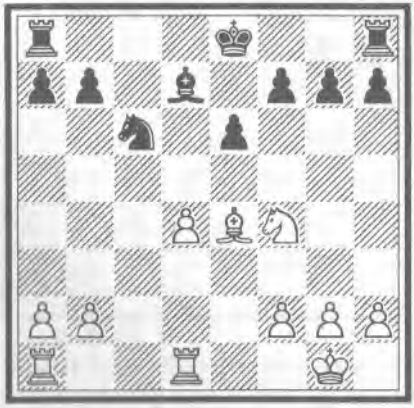
12. ♔f3-e4	**♗d6-a3**
13. ♔e4-d5	**♗a3-b2**
14. ♗b5-c4	**♔f8-e7**
15. ♙f2-f3	**♗b2-c3**
16. ♗c4-d3	**♗c3-b2**
17. ♗d3-f5	**♗b2-c3**
18. ♗f5-g4	**♗c3-b2**
19. ♗g4-h5	**♙f7-f6**
20. ♗h5-g6	**♗b2-a1**

Some moves later the players agree to a draw.

No.125

Ivanchuk — Hellers

Manila, 1987



1. ♘f4-d3 . . .

The obvious 1.♙d5?! gave no real advantage: 1...♙:d5 2.♘:d5 0-0-0.

1. . . . ♖a8-c8

There was nothing good in 1...♙b6 2.♘e5 ♖c8 3.♗:c6 ♗:c6 4.♖ac1 ♗b7 5.♖:c8 ♗:c8 6.♖c1 with decisive penetration of the rook into the seventh rank.

2. ♙d4-d5 . . .

The breakthrough was very timely. 2.♘c5 ♙b6 3.♘d7 ♔d7 4.♙d5 ♘e7 was inferior.

2. . . . ♙e6:d5

3. ♗e4:d5 ♙b7-b6

Black has to parry the threat 4.♘c5. After 3...0-0 4.♘c5 ♖c7 5.♘:d7 ♖:d7 6.♗:c6 ♖:d1 7.♖:d1 ♙:c6 8.♖d7 he was to lose a pawn.

4. ♖d1-e1+ ♔e8-f8

5. ♖a1-d1 . . .

The hasty 5.♘e5? enables the opponent to solve the problem of his defence by 5...♘:e5 6.♖:e5 ♖c5!

5. . . . ♙g7-g6

6. ♘d3-e5 ♘c6:e5

7. ♖e1:e5 ♖c8-e8

8. ♖e5:e8+ ♗d7:e8

9. ♖d1-c1 ♔f8-e7

10. ♖c1-c8 ♖h8-f8

11. ♖c8-a8 ♙a7-a5

12. ♖a8-a6 ♔e7-d6

13. ♗d5-b3 ♗e8-b5

Black has to part with his pawn because there is absolutely no hope in 13...♔c7 14.♖a8 for him.

14. ♖a6:b6+ ♔d6-c5

15. ♖b6-b7 ♖f8-e8

16. ♙h2-h4 ♙a5-a4

17. ♗b3:f7 ♖e8-e1+

18. ♔g1-h2 ♖e1-e2

19. ♔h2-g3 ♖e2:b2

20. ♗f7-e8 . . .

White drastically completes the realization of his advantage by transferring the game into a pawn ending.

20. . . . ♙h7-h6

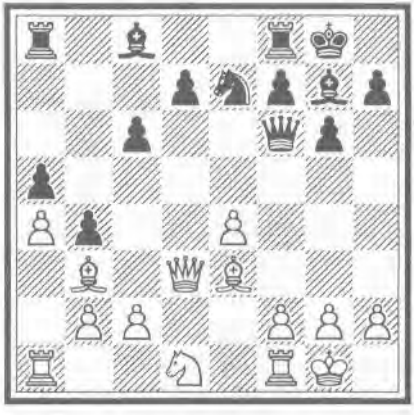
There was no relief in 20...♙a3 21.♖:b5 ♖:b5 22.♗:b5 ♔:b5 23.♔f4 ♔c4 24.♔e3 ♔c3 25.♙g4 ♔b2 26.♔d2 ♔:a2 27.♔c2 either.

21.	**♙h4-h5**	**24.**	**♙f2-f4**	**♙g5:f4+**
22.	**♖b7:b5+**	**♖b2:b5**	**25.**	**♔g3:f4**	**♔b5-b4**
23.	**♗e8:b5**	**♔c5:b5**	**26.**	**♙g2-g4**	**♔b4-a3**
			27.	**♙g4-g5**	**♙h6:g5+**
			28.	**♔f4-e3**	

Black resigned.

Subject: Pawn structure transformation. Fixing backward pawns.

No.126
Tarrasch — Alekhine
Carlsbad, 1923

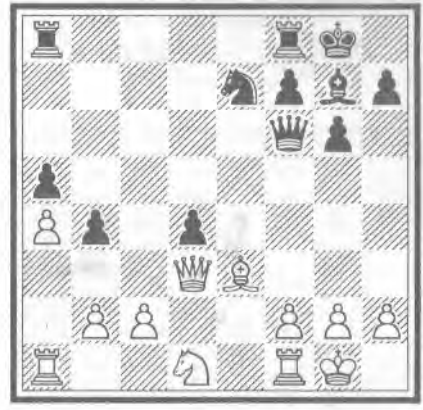


How should Black continue?

1.	. . .	**♙d7-d5!**

Black is ready for the voluntary isolation of his d-pawn.

2.	**♙e4:d5**	**♗c8-a6**
3.	**♗b3-c4**	**♗a6:c4**
4.	**♕d3:c4**	**♙c6:d5**
5.	**♕c4-d3**	**♙d5-d4!∓**



Black's b4 pawn and his isolated d-pawn have fixed White's weak pawn at c2. The possibility of pressure on this pawn decides Black's advantage.

6.	**♗e3-d2**	**♖a8-c8**
7.	**♖f1-e1**	**♖c8-c7**
8.	**♙b2-b3**	. . .

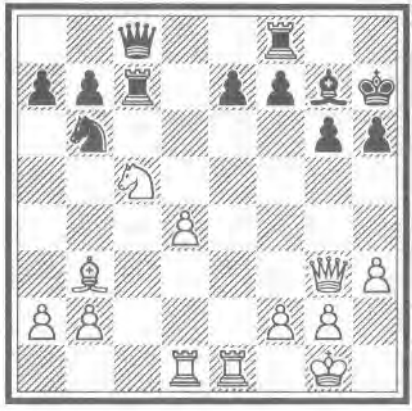
▷♘b2-c4.

8.	. . .	**♖f8-c8**
9.	**♖a1-c1**	**♕f6-f5!**

Offering exchange of the main defender of the c2 pawn.

10. ♖c1-e4	**♘e7-d5**
11. ♘d1-b2	**♘d5-c3**
12. ♗d2:c3	**♖c7:c3**
13. ♕d3-e2	**♗g7-h6!**
14. ♙g2-g4	**♕f5-f6**
15. ♖e4-e8+	**♖c8:e8**
16. ♕e2:e8+	**♔g8-g7**
17. ♖c1-f1	**♖c3:c2**
18. ♘b2-d3	**♕f6-f3!**
19. ♘d3-e5	**♕f3-d5**
20. ♘e5-d7	**♕d5-d6**
21. ♖f1-d1	**♗h6-e3-+**

No.127
Balashov — Voskanian
Riga, 1975



How should White continue?

1. ♙h3-h4! . . .

White's advantage is obvious, his pieces dominate the centre. Existence of the bishops of opposite colour can only increase White's attack, especially as the black king's position is somewhat weakened.

1. . . . **♙h6-h5**

Black has to prevent the white pawn from getting to h5, otherwise his position will be almost hopeless.

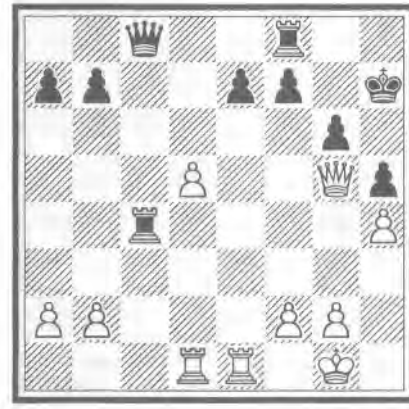
2. ♘c5-e4	**♗g7-h6**
3. ♙d4-d5	. . .

White fixes the backwardness of the e7 pawn, besides threats 4.♙d6!

3. . . . **♘b6-c4**

The only possibility to prevent 4.♙d6

4. ♗b3:c4	**♖c7:c4**
5. ♘e4-g5+	**♗h6:g5**
6. ♕g3:g5	. . .



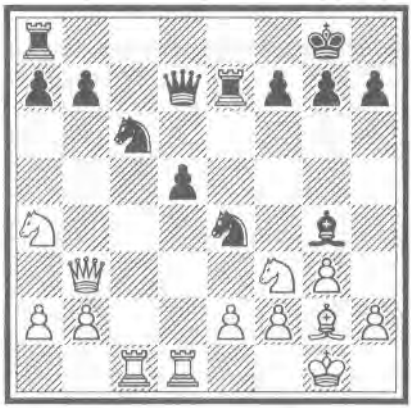
The pawn on e7 cannot be defended and White's extra pawn has to decide the game.

6. . . .	**♖c4-c2**
7. ♖e1:e7	**♔h7-g8**
8. ♙d5-d6	**♖c2:b2**
9. ♕g5-f6	**♖b2-b6**
10. ♕f6-d4	**♕c8-d8**
11. ♕d4-e5	**♖b6-a6**

12.	**♙d6-d7**	**♖a6-e6**
13.	**♖e7:e6**	**♙f7:e6**
14.	**♕e5:e6+**	**♔g8-h7**
15.	**♖d1-e1**	

Black resigned.

No.128
Hulak — Marjanovic
Yugoslavia, 1984



Black's piece placement is active. Assessment of this position strongly depends on White's possibility to derive advantage from the opposition of the queen on d7 and the white rook on d1.

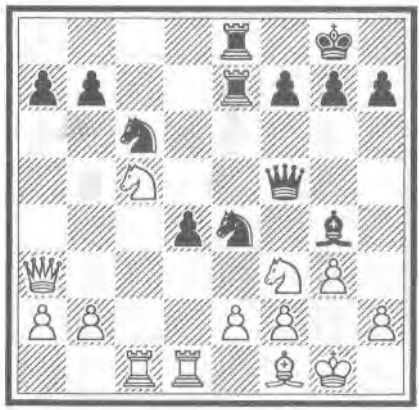
1. . . . ♙d5-d4!

A delicate positional move, allowing space seizure and fixture of the pawn at e2. These factors in combination with an active position of the knight on e4 and the bishop on g4 decide Black's advantage.

2. ♕b3-a3?! . . .

This position, where Black's piece activity compensates for the missing pawn, appears after 2.♙e3 ♕f5 (with the threat 3...♘:f2 4.♔:f2 ♖:e3) 3.♙:d4 ♖ae8!
For example: a) 4.♖e1?! ♘:d4 5.♘:d4 ♕:f2+ -+; b) 4.♘c5 ♘g5∓ c) 4.♖d3 ♙b5 5.♖:c6 ♙:a4 and further 6.♕c2 ♘g5 7.♙h4 ♗:f3 -+; or 6.♕a3 ♘g5 7.♙h4 ♗:f3 8.♙:g5 ♖e1+ 9.♔h2 (9.♗f1 ♖:f1+) 9...♕:g5 10.♖:f3 ♕h5+ 11.♗h3 ♖h1+ 12.♔:h1 ♕:h3+ -+; or 6.♕d1 ♘g5 7.♖c1 ♖c2 -+.

2.	**. . .**	**♖a8-e8∓**
3.	**♗g2-f1**	**♕d7-f5**
4.	**♘a4-c5**	**. . .**



4.	**. . .**	**♘e4:f2!**
5.	**♔g1:f2**	**♖e7-e3-+**
6.	**♖d1-d3**	**. . .**

6.♘d3 ♖:e2+ 7.♗:e2 ♖:e2+ 8.♔:e2 ♕:f3+ 9.♔d2 ♕e2#.

6.	**. . .**	**♗g4:f3**
7.	**♙e2:f3**	**. . .**

7.♖:e3 ♙:e3+ 8.♔g1 ♗d5 9.♘d3 ♕e4 -+.

7.	. . .	**♕f5:f3+**
8.	**♔f2-g1**	**♘c6-e5**
9.	**♖c1-d1**	**♙b7-b6**
10.	**♘c5-a6**	**♘e5:d3**
11.	**♖d1:d3**	**♖e3:d3**
12.	**♕a3:d3**	**♕f3:d3**
13.	**♗f1:d3**	**♖e8-e3**
14.	**♗d3-c4**	. . .

14.♘b4 ♙a5 -+.

14.	. . .	**♙d4-d3**
15.	**♔g1-f2**	**♙d3-d2**
16.	**♗c4-b3**	**♖e3:b3**

Black has a decisive advantage.

No.129

Flohr — Liliental

Moscow, 1949

The d5 pawn restricts Black's pieces and decides White's space advantage. Black has a problem in finding good support squares for his knights. Besides, White can organize strong pressure on Black's queenside.

1. ♙a2-a4! . . .

Emphasizing the unstable position of the knight on b6 and increasing pressure on Black's queenside.

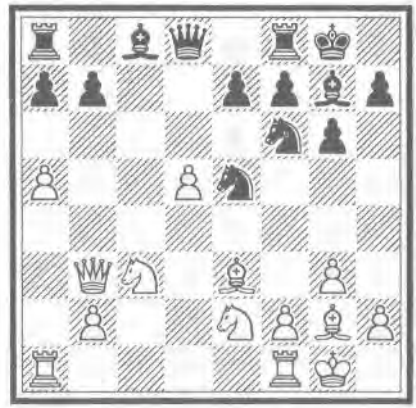
1.	. . .	**♘d7-e5**
2.	**♙a4-a5**	**♘b6-d7**

2...♘bc4? 3.♙f4 +- is definitely an error.

3. ♗c1-e3 . . .

Increasing pressure on the queenside.

3. . . . **♘d7-f6**



4. ♖f1-d1 . . .

4.♙a6 ♙:a6 5.♙d6 ♗e6 6.♕a3 ♙:d6 7.♗:a8 ♕:a8 ∓ is an error. Now, Black is so constrained that he cannot complete development without material losses.

4. . . . **♗c8-g4**

If 4...♘e8?!, then 5.♘b5 ♙a6 6.♗b6 ♕d7 7.♘c3 ±.

5. ♙h2-h3 . . .

The less successful 5.♕:b7?! ♖b8 6.♕:a7 ♖:b2 and black pieces are livening up.

5.	. . .	**♗g4-f3**
6.	**♗g2:f3**	**♘e5:f3+**
7.	**♔g1-g2**	**♘f3-e5**
8.	**♕b3:b7**	. . .

After the exchange of lightsquare bishops, the activation of Black's pieces is not dangerous.

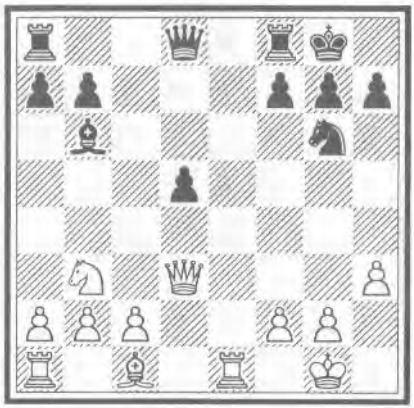
8.	. . .	**♘e5-c4**

If 8...♖b8?, then 9.♕:a7 +-.

9.	**♗e3-c5**	**♘f6-d7**
10.	**♙b2-b4**	**♙a7-a6**
11.	**♙d5-d6**	**♘d7:c5**
12.	**♙b4:c5**	**♙e7:d6**
13.	**♕b7-d5**	**♘c4-e5**
14.	**♙c5:d6**	. . .

White's position is easily won.

No.130
Capablanca — Rubinstein
Berlin, 1928



In assessing this position it's important to know if the d5 pawn is strong or weak.

1.	. . .	**♙d5-d4?!**

Natural, but not the best move. In this position the d4 pawn blocked the line of action for the strong bishop at b6. On the other hand, the pawn's position on d4 is favourable because it blocks the advance of the backward c2 pawn. But this is important only when Black can defend his own pawn and attack White's c2 pawn.
Black should continue 1...♕f6! exploiting the fact that White hasn't completed his development, and after 2.♗e3 ♕:b2 3.♕:d5 ♗:e3 4.♖:e3 the position would be completely equalized.

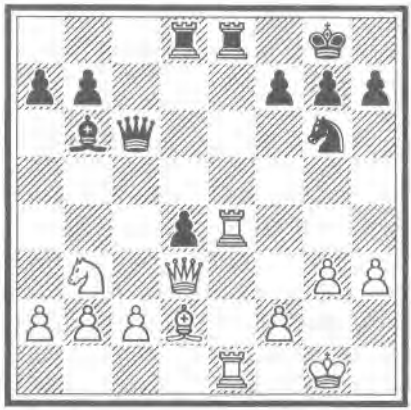
2.	**♗c1-d2**	**♕d8-f6**
3.	**♖e1-e4**	**♖a8-d8**

Black should continue 3...♖fd8 to put the other rook to c8 and increase pressure on the c2 pawn. Black's knight might go via f8 to e6 to defend the d4 pawn.

4.	**♖a1-e1**	**♕f6-c6**

Assessment of the position considerably depends on Black's possibility to organize counterplay. If he doesn't succeed in organizing counterplay, the static weakness of the black pawn on d4 will decide White's positional advantage.

5.	**♙g2-g3**	**♖f8-e8**



6. ♗d2-a5 . . .

6.♖:e8+ ♖:e8 7.♖:e8+ ♕:e8 8.♘:d4? ♘e5 -+.

6. . . . ♖e8:e4

6...♗:a5! 7.♘:a5 ♖:e4 8.♕:e4 (8.♖:e4 ♕d5 9.♘b3 ♘e5 10.♕e2 ♖e8 ↓) 8...♕b6 9.♘b3 (9.♘:b7 ♖b8) 9...♙a5 with good counterplay for Black.

7. ♕d3:e4 ♘g6-f8

7...♕:e4 8.♖:e4 ♗:a5 9.♘:a5 ♙f5 would have been better, although White had slight advantage after 10.♖e2 ♖d7 11.♖e8+ ♔f7 12.♖b8 ♙b6 13.♘c6.

8. ♕e4:c6 ♙b7:c6
9. ♖e1-e7± ♖d8-d5

9...♙d3?! 10.♙:d3 ♖:d3 11.♗b4±.

10. ♗a5:b6 ♙a7:b6
11. ♖e7-b7 ♘f8-d7
12. ♖b7-c7 ♖d5-d6

If 12...♙c5, then 13.♖c8+ ♘f8 14.♙a4 ±.

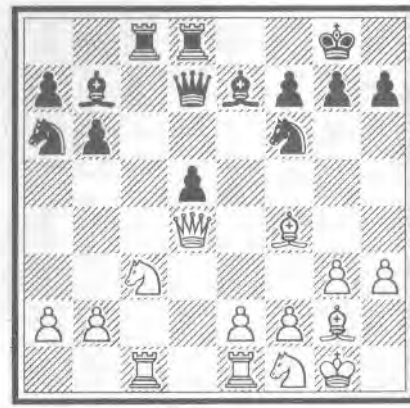
13. ♖c7-c8+ ♘d7-f8
14. ♘b3-d2 ♙c6-c5

If 14...♙b5, then 15.♘b3 and ♘a5 on the following move.

15. ♘d2-c4 ♖d6-e6
16. ♖c8-b8 ♖e6-e1+
17. ♔g1-g2 ♙g7-g5
18. ♙a2-a4 ♖e1-a1
19. ♘c4:b6 ♔g8-g7
20. ♖b8-c8 ♘f8-e6
21. ♘b6-d7 ♖a1:a4
22. ♘d7:c5 ♖a4-b4
23. ♘c5-d3 ♖b4-b5
24. ♔g2-f3 ♙h7-h6
25. ♙b2-b4 ♙h6-h5
26. ♙g3-g4 ♙h5:g4+
27. ♙h3:g4 ♙f7-f6
28. ♖c8-c4 ♔g7-f7
29. ♘d3-c5 ♘e6-d8
30. ♘c5-b3

Black resigned.

No.131
Ljubojevic — Karpov
Moscow, 1977



Black's pieces are excellently mobilized. Considering that White's queen is bad blocker, the d5 pawn after the raising of the blockade will threaten with an advance. This will lead to the fixation of the e2 pawn and, most importantly, activation of all black pieces.

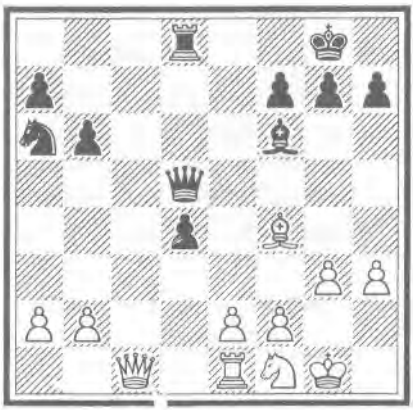
1.	. . .	**♖c8-c4!**

1...♗c5 is inferior because of 2.♕a4 and the transition to the ending doesn't give Black any special advantages.

2.	**♕d4-d1**	**♙d5-d4**

Planned earlier, but not the best move. 2...♘h5! 3.♗e5 (3.♙e3 ♘:f4 4.♙e:f4 ♙d4 ∓) 3...♙d4 4.♗:b7 ♕:b7 5.♘b5 ♖c5 6.♖:c5 ♙:c5 7.♕a4 ♙f6 8.♗f4 ♘:f4 9.♙:f4∓ would have been better.

3.	**♗g2:b7**	**♕d7:b7**
4.	**♘c3-e4!**	**♖c4:c1**
5.	**♘e4:f6+**	**♗e7:f6**
6.	**♕d1:c1**	**♕b7-d5∓**



7.	**♕c1-b1**	**♘a6-c5**
8.	**♘f1-h2**	**♙h7-h5**
9.	**♙h3-h4**	. . .

Now 9...♙a5 provides the knight with a safe place at c5 and keeps Black's advantage intact.

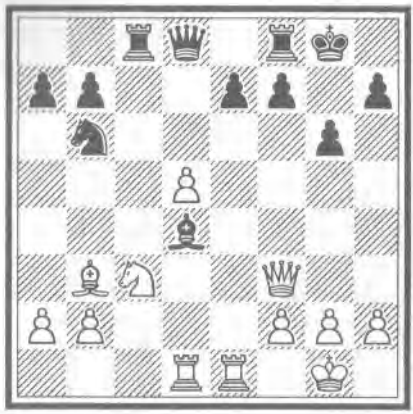
9.	. . .	**♙d4-d3?**
10.	**♙e2:d3**	**♘c5:d3**
11.	**♖e1-d1**	**♕d5-b5**
12.	**♗f4-g5**	**♗f6:g5**
13.	**♙h4:g5**	**♕b5-f5**
14.	**♖d1-d2**	**♖d8-d4**
15.	**♕b1-c2**	**♙h5-h4**
16.	**♙g3:h4**	**♕f5-h3**
17.	**♕c2-c6**	**♖d4:h4**
18.	**♕c6-g2**	**♕h3-f5**
19.	**♕g2-g3**	**♖h4-d4**
20.	**♙g5-g6**	**♙f7:g6**
21.	**♕g3-e3**	**♖d4-d5**
22.	**♘h2-f1**	**♘d3-f4**
23.	**♕e3:f4?**	. . .

23.♖:d5 ♘:d5∓.

23.	. . .	**♕f5:f4**
24.	**♖d2:d5**	**♕f4-g4+!-+**
25.	**♘f1-g3**	**♕g4-c4**
26.	**♖d5-d8+**	**♔g8-h7**
27.	**♙b2-b3**	**♕c4-c2**
28.	**♔g1-g2**	**♙g6-g5**
29.	**♖d8-d6**	**♕c2:a2**

And Black won in a few moves.

No.132
Smyslov — Liberzon
Moscow, 1969



White has space advantage because of his d5 pawn, he exerts pressure on the e7 pawn. The d5 pawn isn't blocked and is able to advance. For example: 1...♗g7 2.♙d6 ♙:d6 3.♕:b7 and White's advantage is obvious.

1. . . . ♗d4:c3

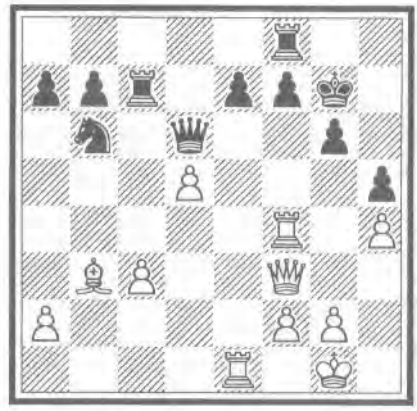
A forced move, now Black gets favourable prospects on the queenside in the ending, but "before the ending, the gods created the middlegame" (Tartakower). In the middlegame the e7 pawn becomes more vulnerable and the king loses an important defending piece. Therefore White's plan may be formulated as a combined play on the weakened kingside and along the e-file.

2. ♙b2:c3 ♕d8-d6
3. ♙h2-h4! ♙h7-h5

In case 3...♔g7 will follow 4.♙h5 ♕f6 5.♙h6+ ♔:h6 6.♕:f6 ♙:f6 7.♖e7 ±.

4. ♖d1-d4 ♔g8-g7
5. ♖d4-f4 ♖c8-c7

If 5...♘d7, then 6.♖fe4 ♖fe8 7.♕e3 +-.



6. ♖e1-e6! ♕d6-d8
7. ♖e6-c3 ♕d8-d6
8. ♖f4-e4 . . .

White in his turn concentrates fire on Black's weaknesses: first the kingside, then the e7 pawn.

8. . . . ♙a7-a5?

Certainly 8...♘:d5 is impossible because of 9.♖d3 ♙e6 10.♙c4+-. This move in the game is a serious positional mistake, Black voluntary knocks out support from under his knight.

9. ♙a2-a4 ♕d6-f6?

Is a decisive mistake.

10. ♖e4-f4 ♕f6-d6

11. ♖e3-e6! **♕d6-c5**

As a result of 8...♙a5, the knight needs protection, but trouble comes from the other side.

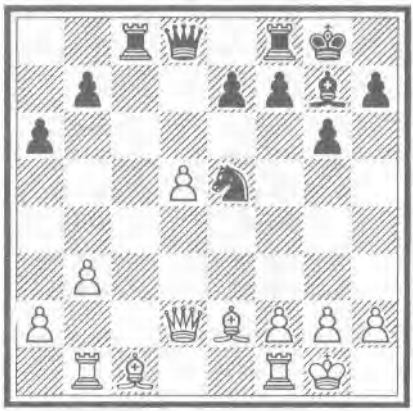
12. ♖e6:g6+! **♙f7:g6**

If 12...♔:g6, then 13.♕g3+ ♔h7 14.♖f5 ♖c6 15.♗c2 ♖g6 16.♖:f7 +-.

13. ♖f4:f8 **♕c5:c3**
14. ♕f3-f7+ **♔g7-h6**
15. ♕f7-f4+ **♔h6-g7**
16. ♖f8-f7+ **♔g7-g8**
17. ♙d5-d6! **♕c3:b3**
18. ♖f7-f8+

Black resigned.

No.133
Evans — Smyslov
Helsinki, 1952



The d5 pawn is a weakness because the ways of using it's dynamic strength aren't obvious. White also hasn't completed his development. Black is ready to attack the d5 pawn.

1. . . . **♕d8-d6!**

The queen makes manoeuvre ♗c1-a3 impossible.

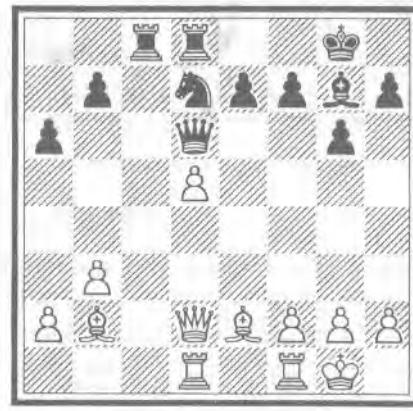
2. ♗c1-b2 **♖f8-d8**

Black prepares manoeuvre ♘f6-d7 with an exchange of bishops which favours Black.

3. ♖b1-d1 **. . .**

3.♗:e5 ♗:e5 4.♙g3 ♕:d5 5.♕:d5 ♖:d5 was an alternative to this move and bishops of opposite colour give White definite chances of getting away.

3. . . . **♘e5-d7!∓**



4. ♗b2:g7 **♔g8:g7**
5. ♗e2-g4 **♖c8-c5**
6. ♖f1-e1 **♘d7-f6**
7. ♗g4-f3 **♙e7-e6**

7...♘:d5? was bad. For example: 8.♙b4 ♖b5 9.♙a4 +-.

8. ♕d2-b4?! **. . .**

8.♕b2 ♙:d5 9.♙b4 ♖b5 10.♖d4 ∓ would have been more persistent.

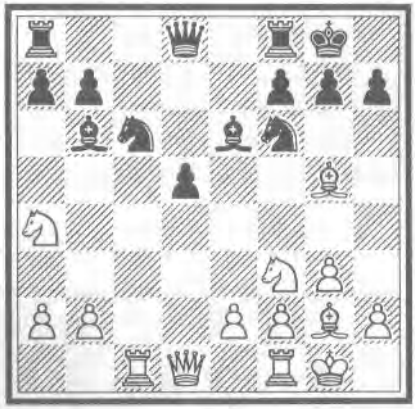
8. . . .	**♙e6:d5**
9. ♕b4:b7?	**♖c5-c7!**

White resigned.

No.134

Novotelnov — Bondarevsky

Moscow, 1951



How should Black continue?

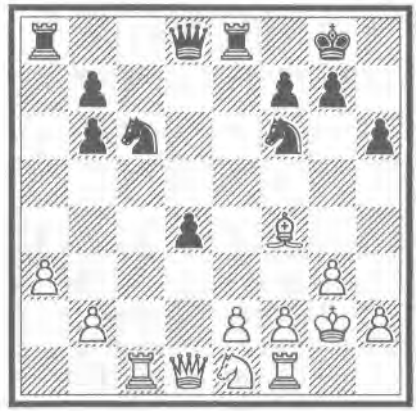
1. . . .	**♙d5-d4!**

Black seizes space and increases the scope of his pieces. Probably pressure on the e2 pawn will compensate for the static shortcomings of the d4 pawn.

2. ♘a4:b6	**♙a7:b6**
3. ♙a2-a3	**♙h7-h6**
4. ♗g5-f4?	**. . .**

The d4 pawn spoils White's play, therefore, the exchange on f6, leading to even play, was in his interest.

4. . . .	**♗e6-d5∓**
5. ♘f3-e1	**♗d5:g2**
6. ♔g1:g2	**♖f8-e8**



The pressure on the e2 pawn is more significant than the weakness of the d4 pawn, which is of theoretical nature.

7. ♖c1-c2	**♕d8-d5+**
8. ♙f2-f3	**. . .**

If 8.♔g1, then 8...♕h5, forcing 9.♙f3.

8. . . .	**♖e8-e7**
9. ♘e1-d3	**♖a8-e8**
10. ♗f4-c1	**♕d5-b3**
11. ♖f1-e1	**♘f6-d5**
12. ♘d3-f2	**♘d5-e3+**
13. ♗c1:e3	**♖e7:e3∓**

The pressure on the e2 pawn guarantees a prolonged initiative for Black.

14. ♖c2-d2	**♕b3-b5**
15. ♘f2-d3	**♘c6-a5**
16. ♔g2-f2	**♘a5-c4**
17. ♖d2-c2	**♖e3-e7**
18. ♕d1-c1	**♘c4-e3**

19.	**♖c2-c8**	**♕b5-h5**
20.	**♔f2-g1**	**♕h5-h3**
21.	**♖c8:e8+**	**♖e7:e8**
22.	**♘d3-f4**	**♕h3-d7**
23.	**♕c1-d2**	. . .

23.♘g2 is better.

23.	. . .	**♙g7-g5**
24.	**♘f4-g2**	**♘e3-c4**
25.	**♕d2-c2?**	. . .

25.♕b4, ▷ ♙b3 is better.

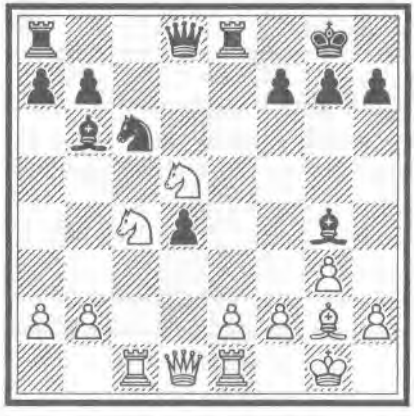
25.	. . .	**♕d7-e6**
26.	**♔g1-f2**	**♙b6-b5!**
27.	**♖e1-d1?**	**♕e6-h3**
28.	**♔f2-g1**	**♕h3:g2+!**

White resigned.

No.135

Knaak — Makropoulos

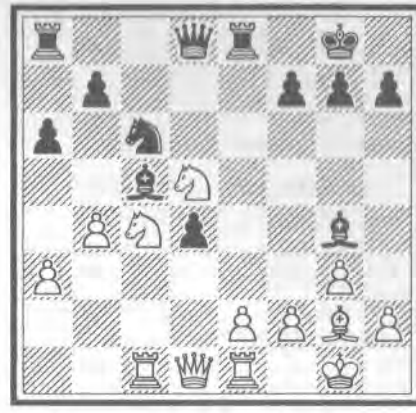
Kalemanesti, 1984



With his d4 pawn Black exerts pressure on e2, but White has a strong knight on d5 which, in pair with the knight on c4, limits the mobility of the black pieces considerably.

Let's consider the following alternatives: 1)1...♗c5; 2)1...♗a5; 3)1...♗e6.

1.	. . .	**♗b6-c5**
2.	**♙a2-a3**	**♙a7-a6**
3.	**♙b2-b4**	. . .



3.	. . .	**♗c5-a7**
4.	**♕d1-d2**	**♖a8-c8**
5.	**♕d2-f4**	**♗g4-e6**
6.	**♕f4-d6**	**♗a7-b8**
7.	**♕d6:d8**	**♖c8:d8**
8.	**♘d5-b6**	. . .

White's pressure is sufficiently unpleasant (**Browne — Chandler**, Bath, 1983).

8.	. . .	**♗b8-a7**

8...♙d3 9.♙:d3 ♖:d3 10.♘a4!, ▷♘c5.

9.	**♘b6-a4**	**♗e6:c4**

9...♙d3 10.♙:d3 ♖:d3 11.♘c5 ♗:c5 12.♙:c5, ▷♘d6 ±.

10.	**♖c1:c4**	**♙d4-d3**
11.	**♙e2-e3**	**♘c6-e5**
12.	**♖c4-c7**	**♙b7-b5**
13.	**♖c7:a7**	**♙b5:a4**

14. ♖a7-c7 ♖d8-c8
15. ♖c7-c5± . . .

Variation

1. . . . ♗b6-a5!

Black forces the exchange of a bishop for a knight, which is favourable for him because it gives the black pieces a free hand.
If 1...♗e6, then 2.♘f4 ±. White keeps up pressure, Black is deprived of active counterplay.

2. ♘c4:a5 ♕d8:a5
3. ♙b2-b4 . . .

3.♙a3 ♖ad8 ∓.

3. . . . ♕a5:a2
4. ♘d5-c7? . . .

4.♖a1! ♕b2! (4...♕c4 5.♘c7 ♙d3 6.♙:d3 ♗:d1 7.♖:e8+ ♖:e8 8.♙:c4 ♖e1+ 9.♗f1±) 5.♖b1 (5.♘c7? ♙d3 6.♘:a8? ♙d2 -+) 5...♕a2 =.

4. . . . ♙d4-d3
5. ♕d1:d3□ ♖a8-d8!
6. ♘c7:e8! . . .

6.♗d5 ♖:e2! ∓.

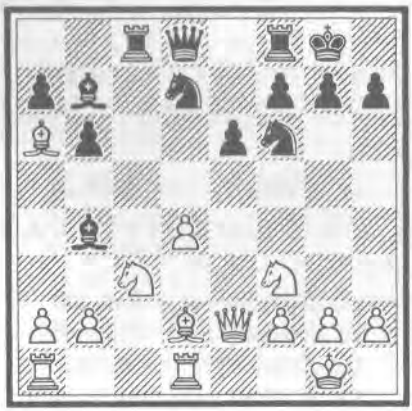
6. . . . ♖d8:d3
7. ♙e2:d3 ♘c6-d4!

7...♘:b4? 8.♖c4 ♘:d3 9.♘f6+ ♙:f6 10.♖e8+ ♔g7 11.♖:g4+ ♔h6 12.♖h4+ ♔g7 □ =.

8. ♙h2-h3! ♘d4-e2+
9. ♖e1:e2 ♗g4:e2∓

Subject: Pawn structure transforming. Creating hanging pawns.

No.136
Taimanov — Karpov
Moscow, 1973



White puts some pressure on the queenside. Its elimination demands from Black certain caution.

1. . . . ♗b7:a6!

The exchange of bishops is favourable for Black, because White's attacking possibilities decrease.

2. ♕e2:a6 ♗b4:c3!

Black creates hanging pawns in White's camp. It should be noted that the move is forced. Now it is very important for Black to take the

key c4 square under his control to achieve the blockade position. 2...♖c7? 3.♘b5 +- is an error.

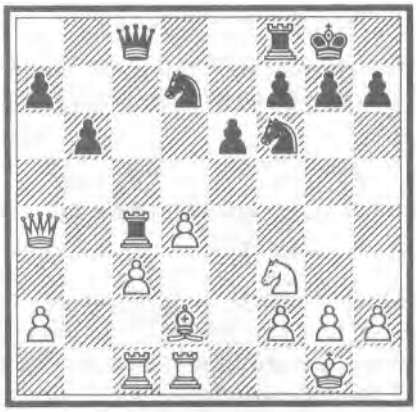
3. ♙b2:c3 . . .

3.♗:c3 is mistaken because the bishop on c3 has no prospects.

3. . . . ♖c8-c7
4. ♖a1-c1 . . .

Intending ♙c3-c4. Straight-forward 4.♙c4? was bad because of 4...♕c8! and White loses the c4 pawn.

4. . . . ♕d8-c8
5. ♕a6-a4 ♖c7-c4!



Though blockade of an important square costed him the a-pawn, Black gets not only the c4 square, but also the strong d5 square for his knight, where it will exert strong pressure on the c3 pawn.

6. ♕a4:a7 ♕c8-c6
7. ♕a7-a3 ♖f8-c8∓

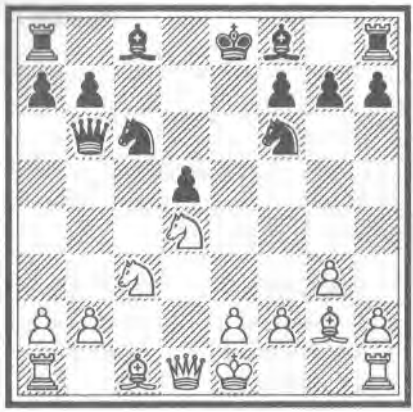
The pawn pair c3+d4 lacks mobility and is an object of attack for black pieces. Black plans the advance ♙ b6-b5-b4. Strong piece pressure completely compensates Black for his missing pawn.

8. ♙h2-h3 ♙h7-h6
9. ♖c1-b1 ♖c4-a4
10. ♕a3-b3 ♘f6-d5
11. ♖d1-c1 ♖a4-c4∓
12. ♖b1-b2 ♙f7-f6
13. ♖c1-e1 ♔g8-f7
14. ♕b3-d1 ♘d7-f8
15. ♖b2-b3 ♘f8-g6
16. ♕d1-b1 ♖c8-a8
17. ♖e1-e4 ♖c4-a4
18. ♖b3-b2 ♘g6-f8
19. ♕b1-d3 ♖a4-c4
20. ♖e4-e1 ♖a8-a3
21. ♕d3-b1 ♘f8-g6
22. ♖e1-c1? ♘d5:c3
23. ♕b1-d3 ♘c3-e2+
24. ♕d3:e2 ♖c4:c1+
25. ♗d2:c1 ♕c6:c1+
26. ♔g1-h2 ♖a3:f3
27. ♙g2:f3 ♘g6-h4

If now 28.♖b3, then 28...♕g5 29.♕f1 ♕f4+ 30.♔g1 ♘:f3+ 31.♔g2 ♘d2 ∓.

Black has a significant advantage.

No.137
Rubinstein — Salve
Lodz, 1908



Black has organized pressure on the d4 point, but he is lagging in development. The position of the queen on b6 gives White additional tempo to occupy the c5 square.

1. ♘d4:c6! . . .

Now White transforms an isolated pawn into the hanging pawn pair c6 and d5. White has time to take the important c5 square under his control by using the development advantage.

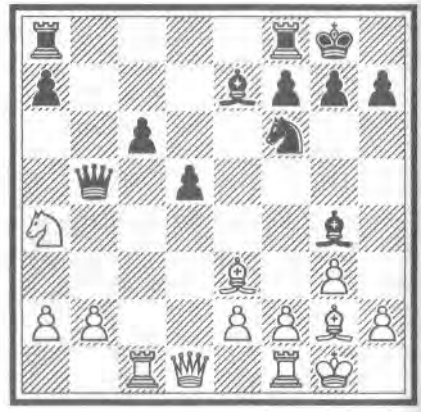
1. . . .	**♙b7:c6**
2. 0 - 0	**♗f8-e7**

If 2...♗e6, then 3.♙e4!, breaking the black centre after 3...♘:e4 4.♘:e4 ♙:e4 5.♗:e4 ±.

3. ♘c3-a4	**♕b6-b5**
4. ♗c1-e3	**0 - 0**
5. ♖a1-c1	**. . .**

White prepared an important exchange of darksquare bishops intending to block the c5 square.

5. . . . **♗c8-g4**



6. ♙f2-f3! . . .

The purpose of this move will be clear after the following manoeuvres.

6. . . .	**♗g4-e6**
7. ♗e3-c5	**♖f8-e8**
8. ♖f1-f2!	**. . .**

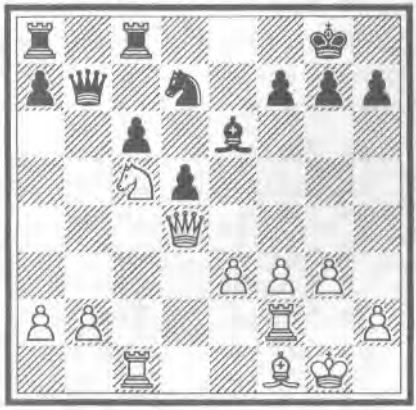
White prepares a transfer of the rook to the c-file via the second rank. The absence of Black's counterplay permits White such actions.

8. . . .	**♘f6-d7**
9. ♗c5:e7	**♖e8:e7**
10. ♕d1-d4!	**. . .**

Keeping control of the c5 square.

10. . . .	**♖e7-e8**
11. ♗g2-f1	**♖e8-c8**
12. ♙e2-e3!	**♕b5-b7!**

13. ♘a4-c5! . . .



The triumph of White's strategy, started on the move 1.♘:c6!

13. . . .	**♘d7:c5**
14. ♖c1:c5±	**♖c8-c7**

It was necessary to prevent a total blockade of the queen's flank by 14...♙a5, otherwise Black would be doomed.

15. ♖f2-c2	**♕b7-b6?**

15...♙a5 wasn't late yet, preventing ♙b2-b4.

16. ♙b2-b4!	**♙a7-a6**
17. ♖c5-a5	. . .

17.♖:d5 was playable, but White doesn't hurry, Black's queenside is doomed.

17. . . .	**♖a8-b8**

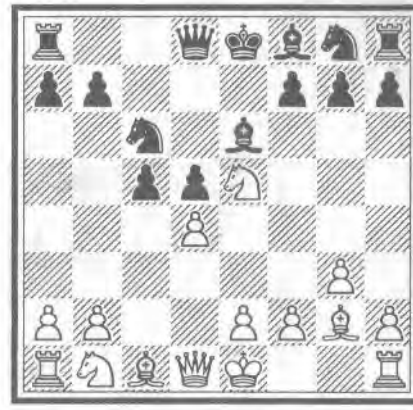
17...♕:d4 18.♙:d4 ♗c8 19.♖:d5 +-.

18. ♙a2-a3	**♖c7-a7**
19. ♖c2:c6!	**♕b6:c6**
20. ♕d4:a7	**♖b8-a8**
21. ♕a7-c5	**♕c6-b7**
22. ♔g1-f2	**♙h7-h5**
23. ♗f1-e2	**♙g7-g6**
24. ♕c5-d6	**♕b7-c8**
25. ♖a5-c5	**♕c8-b7**
26. ♙h2-h4	**♙a6-a5**
27. ♖c5-c7	**♕b7-b8**
28. ♙b4-b5	**♙a5-a4**
29. ♙b5-b6	**♖a8-a5**
30. ♙b6-b7+-	

No.138

Furman — Kholmov

Kiev, 1954



How should White continue?

1. ♘e5:c6!	**♙b7:c6**
2. ♙d4:c5!	**♗f8:c5**
3. ♕d1-c2	. . .

To force the queen to b6 and then gain tempo by the manoeuvre ♘c3-a4.

3. . . .	**♕d8-b6**
4. 0 - 0	**♘g8-e7**
5. ♘b1-c3	**♗c5-d4**

6. ♙b2-b3!± . . .

White wants to exchange dark-square bishops in order to get the key c5 square under his control.

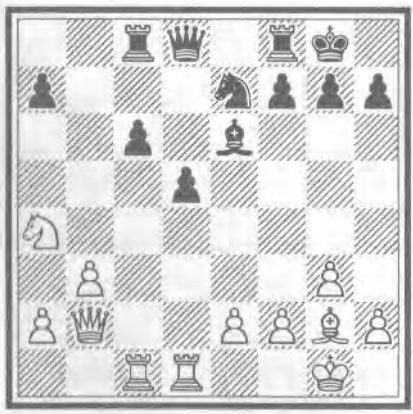
6. . . .	**♖a8-c8**
7. ♗c1-b2	. . .

With the threat 8.♘a4.

7. . . .	**♕b6-a5**
8. ♖f1-d1	**♗d4-f6**
9. ♕c2-d2!	. . .

With the threat 10.♘:d5! ♕:d2 11.♘:f6+ ♙:f6 12.♖:d2 +-.

9. . . .	**♕a5-d8**
10. ♘c3-a4	**♗f6:b2**
11. ♕d2:b2	**0 - 0**
12. ♖a1-c1	. . .



White has established control over the c5 square. White's plan includes rook doubling on the c-file and advance of the pawns b3-b4-b5, or e2-e4.

12. . . .	**♖f8-e8**
13. ♖c1-c5	**♙h7-h5**
14. ♕b2-d2	**♘e7-g6**

Black sacrifices the c6 pawn for nothing. Passive defence was a better solution.

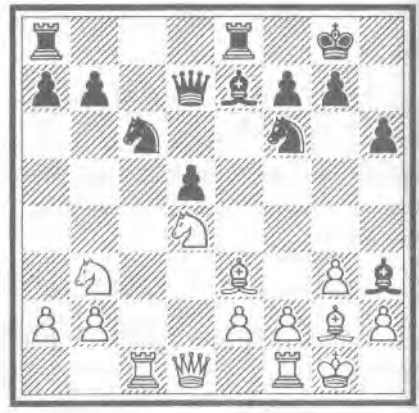
15. ♖d1-c1	**♙h5-h4**
16. ♖c5:c6	**♖c8:c6**
17. ♖c1:c6	**♙h4-h3**
18. ♗g2-f1	**♙d5-d4**
19. ♖c6-c5	**♕d8-d6**
20. ♕d2-g5	**♕d6-d7**
21. ♘a4-b2	**♘g6-e7**
22. ♘b2-d3	**♙f7-f6**
23. ♕g5-f4	**♗e6-f5**
24. ♖c5-c4	**♘e7-c6**
25. ♖c4:c6	**♕d7:c6**
26. ♕f4:f5	**♖e8:e2**
27. ♕f5:h3+-	. . .

In a few moves White won.

No.139

Petrosian T. — Spassky

Moscow, 1969



Black has well placed pieces, which gives him sufficient leverage. Black

intends to exchange the strong g2 bishop, which will lead to the weakening of light squares in White's camp.

1. ♘d4:c6 . . .

White prefers to create the pawn pair c6+d5 for his opponent by an exchange of the knights because, it is difficult to organize piece pressure on the isolated pawn d5. The isolated pawn pair c6 and d5 is a weakness only if it possible to establish control over the c6 pawn; but here it is impossible to block Black's pawns. 1.♗f4!? deserved attention.

1. . . . ♙b7:c6
2. ♕d1-d3 ♗h3:g2
3. ♔g1:g2 ♙a7-a5!
4. ♖c1-c2 . . .

Capture of the c5 point gives nothing, e.g. 4.♗c5?! ♗d8! 5.♖c2 ♕b7 6.♔g1 ♘d7, or 4.♘c5 ♗:c5 5.♗:c5 ♘e4 ∓ ↑↓.

4. . . . ♙a5-a4
5. ♘b3-d2? . . .

The position should be simplified by 5.♘c5 ♗:c5 6.♗:c5 giving somewhat worse position which can still be defended.

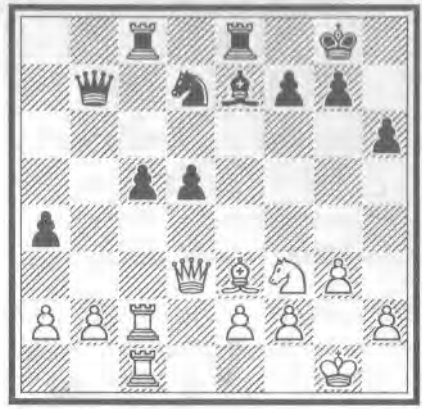
5. . . . ♕d7-b7!

The diagonal opposition of Black's queen and White's king cannot be tolerated by White, Black gets tempo to advance ♙c6-c5.

6. ♔g2-g1 ♖a8-c8

6...♘d7?! 7.♘f3 ♙c5 8.♖d1 ♙d4 9.♗f4 ↑↓ ⅝.

7. ♖f1-c1 ♘f6-d7
8. ♘d2-f3 ♙c6-c5∓



Black has positional advantage, he controls the important central squares with his hanging pawns.

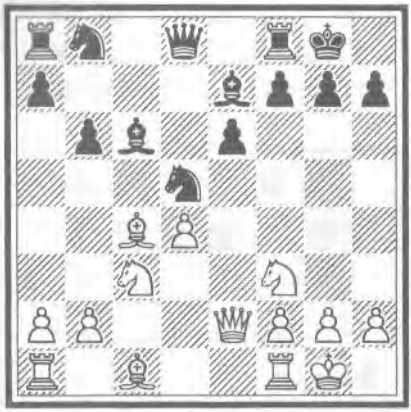
9. ♙b2-b3 ♙a4:b3

9...♗f8!? was an interesting solution, abstaining from the opening of the a-file, on which White can provoke heavy piece exchange.

10. ♙a2:b3 . . .

And now he should continue 10...♖a8, keeping the advantage after 11.♖d1 ♙d4 12.♗f4 ♘f6, ▷ ♘d5 ∓.

No.140
Gurevich M. — Yudasin
Minsk, 1987



Black has to complete his piece development. He has two plans: either to pass to the position with White's hanging pawn pair by 1...♘:c3, or to develop the knight on b8 and the rook on a8.

1. . . . ♘d5:c3!

In the game Balashov — Yudasin (Minsk, 1985) 1...♗b7 2.♖e1 followed (intending after 2...♘c6 to play 3.♗:d5! ♙:d5 4.♗f4; and Black's position becomes too passive) 2...♙a6 3.♕e4 ♗f6 4.♗b3 and Black has problems with useful moves, for example: 4...♙b5 5.♗f4 ♘:f4 6.♕:b7 ♘d7 7.♖ad1 ♘b6 8.♘e5 ±.

2. ♙b2:c3 ♗c6-d5!

It is favourable for Black to exchange light-squared bishops, the gained tempo will be used to make way for the black knight on c6.

3. ♗c4-d3 ♘b8-c6!

Preventing ♙c3-c4.

4. ♗c1-b2?! . . .

4.♗e3!? is better with equal play.

4. . . . ♖a8-c8!

Black solves his opening problems, now he is threatening 5...♘a5 with a blockade of the hanging pawn pair.

5. ♘f3-d2 ♗e7-f6

The move is aimed against the advance ♙c3-c4.

6. ♖f1-d1 . . .

After 6.♙c4 ♘:d4 7.♗:d4 ♗:d4 8.♙:d5 ♗:a1 9.♕e4 ♙g6 10.♖:a1 ♕:d5 11.♕:d5 ♙:d5 Black's chances are slightly better.

6. . . . ♖f8-e8

Intending to ♙e6-e5.

7. ♕e2-f1 ♘c6-a5

Black's position is better because White has no active plan. The hanging c3+d4 pawn's pair has turned out to be the object of attack.

8. ♗d3-a6 . . .

In case 8.♙c4 ♗c6, 9.♘b3 ♗a4 ∓ will follow.

8. . . . ♖c8-c7
9. ♙c3-c4 . . .

An attempt to get free from increasing Black piece pressure.

9. . . . ♗d5-c6

With the idea 10...♖d7,

10. ♘d2-b3 ♘a5:b3

10...♗a4? 11.♘:a5 ♗:d1 12.♘b7!

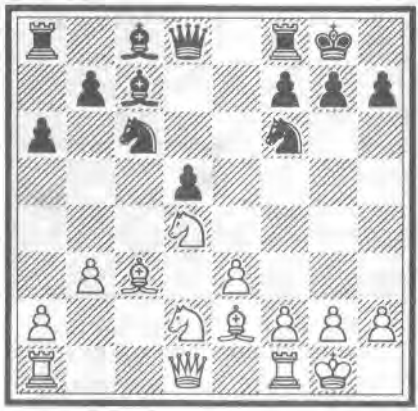
11. ♙a2:b3 ♖c7-d7
12. ♙d4-d5 . . .

12.♕d3 ♕a8! 13.♕g3 ♖ed8 14.♕g4 ♙h5! ∓.

12. . . . ♙e6:d5
13. ♗b2:f6 ♕d8:f6
14. ♗a6-b5 ♗c6:b5
15. ♙c4:b5 ♙d5-d4
16. ♖a1-c1 ♙g7-g6
17. ♙h2-h3 ♕f6-f5
18. ♕f1-c4 ♙d4-d3
19. ♖d1-d2 ♖e8-c4
20. ♕c4-c6 ♖e4-e2
21. ♖d2:c2 ♙d3:c2
22. ♖c1-e1 ♖d7-c7

Black has a decisive advantage.

No.141
Petrosian T. — Beliavsky
Moscow, 1973



White is unlikely to organize pressure on the d5 pawn, besides Black has a free hand, in particular he threatens 1...♕d6. Find the best continuation for White.

1. ♘d4:c6! ♙b7:c6
2. ♕d1-c2 . . .

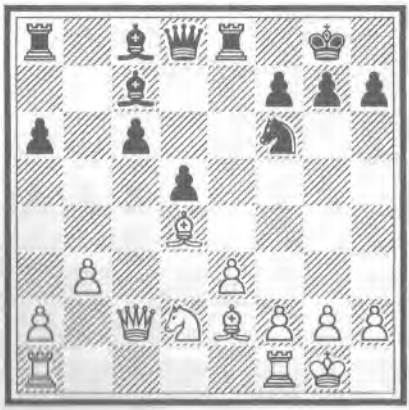
In assessing the position it is important to evaluate White's ability to take the c5 square under his

control, or Black will advance ♙c6-c5 with good play.

2. . . . ♖f8-e8

If 2...♕d6 3.♙g3 ♙c5, then 4.♗:f6± and Black has to choose between 4...♕:f6 5.♕:c5 ± and 4...♙:f6, therefore the pawn structure on the kingside is considerably weakened.

3. ♗c3-d4!± . . .



White establishes control over the c5 square and his advantage is unquestionable. The attack on the white king is not dangerous, Black's threats are easily beaten off.

3. . . . ♕d8-d6
4. ♙g2-g3 ♗c8-g4?!

Passive tactics are preferable: 4...♗d7!?

5. ♗e2:g4 ♘f6:g4
6. ♘d2-f3± . . .

White has positional advantage. Black's activity has petered out, and the weakness of the c6 pawn is felt.

6. . . . ♕d6-h6?
7. ♕c2-f5! . . .

The exchange of queens is forced because of 7...♕h3? 8.♕:f7+ ♔:f7 9.♘g5+ +-. The ending, appearing in the game, is better for White because of the weakness of Black's pawns.

7. . . . ♕h6-e6
8. ♕f5:e6 ♖e8:e6

The pawn pair in the centre is blocked, White begins a planned siege of the weak pawns. Black's position is strategically lost.

9. ♖a1-c1 ♙f7-f6
10. ♖c1-c2 ♘g4-e5
11. ♗d4:e5! . . .

In that position the knight is more valuable than the bishop, Black is unlikely to prevent the transfer of White's knight to c5.

11. . . . ♗c7:e5
12. ♖f1-c1 ♖a8-c8
13. ♖c2-c5 . . .

With the idea 14.♖:d5.

13. . . . ♖e6-d6
14. ♖c1-c2 ♔g8-f7
15. ♔g1-f1 ♔f7-e6
16. ♘f3-e1 . . .

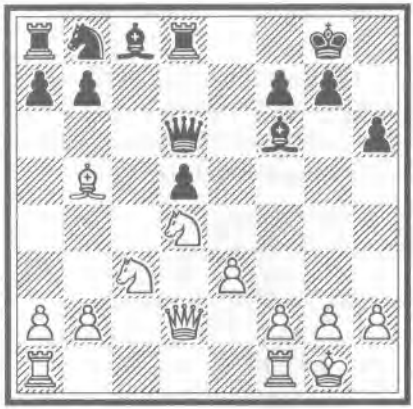
Intending to 17.♙f4.

16. . . . ♙d5-d4

17. ♙f2-f4	**♙d4-d3**
18. ♖c2-d2	**♗e5-b2**
19. ♖d2:d3	**♖c8-a8**
20. ♖d3:d6+	**♔e6:d6**
21. ♘e1-d3	**♙a6-a5**
22. ♖c5-c4	**♗b2-a3**
23. ♖c4-a4	**♗a3-c5**
24. ♘d3:c5	**♔d6:c5**
25. ♙b3-b4+	**♔c5-c4**
26. ♖a4:a5	**♖a8-b8**
27. ♙a2-a3	**♔c4-d3**
28. ♔f1-f2	**♖b8-b7**
29. ♖a5-c5	**♖b7-a7**
30. ♖c5:c6	**♖a7:a3**
31. ♔f2-f3	

Black resigned.

No.142
Agzamov — Geller
USSR, 1981

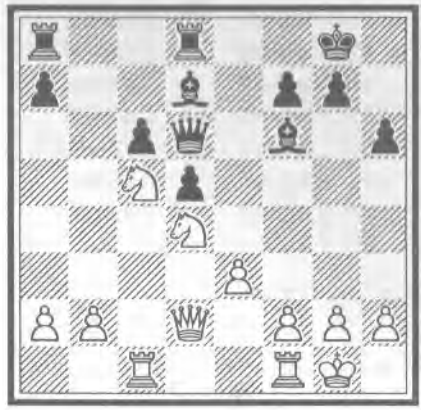


Black's development is incomplete, he is going to play 1...♘c6 ▷ ♘:d4, exchanging the knight, which is blocking the d4 point. How should White continue?

1. ♖a1-c1!	**. . .**

1.♖fd1? ♘c6 =, ▷ ♘:d4.

1. . . .	**♘b8-c6**
2. ♗b5:c6!	**♙b7:c6**
3. ♘c3-a4!	**♗c8-d7**
4. ♘a4-c5±	**. . .**



White builds up a blockade, his advantage is unquestionable.

4. . . .	**♖d8-c8**
5. ♙b2-b4!	**♗d7-e8**
6. ♖c1-c2	**♖c8-b8**
7. ♖f1-c1	**♗f6-d8**
8. ♘c5-a6!	**. . .**

Preventing ♙a7-a5.

8. . . .	**♖b8-b6**
9. ♕d2-e2	**♕d6-g6**

9...♗d7 10.♙a4 ♗c8 11.♖:c6 ♗:a6 12.♙b5 ±.

10. ♙a2-a3	**♗e8-d7**
11. ♕e2-f1±	**. . .**

White's position is strategically won.

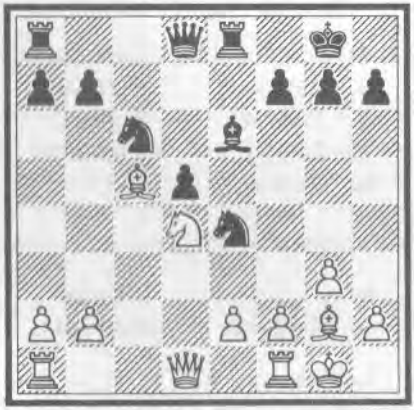
11.	. . .	**♗d8-f6**
12.	**♘a6-c5**	**♗d7-f5**
13.	**♘d4:f5**	**♕g6:f5**
14.	**♘c5-b3**	**♖a8-d8**
15.	**♘b3-a5**	. . .

After 15.♖:c6 ♖:c6 16.♖:c6 ♙d4 ⇅.

15.	. . .	**♙d5-d4**
16.	**♘a5:c6**	**♙d4-d3**
17.	**♖c2-d2**	**♖d8-d7**
18.	**♘c6-a5**	**♖b6-d6**
19.	**♘a5-b3**	**♖d7-d8**
20.	**♘b3-c5**	**♙a7-a5**
21.	**♘c5-b7**	**♙a5:b4**
22.	**♘b7:d6**	**♖d8:d6**
23.	**♙a3:b4**	

Black resigned.

No.143
Kotov — Opochensky
Prague, 1946



Find the best continuation for White.

1.	**♘d4:c6!**	. . .

1.♘:e6!? ♖:e6 2.♗d4±.

1.	. . .	**♙b7:c6**
2.	**♗c5-d4!**	. . .

It is important for White to keep control over the c5 point. 2.♕d4 ♘:c5 3.♕:c5 ♕b6 gave nothing and the position was almost equalized.

2.	. . .	**♕d8-a5**

2...♙c5!? 3.♗:e4 ♙:e4 4.♗:c5 ♕g5 ½ and Black has some counterplay for a pawn.

3.	**♕d1-c2!**	. . .

White has to prevent 3...♙c5, it will cause 4.♗:e4 ♙:e4 5.♕:c5 ±.

3.	. . .	**♖a8-c8**
4.	**♙f2-f3**	**♘e4-d2!**

4...♙c5 is impossible because of 5.♗:g7!±. White won the battle for control over the c5 square, and this decides his advantage.

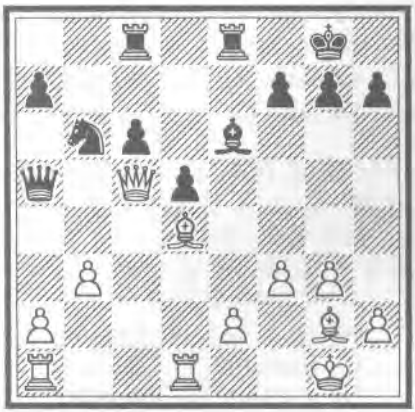
By 4...♘d2! Black creates maximum difficulties for White.

4...♘d6? 5.♕c5! ± is bad.

5.	**♖f1-d1**	. . .

5.♗c3? ♕b6+ 6.♖f2 ♘c4 ∓.

5.	. . .	**♘d2-c4**
6.	**♙b2-b3**	**♘c4-b6**
7.	**♕c2-c5**	. . .



White's advantage is unquestionable.

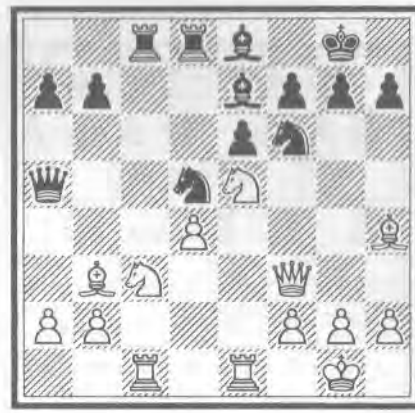
7.	. . .	**♕a5-a6!**
8.	**♗g2-f1!**	**♕a6-b7**
9.	**♙e2-e3**	**♖c8-c7**
10.	**♕c5-a5**	**♙f7-f6**
11.	**♖a1-c1**	**♘b6-d7**
12.	**♖c1-c3**	**♘d7-e5**
13.	**♔g1-f2**	**♙h7-h5**
14.	**♖d1-c1**	**♗e6-d7**
15.	**♗f1-a6**	**♕b7-b8**
16.	**♗d4-c5**	**♘e5-f7**
17.	**♕a5-b4**	**♕b8-d8**
18.	**♕b4-d4**	**♗d7-c8**
19.	**♗a6-e2**	**♕d8-d7**
20.	**♕d4-h4!**	**♕d7-f5**
21.	**♗e2-d3**	**♕f5-g5**
22.	**♕h4:g5**	**♙f6:g5**
23.	**♗d3-g6+-**	**♙h5-h4**
24.	**♙g3-g4**	**♖e8-e6**
25.	**♗g6-b1**	**♖e6-f6**
26.	**♗c5-d4**	**♖f6-d6**
27.	**♙b3-b4**	**♗c8-a6**
28.	**♖c3-a3**	**♗a6-c4**
29.	**♗d4:a7**	**♖c7-b7**
30.	**♗a7-c5**	. . .

White has a decisive advantage.

No.144

Zukertort — Steinitz

St. Luis, 1886



Find the best continuation for Black.

1. . . . **♘d5:c3!**

Black reliably defended his kingside. Now he can transfer his attack to White's pawn centre. Althought the d4 pawn becomes stronger, the weak c3 pawn appears and it is more prone to be attacked than the d4 pawn.

2. **♙b2:c3** **♕a5-c7**

2...♙b5!?

3. **♕f3-d3** **♘f6-d5**

Black should provoke an exchange of minor pieces, and then the weakness of the hanging pawns will gain importance.

4. **♗h4:e7?** . . .

White simplifies Black's task. 4.♗g3 is stronger with approximately equal chances.

4. . . .	**♕c7:e7**
5. ♗b3:d5?!	**♖d8:d5**

6. ♙c3-c4	. . .

White is too active, the advance of the c-pawn weakens the pawn centre still further.

6. . . .	**♖d5-d8**
7. ♖e1-e3	**♕e7-d6**
8. ♖c1-d1	. . .

8.♖h3 ♕:d4 9.♕:h7+ ♔f8 ∓ is not dangerous for Black .

8. . . .	**♙f7-f6**
9. ♖e3-h3	**♙h7-h6**
10. ♘e5-g4	**♕d6-f4**

Black has repulsed White's unprepared attack and now passes to the counterplay, which is getting still stronger because the white rook on h3 badly cooperates with other pieces.

11. ♘g4-e3	**♗e8-a4!**
12. ♖h3-f3	**♕f4-d6**
13. ♖d1-d2	**♗a4-c6**
14. ♖f3-g3	. . .

If 14.♖:f6, then ♙:f6 15.♕g6+ ♔f8 16.♕:f6+ ♔e8 17.♘f5 ♙:f5 -+. 14.♙d5 ♕e5 15.♖g3 ♙:d5 16.♕g6 ♖c7 ∓ deserved an attention.

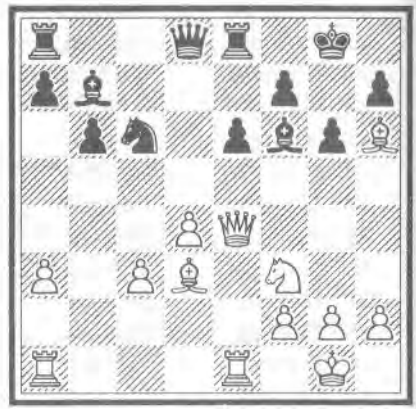
14. . . .	**♙f6-f5-+**
15. ♖g3-g6	**♗c6-e4**
16. ♕d3-b3	**♔g8-h7!**
17. ♙c4-c5	**♖c8:c5**
18. ♖g6:e6	**♖c5-c1+**
19. ♘e3-d1	**♕d6-f4**
20. ♕b3-b2	**♖c1-b1**
21. ♕b2-c3	**♖d8-c8!**
22. ♖e6:e4	**♕f4:e4**

White resigned.

No.145

Makarichev — Mikhalchishin

Tbilisi, 1978



All white pieces are very active, and they are aiming at Black's weakened kingside.

1. ♕e4-f4 ♖a8-c8

1...♗g7?! 2.♗:g7 ♔:g7 3.♘g5±.

2. ♖e1-c3 . . .

2.♗g5!? ♗e7! □ (2...♗:g5 3.♘:g5 ♖c7 4.♕h4 ♙h5 5.♙g4! ±).

2. . . . ♗f6-g7□

2...♘a5 3.♘g5 ♖:c3? 4.♗:g6! +-.

3. ♘f3-g5 . . .

3.♗:g7?! ♔:g7 4.♘g5 ♕f6! 5.♕:f6+ ♔:f6 6.♘:h7+ ♔g7 7.♘g5 ♘e7! and Black has got strong pressure on the c3 and d4 pawn's pair.

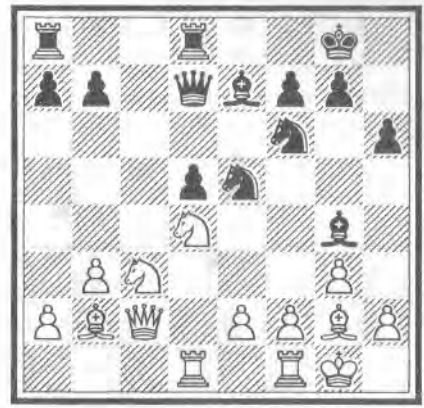
3. . . . ♕d8-f6
4. ♘g5-e4 . . .

4.♕h4?! ♗:h6 5.♕:h6 ♕g7 6.♖h3 ♕:h6 7.♖:h6 ♘a5! ∓.

4. . . . ♕f6:f4
5. ♗h6:f4 ♖e8-e7
6. ♘e4-d6 ♖c8-d8
7. ♘d6:b7 ♖e7:b7
8. ♗d3-e4 ♖d8-c8
9. ♙d4-d5 ♙e6:d5
10. ♗e4:d5 ♖b7-e7
11. ♖a1-c1 ♗g7-f6

The position is equal and the opponents agree to a draw.

No.146
Petrosian T. — Spassky
Moscow, 1969



In order to assess this position it's necessary to answer the following question — what is more important: the activity of Black's pieces or the d5 pawn's weakness? White strives to neutralize the activity of Black's pieces by limiting their mobility or moving into the ending by an exchange of queens. If he succeeds his advantage will be obvious.

1. ♙f2-f3! ♗g4-h5

1...♗e6? 2.♙f4 ♘eg4 3.♙f5 ♘e3 4.♕d2 +-.
1...♗h3 2.♗:h3 ♕:h3 3.♕f5 ♕:f5 4.♘:f5 ♗c5+ 5.♔g2 ♙b6 6.♘b5 ±.

2. ♕c2-f5! . . .

White forces Black to pass to a disadvantageous ending.

2. . . . **♘e5-c6**

Black cannot avoid an exchange of queens, for example 2...♕c7 3.♘cb5 ♕b8 4.♘e6 +-.
If 2...♕:f5, then 3.♘:f5 ♗c5+ 4.♔h1 ♗g6 5.♘a4! ±.

3. ♕f5:d7 **♖d8:d7**
4. ♘d4:c6 . . .

4.♘a4?! ♘:d4 5.♗:d4 ♖c8 with counterplay.

4. . . . **♙b7:c6**
5. ♘c3-a4 . . .

White's advantage is unquestionable because the c6 pawn is weak and the Black's lightsquare bishop cannot take part in the defence.

5. . . . **♘f6-e8**

With the intention to play ♙f7-f6 and include the bishop at h5 into the game gradually. If 5...♙c5, then 6.♗:f6 ♙:f6 7.♙g4 ♗g6 8.♙f4 ♖ad8 9.♙f5 +-.

6. ♖d1-c1 . . .

6.♗h3!? ♖c7 7.♗e5 ♗d6 8.♗:d6 ♘:d6 9.♙e4 ♘:e4 10.♙:e4 ♗:d1 11.♖:d1 ♙:e4 12.♔f2 ±.

6. . . . **♖d7-c7**
7. ♗b2-e5 **♗e7-d6**

7...♘d6!? 8.♙g4 ♗g6 9.♙f4 ♙f6 ⇅.

8. ♗e5:d6 **♘e8:d6**
9. ♖f1-d1 **♘d6-b5**
10. ♔g1-f2?! . . .

10.♙g4! ♗g6 11.♙f4 ♙f6 (11...♗e4 12.♗:e4 ♙:e4 13.♘c5 +-) 12.♖:c6! +- is stronger.

10. . . . **♙f7-f6**

Now Black has time to bring the lightsquare bishop into play.

11. ♙e2-e3 **♗h5-f7**
12. ♗g2-f1 **♘b5-d6**
13. ♖c1-c3?! . . .

13.♗a6! ♔f8 14.♖c5, ▷♖dc1 ± is better.

13. . . . **♔g8-f8?!**

13...♙g5! 14.♘c5 ♙a5 15.♖dc1 ♖e7 16.♘d3 ♗e8 ½

14. ♘a4-c5 **♙a7-a5**
15. ♖d1-c1 **♖c7-e7**
16. ♗f1-h3 **♖a8-a7**
17. ♙a2-a4? . . .

17.♘d3! ♗e8 18.♘f4 +- is better.

17. . . . **♙g7-g5!**

Preventing the transfer of the white knight to f4.

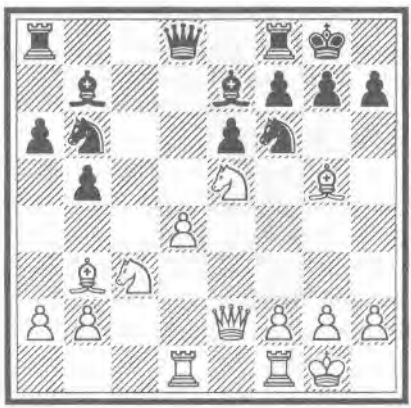
18. ♖c1-d1	**♔f8-g7**
19. ♘c5-d3	**♗f7-e8**
20. ♘d3-c1	**♙f6-f5**
21. ♘c1-e2?!	. . .

Better is 21.♗g2

21. . . .	**♙g5-g4!**
22. ♗h3-g2	**♙g4:f3**
23. ♗g2:f3	**♘d6-e4+**
24. ♗f3:e4	**♙f5:e4**
25. ♘e2-d4	**♖e7-f7+**
26. ♔f2-g2	**♖f7-f6**
27. ♖d1-f1	**♖f6:f1**
28. ♔g2:f1	**♙h6-h5!**
29. ♔f1-g2	**♗e8-d7**
30. ♖c3-c2	**♖a7-a6**
31. ♙g3-g4!	**♙h5:g4**
32. ♔g2-g3	

Draw.

No.147
Taimanov — Lipnitsky
USSR, 1952



Black's pieces are situated ideally, White's pieces are ready to perform tactical actions. 2.♗:f6 ♗:f6 3.♘:f7! ♖:f7 4.♕:e6 ♕e7 5.♕:b6 +- threatens.

1. . . .	**♘f6-d5!**

This freeing manoeuvre sharply decreases White's attacking potential.

2. ♗g5-c1	. . .

White avoids exchanging minor pieces.

2. . . .	**♘d5:c3**
3. ♙b2:c3	**♖a8-c8**

Due to the exchange on c3 White has a fixed backward pawn. The exchange of knights and light-square bishops is an ideal decision for Black in this situation. In such a case White is left with his bad darksquare bishop and vulnerable pawns in the centre. White's chances lay in an attack on the kingside, but it is difficult to realize.

4. ♖d1-d3	. . .

4.♙c4? ♙:c4 5.♘:c4 ♗:g2! 6.♔:g2 ♕d5+ and ♘:c4 ∓.

4. . . .	**♘b6-d5**

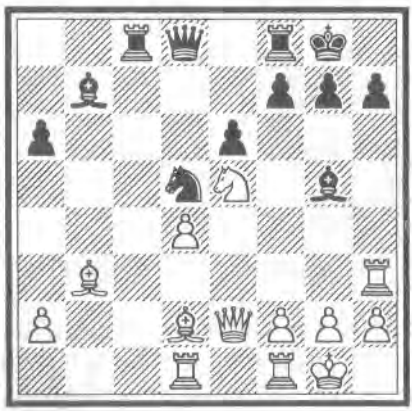
The knight is quickly transfered to the kingside in order to neutralize any of White's attempts.

5. ♗c1-d2	**♘d5-f6**

6. ♖d3-h3 **♙b5-b4**
7. ♖f1-d1 . . .

7.♙:b4?! ♕:d4∓.

7. . . . **♙b4:c3**
8. ♗d2:c3 **♘f6-d5**
9. ♗c3-d2 **♗e7-g5**



The exchange of minor pieces leads to Black's advantage.

10. ♖h3-g3 . . .

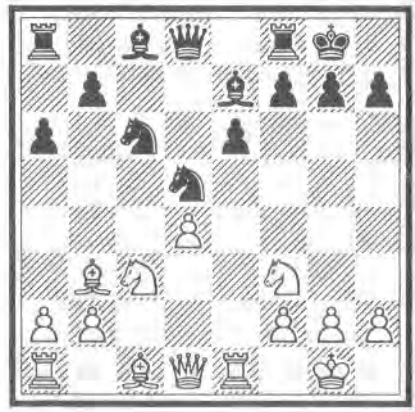
10.♕h5 ♙h6∓.

10. . . . **♗g5:d2**
11. ♕e2:d2 **♖c8-c7**

If 11...♕h4?!, then 12.♘d7! ♖fd8 13.♘c5 =.

Now Black has the advantage: he blocked the isolated d4 pawn, besides his rooks are ready to invade on the c-file. White's activity on the kingside is not dangerous.

No.148
Sokolov — Karpov
Linares, 1987



Black has to solve the problem of the bishop on c8 to complete his development. Transition to the hanging c3 and d4 pawn pair is the most natural way of development.

1. . . . **♘d5:c3**
2. ♙b2:c3 **♙b7-b5**

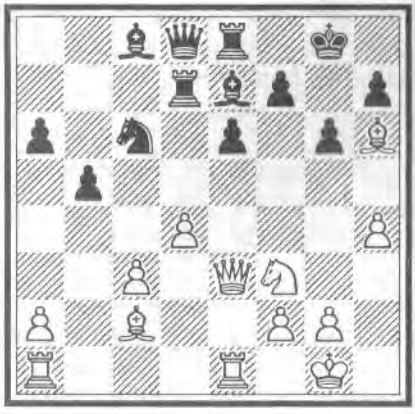
Black strives to increase piece pressure in the centre and on the queenside. White's chances lay in organizing an attack on the kingside, which is a bit weakened.

3. ♕d1-d3 . . .

3.♙d5 ♘a5! (3...♙:d5 4.♕:d5 ♗b7 5.♕h5 ±) 4.♙:e6 ♗:e6 5.♗:e6 ♕:d1 6.♗:f7+ ♔:f7 7.♖:d1 ♗f6 ∓ gives nothing, Black has better chances though he is a pawn down.

3. . . . **♖a8-a7?!**

4. ♗b3-c2 ♙g7-g6
5. ♗c1-h6 ♖f8-e8
6. ♕d3-e3 ♖a7-d7
7. ♙h2-h4! . . .



7. . . . ♗e7-f6

It is impossible to take the pawn 7...♗:h4? 8.♘:h4 (8.♕e4?! ♗e7! 9.♕:c6? ♗b7 -+) 8...♕:h4 9.♗g5 ♕g4 10.♗d1 ♕f5 11.♙g4 ♕d5 12.♗f3 ♕d6 13.♗f6 ♗b7 14.♖d1!± (14.♔g2 ♙e5 ½), ▷ 15.♙d5 or 15.♔g2 and 16.♖h1.

8. ♗h6-g5! . . .

It is important to exchange the strong piece-defender — Black's darksquare bishop.

8. . . . ♗c8-b7
9. ♕e3-f4 ♗f6:g5
10. ♘f3:g5 ♕d8-c7!

An important defensive move.

11. ♕f4-f6 ♘c6:d4
12. ♗c2:g6! . . .

12.♙h5? ♕:c3 13.♘:h7 ♔:h7 14.♙:g6+ ♔g8 ∓ is bad, and Black beats off White's attack, keeping the material advantage.

12. . . . ♙h7:g6
13. ♙c3:d4 ♖d7-d5
14. ♖a1-c1 ♕c7-d7

If 14...♕e7, then 15.♕f4 ♖f5 16.♕g3 ±.

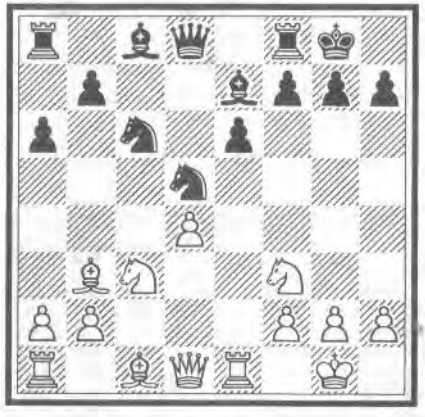
15. ♘g5-e4! . . .

Black is unlikely to avoid material losses.

15. . . . ♖d5-h5
16. ♕f6:g6+ ♙f7:g6
17. ♘e4-f6+± . . .

White has the material advantage.

No.149
Matveeva — Anand
Frunze, 1987



Here again Black has to solve the problem of the bishop at c8 to complete his development. This plan is similar to the one in the previous example.

1. . . . ♘d5:c3

2.	**♙b2:c3**	**♙b7-b5**
3.	**♕d1-d3**	**♗c8-b7**
4.	**♗b3-c2**	**♙g7-g6**
5.	**♗c1-h6**	**♖f8-e8**
6.	**♖a1-d1**	. . .

6.♙a4!? ♙b4 7.♙c4 deserved serious attention.

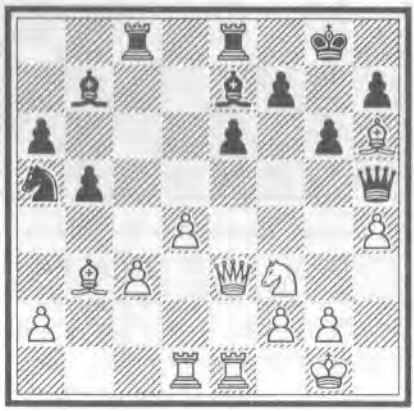
6.	. . .	**♖a8-c8**
7.	**♙h2-h4**	**♕d8-d5!**

If 7...♗:h4?, then 8.♙d5 ♘a5 (8...♘b8 9.♙:e6 ♕:d3 10.♖:d3 ♗f6 11.♙:f7+ ♔:f7 12. ♗b3+ +-) 9.♙d6! ♗:f3 10.♙d7 (10.♙:f3 ♗g5 ∓) ♗:d1 11.♙:e8♕+ ♕:e8 12.♕d4 ♙f6 13.♗:d1 ♗g5 14.♗:g5 ♙:g5 15.♗g4 ♘c6 16.♕c5 +-.

8.	**♗c2-b3**	**♕d5-h5**

The black queen is ready to defend the kingside, where it prevents the development of White's initiative.

9.	**♕d3-e3**	**♘c6-a5!**



An excellent defensive move, 10.♗:e6? is no good because of 10...♗f8 ∓.

10.	**♗h6-g5**	. . .

Recognition of the fact that White's initiative has petered out.

10.	. . .	**♘a5:b3**
11.	**♙a2:b3**	**♗e7:g5**
12.	**♙h4:g5**	**♗b7:f3!**
13.	**♙g2:f3**	. . .

The minor pieces have dissappeared from the board. In the heavy piece ending, Black has somewhat better chances because of the weak pawns in White's position. But while Black's queen is out of play, it is difficult for him to realize his advantage.

13.	. . .	**♖e8-d8**
14.	**♙d4-d5**	**♖d8:d5**
15.	**♖d1:d5**	**♙e6:d5**
16.	**♔g1-g2?**	. . .

16.♖d1! ♙h6 17.♖:d5 ♙:g5 18.♖:g5 ♕h8 19.♖e5 = with equal chances.

16.	. . .	**♙h7-h6**
17.	**♙g5:h6**	**♔g8-h7**
18.	**♕e3-e7**	**♕h5-f5**
19.	**♕e7-e3**	**♕f5-f6**
20.	**♖e1-c1**	. . .

Now 20...♙b4! led to a great advantage for Black. 21.♙c4 (21.♙:b4 ♙d4 22.♕d2 ♖c3 -+) 21...♙:c4 22.♖:c4 ♖:c4 23.♙:c4 ♙a5 -+.

No.150
Marin — Gavrikov
Tallinn, 1989

White's pieces are aiming at the black king. Black should neutralize White's activity on the flank by counterplay in the centre.
How should Black continue?

1 . . . ♘d5:c3!

1...♙e5?! leads to complications which are favourable for White, for example: 2.♙:e5 ♘:c3 (2...♗f5 3.♕:d5 ♗:c2 4.♗g5 ♕c7 5.♕d2 ♗f5 6.♘d5 ♕:e5 7.♙f4! ♕e4 8.♗:e7 +-) 3.♕:c3 ♗g4 4.♙f3 ♖c8 5.♙:g4 ♘e5 6.♕b3! (6.♕:e5? ♖:c2 7.♗e3 ♖e8 ½) 6...♗:h4+ 7.♙g3 ♖:c2 8.♕:c2 ♘d3+ 9.♔f1 ♕d5 10.♘g1! ♖e8 11.♗h6 ♗:g3 12.♖d1 ♕:h1 13.♕:d3 and White has parried the attack and kept his advantage (Knaak — Christiansen, Salonika, 1988).

2. ♙b2:c3 ♙e6-e5!
3. ♕d3-g3 . . .

3...♗f5 threatened.

3. . . . ♙e5:d4
4. ♙h4-h5 . . .

The only chance for White is to organize an attack on Black's king.

4. . . . ♗e7-d6!

Black exchanges pieces, and it improves his defence.

5. ♗c1-f4 ♗d6:f4
6. ♘e2:f4 ♙g6-g5

Preventing an opening in the h-file by advancing the g-pawn. White has minimal attack possibilities.

7. 0 - 0?! . . .

7.0-0-0 is stronger, though here after 7...♕f6 Black has to repel White's attack.

7. . . . ♔g8-h8
8. ♙h5-h6 ♕d8-f6
9. ♘f4:d5 ♕f6:h6
10. ♙f2-f4 ♕h6-d6
11. ♘d5-f6?! . . .

The last attempt to complicate play. After 11.♕:g5 followed 11...♙f5 with Black's advantage.

11.. . . ♕d6:f6
12. ♙f4:g5 ♕f6-e5
13. ♕g3-h4 ♙d4-d3
14. ♖a1-e1 ♕e5-c5+
15. ♔g1-h1 ♗c8-f5

White resigned.

No.151
Tolush — Kotov
Gagra, 1953

White's attack is premature because he has no control over the important e4 square.

1. . . .	**♘d5:c3**
2. ♙b2:c3	**♘f6-e4!**

Of course 2...♗:a3 looks like suicide.

3. ♗g5-c1	**♖a8-c8**
4. ♗c1-b2	**♗b7-d5!**

Exploiting the weakness of the opponent's light squares.

5. ♗b3-c2	**♙f7-f5!**

Of course this leaves White's strong knight on e5, but it is the only strong white piece — the others are misplaced.

6. ♙f2-f3	**♘e4-d6**
7. ♖d3-e3	**♗e7-f6**
8. ♗b2-c1	**♗f6:e5!**

Finally the strongest white piece is eliminated.

9. ♙d4:e5	**♘d6-c4**
10. ♖e3-d3	**♕d8-e7**
11. ♔g1-h1	**♘c4:a3**
12. ♖d3:d5?!	**. . .**

A desperate sacrifice.

12.. . .	**♙e6:d5**
13. ♗c2-b3	**♘a3-c4**
14. ♙f3-f4	**♕e7-c5**
15. ♙g2-g4	**♙d5-d4**
16. ♙c3:d4	**♕c5-d5+**
17. ♕e2-g2	**♖f8-d8!**

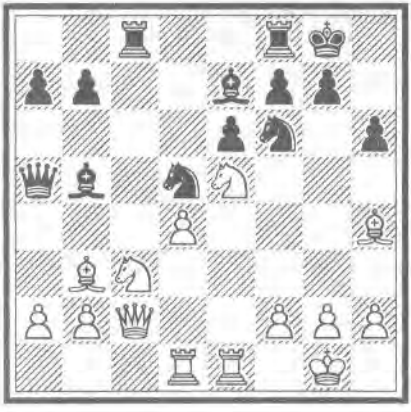
Activity is more important than material.

18. ♖f1-f3	**♙f5:g4**
19. ♕g2:g4	**♖c8-c6**
20. ♙f4-f5	**♕d5:d4**
21. ♕g4-g3	**♔g8-h8**

And Black's position is easily won.

Subject: Transforming pawn structure by exchanging pieces in the centre.

No.152
Lasker — Capablanca
Havana, 1921



White emerged from the opening with better development and a more active piece disposition. But how should he use this advantage? White should act quickly, otherwise after 1...♘:c3 or 1...♖fd8 Black will consolidate his position.
How should White continue?

Variation

1. ♗h4:f6! . . .

If now 1...♘:f6?, then 2.♘g6! ♖fe8 (2...♙:g6 3.♖:e6!) 3.♖:e6! ♙:e6 4.♗:e6+ ♔h7 5.♘f8++ ♔h8 6.♕h7+! ♘:h7 7.♘g6#.

1. . . . **♗e7:f6**
2. ♗b3:d5 **♙e6:d5**

Now 3.♘g4 ♗g5 4.♙f4 ♗h4 is tempting (bad is 4...♗:f4 5.♕f5 ♗g5 6.♕:d5 ♙a6 7.♙a4) 5.♙g3 ♗d8 6.♕f5 and Black's position seems critical, but 6...♖:c3! 7.♙:c3 ♕:c3 8.♕:d5 ♗c6! 9.♕b3 ♕f3! 10.♕:f3 ♗:f3 11.♘e5 ♗:d1 12.♖:d1 and Black keeps his balance.

3. ♕c2-f5! **♗b5-c6!**

3...♗:e5 4.♙:e5 ♗c6 5.♖d4 is bad.

4. ♘e5-g4! . . .

If 4.♘d7?!, then 4...♗:d7 5.♕:d7 ♖fd8 6.♕f5 ♖c4 7.♘:d5 ♕:d5! 8.♖e8+ ♖:e8 9.♕:d5 ♖:d4 10.♕f3 ♖d2! 11.♙g3 ♖:b2 = and Black keeps his balance.

4. . . . **♗f6-g5**

5. ♘c3-e4 . . .

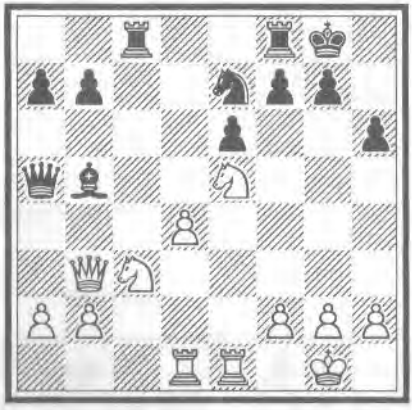
5.♙f4?! ♙g6 6.♕e5 ♖ce8 7.♘f6+ ♗:f6 8.♕:f6 ♕b4! with Black's counterplay.

5.	. . .	**♕a5-d8**
6.	**♘e4:g5**	**♕d8:g5**
7.	**♕f5:g5**	**♙h6:g5**
8.	**♖e1-e7±**	. . .

White has a slight advantage in the ending.

The actual moves in the game were:

1.	**♗b3:d5?**	**♘f6:d5**
2.	**♗h4:e7**	**♘d5:e7**
3.	**♕c2-b3**	. . .



3.	. . .	**♗b5-c6**
4.	**♘e5:c6**	**♙b7:c6∓**

In this position White's pawn on d4 is weaker than Black's pawn on c6.

5.	**♖e1-e5**	**♕a5-b6**
6.	**♕b3-c2**	**♖f8-d8**
7.	**♘c3-e2?**	. . .

7.♘a4!? ♕b8 8.♖c5 and, if 8...♘f5, then 9.♖:c6 ♖:c6 10.♕:c6 ♘:d4 11.♕e4!⅌ was necessary.

7.	. . .	**♖d8-d5**
8.	**♖e5:d5**	. . .

8.♖e3 ♘f5 9.♖b3 ♕d8 10.♖b4 ♕d7 ∓.

8.	. . .	**♙c6:d5**
9.	**♕c2-d2**	**♘e7-f5**
10.	**♙b2-b3**	**♙h6-h5?!**

Better is 10...♙g6.

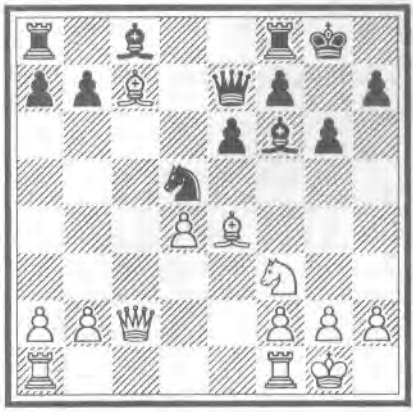
11.	**♙h2-h3?**	. . .

11.♘g3! was necessary, with a transition to the heavy piece ending, in which a draw is likely.

11.	. . .	**♙h5-h4!∓**
12.	**♕d2-d3**	**♖c8-c6**
13.	**♔g1-f1**	**♙g7-g6**
14.	**♕d3-b1**	**♕b6-b4**
15.	**♔f1-g1**	**♙a7-a5!**
16.	**♕b1-b2**	**♙a5-a4**
17.	**♕b2-d2**	**♕b4:d2**
18.	**♖d1:d2**	**♙a4:b3**
19.	**♙a2:b3**	**♖c6-b6!**
20.	**♖d2-d3**	**♖b6-a6!**
21.	**♙g2-g4**	**♙h4:g3**
22.	**♙f2:g3**	**♖a6-a2**
23.	**♘e2-c3**	**♖a2-c2**
24.	**♘c3-d1**	**♘f5-e7**
25.	**♘d1-e3**	**♖c2-c1+**
26.	**♔g1-f2**	**♘e7-c6**
27.	**♘e3-d1!**	**♖c1-b1!**
28.	**♔f2-e2?**	**♖b1:b3!**
29.	**♔e2-e3**	**♖b3-b4!**

Black has a decisive advantage.

No.153
Liliental — Bondarevsky
Moscow, 1940



How should White continue?

1. ♗e4:d5! . . .

1.♗e5?! ♖d8 followed by ♙b7-b6 and ♗b7=.

1. . . .	**♙e6:d5**
2. ♗c7-e5!±	. . .

White continues his strategy of advantageous exchanges. He should keep the knight against Black's lightsquare bishop, whose mobility is limited by his own pawn at d5.

2. . . .	**♗c8-f5**
3. ♗e5:f6	**♕e7:f6**
4. ♕c2-b3	**♗f5-e4**
5. ♘f3-e5	**♕f6-b6**
6. ♕b3:b6	**♙a7:b6**
7. ♖f1-c1	**♖f8-c8**
8. ♙a2-a3±	. . .

Black is faced with a difficult defence.

8. . . .	**♗e4-f5**
9. ♙g2-g4	**♗f5-e6**
10. ♙h2-h3	**♙f7-f6**
11. ♘e5-d3	**♙g6-g5**
12. ♙f2-f3	**♔g8-f7**
13. ♔g1-f2	**♔f7-e7**
14. ♔f2-e3	**♔e7-d6?**

14...♙h5!?

15. ♖c1:c8	**♖a8:c8**
16. ♙h3-h4!	**♙h7-h6**
17. ♙h4:g5	**♙h6:g5**
18. ♖a1-h1	**♖c8-e8**
19. ♔e3-d2	**♗e6-d7**
20. ♖h1-h6	**♖e8-f8**
21. ♘d3-e1±	. . .

With the idea of transferring the knight to f5.

21. . . .	**♔d6-c7**
22. ♘e1-c2	**♖f8-f7**
23. ♘c2-e3	**♗d7-e6**
24. ♔d2-c3	**♔c7-d6**
25. ♔c3-b4	**♗e6-d7**
26. ♘e3-f5+	**♔d6-c7**

26...♗:f5 27.♙:f5 ♔c6 28.♙a4 ♖f8 29.♖h7 +-.

27.♙a3-a4	**♗d7-e6**
28.♘f5-g3	**♗e6-d7**
29.♘g3-h5	**♙f6-f5**
30.♘h5-f6	**♙f5:g4**
31.♘f6:d5+	**♔c7-b8**
32.♙f3:g4	**♗d7:g4**
33.♘d5:b6	**♖f7-f2**
34.♙b2-b3	**♗g4-d1**
35.♙d4-d5	**♔b8-c7**
36.♙a4-a5	**♖f2-d2**
37.♖h6-h7+	**♔c7-b8**
38.♙d5-d6	**♖d2-d4+**

If 38...♖:d6, then 39.♖h8+ ♔c7 40.♖c8#.

39.♔b4-c5	**♖d4-h4**
40.♙d6-d7	**♔b8-c7**
41.♙d7-d8♕++	**♔c7:d8**
42.♖h7-d7+	

White won.

No.154
Botvinnik — Alatortsev
Leningrad, 1932

Black intends to play 1...♗c6 and consolidate his position. White will be unlikely to prove his advantage there.

1. ♘c3:d5 **♘f6:d5**

1...♙:d5 2.♗:f6 ♙:f6 3.♘:d7 ♕:d7 4.♗d3 +-.

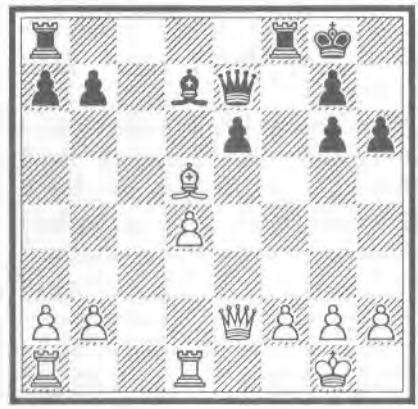
2. ♗h4:e7! . . .

2.♗:d5 ♙:d5 3.♘:d7 ♖e8!! 4.♗:e7 ♕:d7 5.♖e1 ♖c8!= 6.♕f3 ♖:e7 7.♖:e7 ♕:e7 8.♕:d5 ♖c2 9.♕b5 ♕e4 and the activity of black pieces fully compensates for the missing pawn.

2. . . . **♕d8:e7**

2...♘:e7 3.♙d5! ♙:d5 4.♗:d5 ♘:d5 5.♖:d5 ♗g4 6.♕c4! +- is bad.

3. ♘e5-g6! **♙f7:g6**
4. ♗c4:d5± . . .



White's advantage is obvious, Black's pawns are scattered and in need of defence. These factors can influen-

ce not only the middlegame but the ending also.

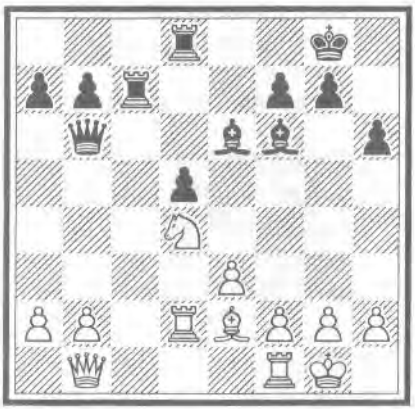
4.	. . .	**♖a8-e8**
5.	**♖d1-e1**	. . .

5.♗:b7?! ♗a4 6.♙b3 ♗:b3!

5.	. . .	**♕e7-b4**
6.	**♗d5-b3**	**♖f8-f6**
7.	**♖a1-d1±**	**♖e8-f8**
8.	**♙f2-f3**	**♔g8-h7**
9.	**♕e2-d2**	**♕b4-b6**
10.	**♖e1-e5**	**♖f6-f4**
11.	**♕d2-e3**	**♖f8-f6**
12.	**♕e3-c3**	**♗d7-c6**
13.	**♕c3-c5!**	**♕b6:c5**
14.	**♙d4:c5+-**	. . .

White has a technically won position.

No.155
Karpov — Kasparov
Moscow, 1985



Variation

Black has an isolated pawn, but he controls the c-file.

1.	. . .	**♗f6:d4!**
2.	**♖d2:d4**	**♖d8-c8!**

Black's control over the c-file compensates for the pawn weakness on d5.

3.	**♗e2-d3**	**♖c7-c5**
4.	**♙h2-h3**	. . .

If 4.♙f4, then 4...♗d7! and 5...♗b5.

4.	. . .	**♕b6-c7**

After ♖c5-c1 the position becomes completely equal.

In the game it was played:

1.	. . .	**♖d8-c8?!**
2.	**♘d4:e6!**	**♙f7:e6**

The pawn on d5 was strengthened, but the weakness of the light squares in Black's camp gives a slight but lasting advantage to White.

3.	**♗e2-g4**	**♖c7-c4**
4.	**♙h2-h3**	**♕b6-c6**
5.	**♕b1-d3**	**♔g8-h8**

5...♙a5 6.♙f4 ♖c5? was necessary.

6.	**♖f1-d1**	**♙a7-a5**
7.	**♙b2-b3!**	. . .

Preventing possible ♙a5-a4.

7.	. . .	**♖c4-c3**
8.	**♕d3-e2**	**♖c8-f8!**
9.	**♗g4-h5!**	. . .

Preparing the transfer of the bishop to the b1-h7 diagonal.

9. . . . ♙b7-b5

Black strives to create a forepost on c3. 9...♗d8 10.♗g6 ♗c7 11.♗d3 ♕d6 12.♙g3 ♕e5 13.♕g4 ♕f6? was not bad.

10. ♗h5-g6 ♗f6-d8
11. ♗g6-d3 ♙b5-b4
12. ♕e2-g4 ♕c6-e8
13. ♙e3-e4! ♗d8-g5

13...♗b6!?

14. ♖d2-c2 ♖c3:c2

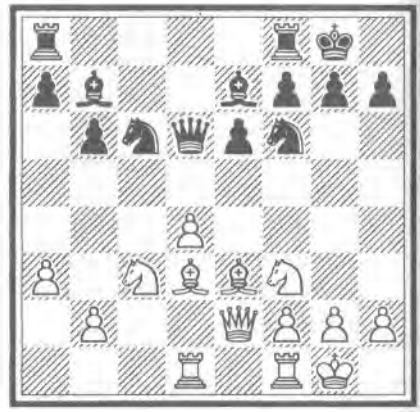
A disadvantageous exchange. Black has a counterplay connected with piece activity, therefore 14...♕c6! 15.♙:d5 ♕:d5 is preferable with an inferior but quite defencible position.

15. ♗d3:c2 ♕e8-c6
16. ♕g4-e2 ♕c6-c5
17. ♖d1-f1 ♕c5-c3
18. ♙e4:d5 ♙e6:d5

19. ♗c2-b1! . . .

White has a decisive advantage.

No.156
Rosentalis — Mikhalchishin
Trnava, 1988



1. . . . ♖a8-c8?

Black should control the d5-square by 1...♖ad8.

2. ♖f1-e1 ♘f6-d5?!

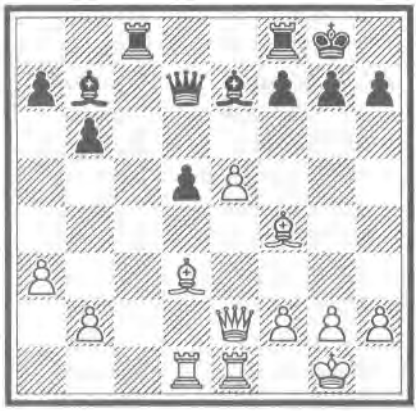
He should continue 2...♖fd8, getting control over the centre.

3. ♘c3:d5 ♙e6:d5

If 3...♕:d5, then 4.♗c4 ♕h5 5.♙d5 ♘a5 6.♗a2 ♗:d5 7.♗:d5 ♙:d5 8.♗:b6 ♙:b6 9.♕:e7±. The weaknesses of the black b6 and d5 pawns decide White's advantage.

4. ♘f3-e5! ♘c6:e5
5. ♗e3-f4 ♕d6-d7

6. ♙d4:e5! . . .



6.	. . .	**♕d7-e6**
7.	**♕e2-f3**	**♖f8-e8**
8.	**♕f3-g3**	**♙d5-d4**
9.	**♙h2-h4!**	**♙h7-h5**
10.	**♗f4-g5**	**♗e7:g5**

If 10...♖c5, then 11.♙f4!

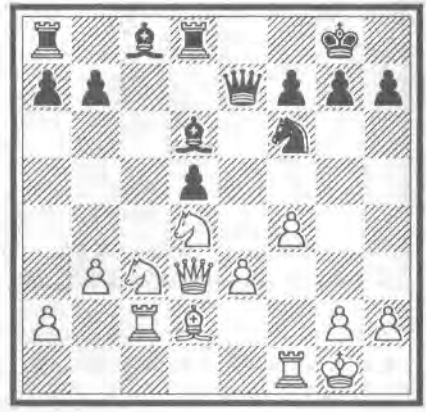
11.	**♕g3:g5**	**♕e6-g4**
12.	**♕g5:g4**	**♙h5:g4**
13.	**♗d3-f5!±**	. . .

White wins the pawn and moves into an excellent position.

13.	. . .	**♖c8-c5**
14.	**♖d1:d4**	**♙g7-g6**
15.	**♗f5:g4**	**♖e8:e5**
16.	**♖e1:e5**	**♖c5:e5**
17.	**♖d4-d7**	**♗b7-d5**
18.	**♙f2-f4!**	

Black resigned.

No.157
Kotov — Botvinnik
Moscow, 1955



How should Black continue?

1. . . . **♗d6-c5!**

Black strives to exchange the centralized White knight and then the lightsquare bishop can move to f5. Black's control of the weakened e4 square compensates the weakness of the pawn at d5.

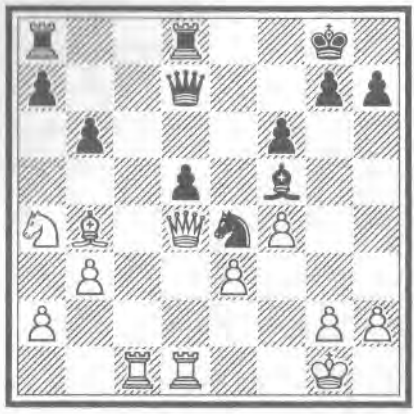
2.	**♘c3-a4**	**♗c5:d4**
3.	**♕d3:d4**	**♗c8-f5**
4.	**♗d2-b4**	**♕e7-d7**
5.	**♖c2-c3**	**♘f6-e4**
6.	**♖c3-c1**	. . .

6.♘c5!? ♘:c5 7.♖:c5 deserved attention.

6. . . . **♙b7-b6**

Limiting the activity of the opponent's minor pieces.

7. ♖f1-d1 **♙f7-f6!**



A programmed move, limiting the pressure of White's bishop along the a1-h8 diagonal.

8.	**♘a4-c3**	**♘e4:c3**
9.	**♖c1:c3**	**♗f5-e4∓**

Black's advantage is determined by a difference in activity of bishops of opposite colours. White's bishop is restricted by the f6 pawn, Black's bishop exerts pressure on the g2 pawn, and this is unpleasant in the presence of heavy pieces.

10.	**♕d4-d2**	**♕d7-g4**
11.	**♙h2-h3**	**♕g4-g6**
12.	**♕d2-f2**	**♙h7-h5**
13.	**♔g1-h2**	**♙a7-a5**
14.	**♗b4-a3**	**♙b6-b5**
15.	**♗a3-c5**	**♙b5-b4**
16.	**♖c3-c1**	**♖d8-c8**
17.	**♗c5-d4**	**♗e4-c2**
18.	**♖d1-d2**	**♗c2-e4**
19.	**♖d2-d1**	**♕g6-f5**
20.	**♕f2-e2**	**♕f5-g6**
21.	**♕e2-f2**	**♙a5-a4**
22.	**♖c1:c8+**	**♖a8:c8**
23.	**♙b3:a4**	**♕g6-e8**
24.	**♖d1-d2**	**♕e8:a4**
25.	**♕f2-h4**	**♖c8-c2**
26.	**♖d2:c2**	**♕a4:c2**
27.	**♕h4-g3**	**♕c2:a2**
28.	**♗d4:f6**	**♕a2:g2+**
29.	**♕g3:g2**	**♗e4:g2**
30.	**♗f6-d4**	**♗g2-e4**
31.	**♔h2-g3**	**♔g8-f7**
32.	**♙h3-h4**	**♙g7-g6**
33.	**♔g3-f2**	**♔f7-e6**
34.	**♔f2-e2**	**♔e6-f5**
35.	**♔e2-d2**	**♔f5-g4**
36.	**♗d4-f6**	**♔g4-g3**
37.	**♗f6-e7**	**♔g3-h3**
38.	**♗e7-f6**	**♔h3-g4**
39.	**♗f6-e7**	**♗e4-f5**
40.	**♗e7-f6**	**♔g4-f3**
41.	**♗f6-e7**	**♙b4-b3**
42.	**♔d2-c3**	**♗f5-e6**
43.	**♗e7-c5?**	**. . .**

An obvious move turning out to be a decisive mistake. Better was 43.♔d2! ♙b2 44.♔c2 ♔:c3 45.♔:b2 ♔:f4 46.♔c3 giving a draw.

43.	**. . .**	**♙g6-g5!!**
44.	**♙f4:g5**	**. . .**

If 44.♙h:g5, then after 44...♙h4 45.♙f5 (45.♗d6 ♗f5 46.♙g6 ♗:g6 47.♙f5 ♗:f5 48.♔:b3 ♔g2 -+) 45...♗:f5 46.♔:b3 ♙h3 47.♗d6 ♔:e3 Black wins.

44.	**. . .**	**♙d5-d4+!**
45.	**♙e3:d4**	**. . .**

After 45.♗:d4 ♔g3 46.♙g6 ♔:h4 47.♔d2 ♔h3 48.♔e2 ♔g2 49.♗f6 ♙h4 Black wins.

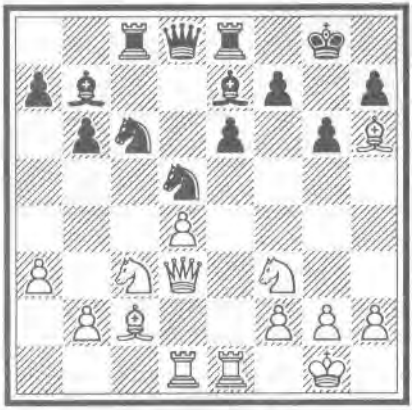
45. . . ♔f3-g3

45...♔g4? 46.♙d5 ♗:d5 47.♗f2 =.

46. ♗c5-a3 ♔g3:h4
47. ♔c3-d3 ♔h4:g5
48. ♔d3-e4 ♙h5-h4
49. ♔e4-f3 ♗e6-d5+

Black won.

No.158
Smyslov — Karpov
Leningrad, 1971



White's pieces are very active, Black's pieces are tied down. The main shortcoming of Black's position is unreliable control over the d5 point.

1. ♗c2-a4! . . .

White has pinned the knight at c6 and offers to sacrifice the pawn 1...♘:c3 2.♙:c3 ♗:a3 3.♙c4 with the threat ♙d4-d5, and White gains a strong initiative.

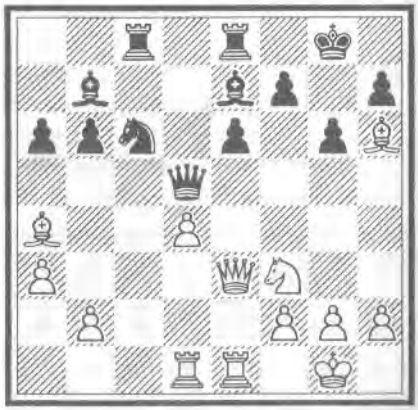
1. . . . ♙a7-a6
2. ♘c3:d5! . . .

White has to act energetically, otherwise after possible ♙b5, ♘:c3 and ♘a5 Black can intercept the initiative.

2. . . . ♕d8:d5

Stronger was 2...♙:d5, although here White keeps an advantage 3.♘e5 ♙b5 4.♗b3 ♗f6 5.♗f4±.

3. ♕d3-e3! . . .



3. . . . ♗e7-f6

After 3...♕h5 could follow 4.♙d5 ♗c5 (4...♙:d5 5.♕:b6) 5.♕f4 ♙:d5 6.♖:e8+ ♖:e8 7.♙g4 ♕h3 8.♘g5 +- ♕:h6 (8...♗:f2+ 9.♔:f2 ♕h4+ 10.♔f1 +-) 9.♕:f7+ ♔h8 10.♕:e8+ ♔g7 11.♘e6+ ♔f6 12.♙g5+ +-.

4. ♗a4-b3 ♕d5-h5
5. ♙d4-d5!+- ♘c6-d8

6. ♙d5-d6 . . .

The advanced d6 pawn determines White's decisive advantage.

6. . . . **♖c8-c5**

6...♗:f3 7.♙d7 +-.

7. ♙d6-d7 **♖e8-e7**
8. ♕e3-f4 **♗f6-g7**

8...♖f5 9.♕b8 +-.

9. ♕f4-b8 **♕h5:h6**
10. ♕b8:d8+ **♗g7-f8**
11. ♖e1-e3 **♗b7-c6**
12. ♕d8:f8+ **♕h6:f8**
13. ♙d7-d8♕

Black resigned.

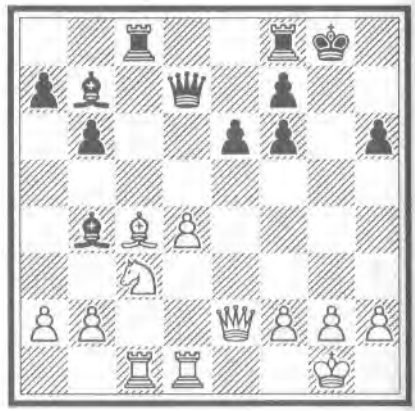
No.159
Taimanov — Browne
Wijk aan Zee, 1981

How should White continue?

1. ♘f3-e5! **♙h7-h6?!**

1...♗e7 was stronger, although after 2.♖fd1 Black has nothing better than 2...♘:e5 3.♙:e5 ♘d5 4.♗:d5 ♙:d5 5.♗:e7 ♕:e7 6.♖d4 ♖fe8 7.♖e1 and Black faces a gloomy defence.

2. ♘e5:d7 **♕d8:d7**
3. ♗g5:f6 **♙g7:f6**
4. ♖f1-d1 . . .



White threatens ♙d4-d5. Black has no compensation for the damaged pawn structure on the kingside.

4. . . . **♕d7-c6**

Black has difficulties with developing an effective plan of counterplay.

5. ♕e2-g4+ **♔g8-h7**

5...♔h8 6.♗b5 ♕d6 7.♕h4 ♔g7 8.♖d3 +-.

6. ♘c3-d5! **♙f6-f5**

6...♙:d5 7.♗d3+ ♔h8 8.♕f5 +-.
6...♖g8 7.♘:f6+ ♔h8 8.♘:g8 ♖:g8 9.♙d5 +-.

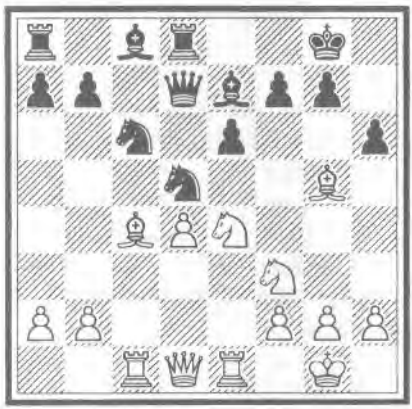
7.	**♘d5-f6+**	**♔h7-h8**
8.	**♕g4-h3!**	**♔h8-g7**
9.	**♘f6-h5+**	**♔g7-h8**

9...♔h7 10.♕g3 ♖g8 11.♘f6+ ♔h8 12.♘:g8 ♖:g8 13.♙d5 +-.

10.	**♕h3-g3**	**♖f8-g8**
11.	**♕g3-e5+**	**♙f7-f6**
12.	**♕e5:f6+**	**♔h8-h7**
13.	**♙d4-d5**	**♕c6-e8**
14.	**♘h5-f4**	**♗b4-d6**
15.	**♙d5:e6**	**♖g8-f8**
16.	**♕f6-h4**	**♕e8-c6**
17.	**♗c4-f1**	**♕c6:c1**
18.	**♖d1:d6!**	

Black resigned.

No.160
Stein — Tal
Parnu, 1971



White's pieces are mobilized and occupy active positions, Black has problems with the bishop at c8.

How should White continue?

1.	**♗c4:d5!**	. . .

By way of exchange White removes Black's knight, which occupied the important blockade d5 square. It should be noted that Black's queen, on d5 is a bad blocker.

1.	. . .	**♕d7:d5**
2.	**♗g5:e7**	**♘c6:e7**
3.	**♘f3-e5**	**♙f7-f6**

3...♕:d4? 4.♕h5! ♖f8 5.♖c4 ♕:b2 6.♘f6+ ♙:f6 7.♕:h6 ♙:e5 8.♖h4 +-.

4.	**♖c1-c7**	**♗c8-d7**

If 4...♕:d4?!, then 5.♕:d4 ♖:d4 6.♖:e7 ♙:e5 7.♙f3 ± (Keres).

5.	**♕d1-g4**	**♔g8-h7**
6.	**♘e4-c3?!**	. . .

Here 6.♘f7! ♙f5 7.♕h4 ♘g6 8.♘f6+! +- was winning.

6.	. . .	**♕d5-d6**
7.	**♖c7:d7**	**♖d8:d7**
8.	**♘e5:d7**	**♕d6:d7**
9.	**♖e1:e6**	**♙f6-f5!**
10.	**♕g4-e2**	**♘e7-c6**

Black has got enough counterplay.

No.161
Timoshchenko — Huzman
Tashkent, 1987

1. ♖a1-d1 . . .

With the idea of 2.♙d5 ♙:d5 3.♕h3 ♙g6 4.♘f4 threatening with unpleasant pressure.
1.♙d5? ♙:d5 2.♕h3 ♘e4 ∓ is bad.

1. . . . ♙g7-g6

How should White continue?

2. ♗c2-b3! . . .

After Black's move 1...♙g6 the lightsquare bishop is more useful on the a2-g8 diagonal.

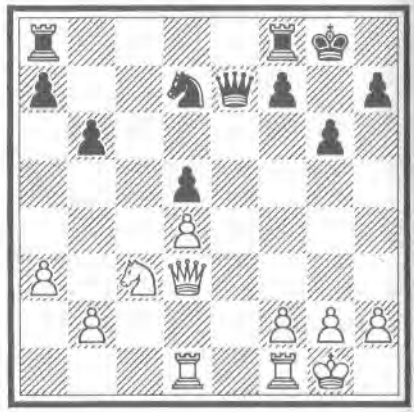
2. . . . ♘f6-d5
3. ♗b3:d5! . . .

The only way to struggle for advantage.

3. . . . ♗b7:d5?!

Black's lightsquare bishop had to defend the d5 pawn, for example 3...♙:d5 4.♗:e7 ♕:e7 5.♘f4 ♘f6 6.♙f3!? ± (6.♖fe1 ♕d6 7.♕g3 ♘e4 =).

4. ♗g5:e7 ♕d8:e7
5. ♘c3:d5 ♙e6:d5
6. ♘e2-c3± . . .



The possibility of pressure on the d5 pawn gives a slight but stable advantage to White.

6. . . . ♘d7-f6
7. ♖f1-e1 ♕e7-d6
8. ♕d3-g3! . . .

White should exchange queens, after which, the weakness of the d5 pawn in the ending becomes more appreciable.

8. . . . ♖f8-d8

8...♕:g3 9.♙h:g3 ♖fe8 10.♖e5 ♖ad8 11.♙f3 ±.

9. ♖e1-e5 . . .

Creating the threats 10.♘:d5 ♘:d5 11.♖e8+ ♔g7 12.♕:d6 +-.

9. . . .	**♔g8-g7**
10. ♕g3-f3	**. . .**

White has bound Black by defence of the d5 pawn, Black has difficulties in freeing himself from White's grip.

10. . . .	**♙h7-h5**

10...♕c6!? 11.♙g4 ♖ac8! (11...♖d7 12.♙g5 ♘h5 13.♖de1 ♕b7 14.♖:d5 ♖ad8 15.♖ee5 +-) 12.♙g5 ♘e4 13.♘:d5 ♖:d5 14.♕:e4 ♖cd8 (Timoshchenko).

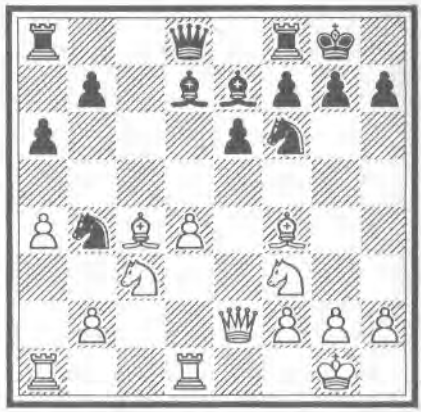
11. ♙h2-h3	**♖a8-c8**

11...♕c6?! 12.♙g4 ♙:g4 13.♙:g4 ♖d7 14.♙g5 ♘e4 15.♘:e4 ♙:e4 16.♕:e4 ±.

12. ♙g2-g4	**♙h5:g4**
13. ♙h3:g4	**♕d6-c6**
14. ♔g1-g2	**♖d8-d7**
15. ♖d1-h1	**♖c8-h8**
16. ♖h1:h8	**♔g7:h8**
17. ♙g4-g5	**♘f6-h5**
18. ♔g2-g1	**♙f7-f6**
19. ♖e5:d5	**♙f6:g5**
20. ♕f3-f8+	**♔h8-h7**
21. ♕f8-e8	**♘h5-f6**
22. ♖d5:d7+	**♕c6:d7**
23. ♕e8:d7+	**♘f6:d7**
24. ♘c3-e4	**. . .**

White's advantage in the ending is unquestionable.

No.162
Gligoric — Szabo
Hamburg, 1965



How should White continue?

1. ♘f3-e5	**♗d7-e8**

1.♙d5?! ♙:d5 2.♘b:d5 ♘:d5 3.♗:d5 ♘:d5 4.♖:d5 ♕e8! =.
1...♗c6?! 2.♘:c6! ♙:c6 3.♙a5! ♘fd5 4.♗e5 ♖e8 5.♗b3 ♗f8 6.♖dc1! ± (Gligoric — Miagmasuren, Sus. 1967).

2. ♗f4-g5!	**. . .**

To exchange the knight on f6, which controls the strategically important central d5 square.

2. . . .	**♘f6-d5**
3. ♗c4:d5!	**♘b4:d5**
4. ♘c3:d5	**♗e7:g5**

If 4...♙:d5, then 5.♗:e7 ♕:e7 6.♕f3 ±.

5. ♘d5-c3	**. . .**

White has a better development and the unpleasant threat ♙d4-d5.

5.	. . .	**♗e8-c6**
6.	**♘e5-c6**	**♙b7:c6**
7.	**♙a4-a5!**	. . .

Fixing the weakness on a6, White consolidates his positional advantage.

7.	. . .	**♗g5-e7**
8.	**♕e2-c4**	**♕d8-d6**
9.	**♘c3-a4**	**♖f8-d8**

Now White has achieved a decisive advantage.

10.	**♘a4-b6**	**♖a8-a7**
11.	**♖a1-c1**	**♕d6-b4**
12.	**♕c4:c6**	**♕b4:a5**
13.	**♙d4-d5**	**♙e6:d5**
14.	**♘b6:d5**	**♔g8-f8**
15.	**♙b2-b4**	

Black resigned.

No.163

Petursson — Sokolov A.

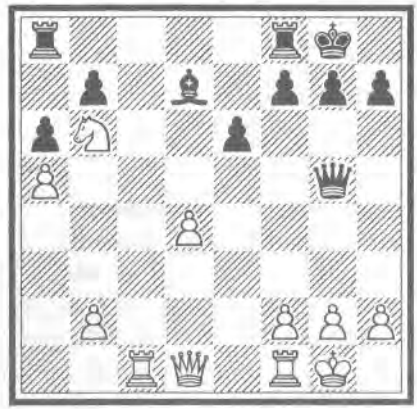
Reykjavik, 1988

If White's a5 pawn occupies the a4-square, his position would be better. The a5 pawn in this position doesn't allow White an advantage because this pawn's weakness distracts White's pieces to its defence.

1.	**♗b3:d5?**	. . .

An attempt to play for a win, leading to a worse position. An exchange of minor pieces is the best way to simplify play for White: 1.♘:d5! ♘:d5 2.♗:d5 ♗:g5 3.♘:g5 ♙:d5 4.♕d2! =.

1.	. . .	**♘f6:d5**
2.	**♘c3:d5**	**♗e7:g5**
3.	**♘f3:g5**	**♕d8:g5**
4.	**♘d5-b6**	. . .



4.	. . .	**♖a8-d8**
5.	**♖c1-c5**	. . .

Evidently White has overestimated this position. The temporary activity of White doesn't compensate for the weak d4 pawn.

5.	. . .	**♕g5-f6**
6.	**♖f1-e1**	**♗d7-c6**

Black's bishop on c6 is superior to White's knight, and it decides Black's positional advantage.

7.	**♖c5-e5**	**♖d8-d6**
8.	**♘b6-c4**	**♖d6-d5**
9.	**♕d1-d2**	. . .

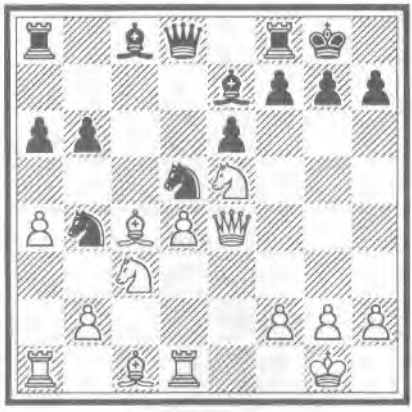
9.♘b6 ♖:e5 10.♙:e5 ♕g5 11.♙f3 ♖d8 12.♕c1 ♕d2! -+ (12...♖d2? 13.♖e2! +-).

9.	. . .	**♖f8-d8**
10.	**♖e5:d5**	**♗c6:d5**
11.	**♘c4-e5**	**♕f6-e7**
12.	**♖e1-c1**	**♕e7-d6∓**

No.164

Rashkovsky — Kupreichik

Minsk, 1985



White has to act energetically, because after 1...♗b7 the position becomes equal. How should White continue?

1.	**♘c3:d5!**	. . .

1.♘c6?! ♘:c6 2.♘:d5 ♖a7! 3.♘:e7+ ♘:e7 =.

1.	. . .	**♙e6:d5**
2.	**♕e4-f3**	**♗c8-e6**
3.	**♗c4-b3**	. . .

A pawn transformation in the centre is advantageous for White because of the following reasons: the d5 pawn is weaker than the d4 pawn and needs constant protection; Black's a6 and b6 pawns are the potential objects for a White's attack.

3.	. . .	**♖a8-c8**
4.	**♗c1-d2**	**♙f7-f6**
5.	**♘e5-d3**	. . .

5.♘g4!?, ▷♘e3.

5.	. . .	**♘b4-c6?**

5...♘:d3 6.♕:d3 ♙a5 7.♖e1 ♗f7 8.♕b5! ± is better.

6.	**♘d3-f4**	**♘c6:d4**
7.	**♕f3-e3**	**♘d4:b3**
8.	**♘f4:e6**	**♕d8-d6**

9.	**♘e6:g7!**	. . .

9.♘:f8?! ♘:a1 10.♗b4! ♘c2! 11.♕:e7 ♕:e7 12.♗:e7 ♙d4!, ▷ ♔f7††.

9.	. . .	**♔g8:g7**

9...♘:a1? 10.♘f5 +-.

10.	**♕e3:b3±**	**♖c8-c4**
11.	**♗d2-e3**	**♕d6-b4**
12.	**♕b3-d3**	**♙d5-d4?**
13.	**♗e3-d2**	**♕b4-c5**
14.	**♙b2-b3**	**♖c4-c3**
15.	**♗d2:c3**	**♙d4:c3**
16.	**♖a1-c1**	**♖f8-c8**
17.	**♕d3:a6**	**♖c8-c7**
18.	**♕a6-d3**	**♙f6-f5**
19.	**♙b3-b4**	**♕c5-c4**
20.	**♕d3:f5**	**♗e7:b4**
21.	**♕f5-e5+**	**♔g7-g8**
22.	**♖d1-d4**	**♕c4-c5**
23.	**♖d4-g4+**	

Black resigned.

No.165

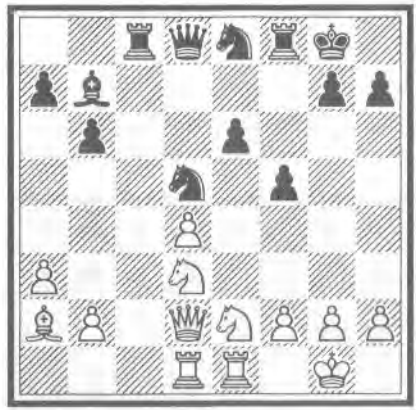
Petrosian T. — Najdorf

Moscow, 1967

As a result of piece pressure on the kingside White forced Black by ♙f7-f5 to weaken the e6 pawn. Now White is regrouping his forces to put pressure on the e6 pawn.

1.	**♗b1-a2!**	**♘a6-c7**
2.	**♘c3-e2**	**♗e7-g5**
3.	**♕h3-d3**	**♗g5:d2**
4.	**♕d3:d2**	**♘c7-e8**
5.	**♘e5-d3!±**	. . .

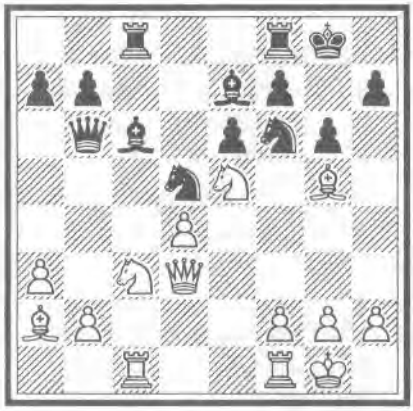
▷♘ef4.



5.	. . .	**♙g7-g5**
6.	**♘e2-c3**	**♘e8-g7**
7.	**♘c3:d5**	**♗b7:d5**
8.	**♗a2:d5**	**♙e6:d5**
9.	**♖e1-e5±**	. . .

White's advantage is unquestionable.

No.166
De Groot — Sholtens
The Netherlands, 1938



Black's pieces have no proper coordination at the moment.

How should White continue?

1. ♗a2:d5! ♙e6:d5

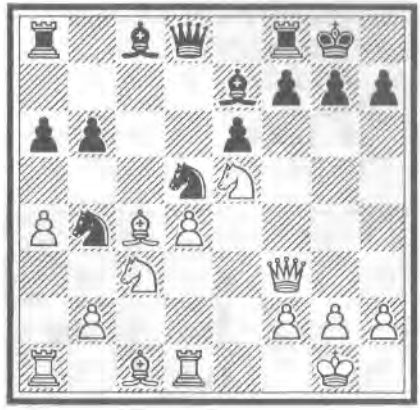
1...♗:d5? 2.♗:f6 ♗:f6 3.♘d7 +-.

2. ♕d3-f3 ♕b6-d8
3. ♖f1-e1 ♔g8-g7

4. ♘e5-g4! ♘f6:g4
5. ♗g5:e7 ♕d8-d7
6. ♗e7:f8+ ♖c8:f8
7. ♕f3-f4+- . . .

With a decisive advantage.

No.167
Pinter — Korchnoi
Warsaw, 1980



Black wants to play 1...♗b7, keeping piece control of the d5 point. How should White continue?

1. ♘c3:d5! . . .

1.♕g3!? ♔h8 2.♕h3±.

1. . . . ♙e6:d5
2. ♗c4-b3 . . .

The weakness of the d5 pawn, the vulnerability of the a6 and b6 pawns and activity of white pieces give a stable initiative to White.

2. . . . ♗c8-e6
3. ♗c1-d2 ♙f7-f6
4. ♘e5-g4 . . .

4.♘d3!? ♘:d3 5.♕:d3±.

4. . . .	**♘b4-c6**
5. ♗d2-c3	**♕d8-d7**
6. ♙h2-h3	**♖a8-d8**
7. ♕f3-e2	**♙a6-a5**
8. ♖d1-e1	**♗e6-f7**
9. ♕e2-f3	**♔g8-h8**
10. ♘g4-e3	**♖f8-e8**
11. ♗b3-c2	**. . .**

Transferring the bishop to a more active position.

11.. . .	**♗e7-f8**
12. ♗c2-d3	**♕d7-d6**
13. ♙h3-h4!	**. . .**

Seizing space on the kingside.

13.. . .	**♘c6-b4**
14. ♘e3-f5	**♕d6-c7**
15. ♗d3-b5	**♘b4-c2**
16. ♖e1:e8	**♗f7:e8**
17. ♖a1-c1	**♘c2-b4**
18. ♗c3-d2	**♕c7-f7**

18...♕b7? 19.♕g3! ♗:b5 20.♖c7 ♕b8 21.♙:b5 ♖c8 22.♖:g7! ♕:g3 23.♖:g3 ♖c2 24.♗h6! +-.

19. ♗d2:b4	**♙a5:b4**
20. ♘f5-e3	**♔h8-g8**
21. ♙b2-b3	**♗e8:b5**
22. ♙a4:b5	**♕f7-e6**
23. ♖c1-c6	**♕e6-e4**
24. ♕f3:e4	**♙d5:e4**
25. ♖c6:b6	**♖d8:d4**
26. ♖b6-b8	**♔g8-f7**
27. ♙b5-b6	**. . .**

The advanced d-pawn decides the outcome of the struggle in White's favour.

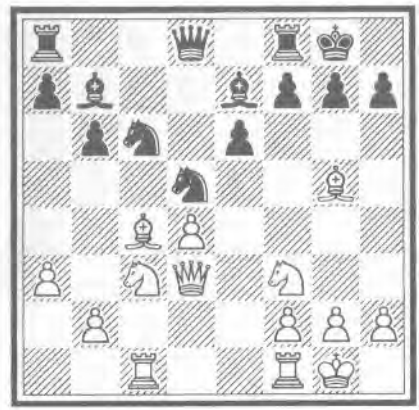
27.. . .	**♖d4-d7**
28. ♖b8-c8	**♗f8-d6**
29. ♘e3-c4	**♔f7-e6**
30. ♔g1-f1	**♗d6-e5**
31. ♔f1-e2	**♗e5-d4**
32. ♖c8-b8	**♔e6-f5**
33. ♙b6-b7	**. . .**

Black resigned because of the possible continuation 33...♗a7 34.♖a8 ♖:b7 35.♘d6+.

No.168

Ivanchuk — Karpov

Linares, 1991



Black intends to decrease the pressure of White's pieces by exchanging. How should White continue?

1. ♗c4:d5! **♙e6:d5?!**

1...♗:g5 2.♘:g5 ♕:g5 3.♗c4 ♙f5 4.♗f3 ♖fd8 5.♕e3! ♕:e3 6.♙fe± is better (Ivanchuk).

2. ♗g5:e7 **♘c6:e7**
3. ♖f1-e1 **♖a8-c8**

White has a slight but steady advantage. Black's problems are caused by the d5 pawn, which limits the activity of his pieces.

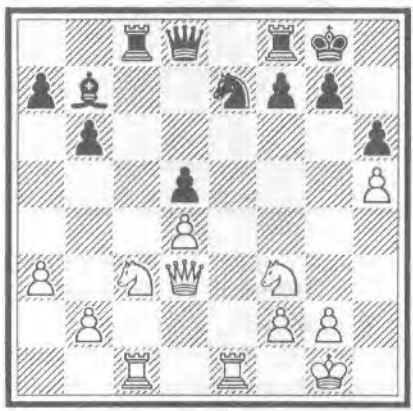
4. ♙h2-h4! **. . .**

White captures the space on the kingside and limits the mobility of the black knight.

4. . . . **♙h7-h6**

Played to prevent possible 5.♘g5.

5. ♙h4-h5 **. . .**



5. . . . **♖c8-c7**
6. ♘c3-b5!? **♖c7:c1**
7. ♖e1:c1 **♗b7-a6?!**

Although Black's bishop is not too active, it performs an important defensive function. 7...♘c6 would have been better, preventing 8.♘e5.

8. ♙a3-a4 **♗a6:b5?**

8...♕b8! 9.♘e5 ♖c8 10.♖e1 ♗:b5 11.♙:b5 ♕d6 12.♕f3 ♕f6! 13.♕:f6 ♙:f6 14.♘g4 ♘f5 15.♘:f6+ ♔g7 16.♘:d5 ♘:d4 = (Ivanchuk).

9. ♕d3:b5 **♘e7-f5**
10. ♙g2-g3 **♘f5-e7**
11. ♘f3-e5 **♕d8-d6**
12. ♕b5-a6?! **. . .**

Providing his opponent with counterplay. 12.♔g2! would have been better.

12. . . . **♘e7-f5?!**

12...♕b4! 13.♕d3! ♖c8 14.♖:c8+ ♘:c8 15.♕f3 ♕e1+ 16.♔g2 ♕e4↑↓.

13. ♕a6-d3! **♘f5-e7**
14. ♕d3-f3 **♙a7-a5**
15. ♔g1-g2 **♙f7-f6**
16. ♘e5-d3 **♖f8-c8**
17. ♖c1-e1 **♖c8-c4**
18. ♘d3-f4? **. . .**

18.♕e3! ♔f7 19.♙b3 ♖c7 20.♘f4±.

18. . . . **♖c4:d4**
19. ♘f4-g6 **♘e7:g6**

20.	**♙h5:g6**	**♔g8-f8**
21.	**♕f3-f5**	**♖d4-c4**
22.	**♙g3-g4?!**	. . .

Black lost time. After 22...♖c5 White kept approximate equality: 23.♕e6 ♕:e6 24.♖:e6 ♖c4 25.♔f3 ♖:a4 26.♖:b6 ♖b4 27.♖a6 ♖b3+ 28.♔g2 ♖b4 =.

No.169
Tal — Psakhis
Sochi, 1982

To complete the development of his pieces Black has to resolve the problem of the bishop at c8. There are two plans: 1) 1...♙b5 and 2) 1...♘:c3 2.♙:c3 ♙b5.

Variation 1... ♙b5

In this variation it is necessary to estimate the consequences of the move 2.♗:d5, which leads to a small but steady advantage for White.

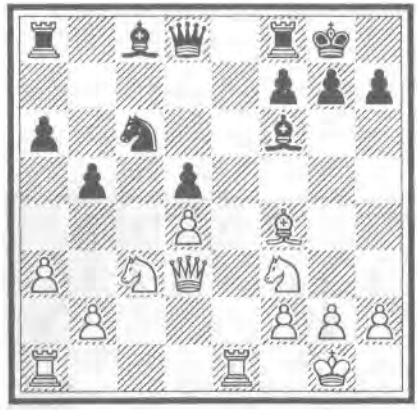
1.	. . .	**♙b7-b5**
2.	**♗c4:d5**	**♙e6:d5**
3.	**♕d1-d3!**	. . .

Eliminating the threat of pinning 3...♗g4.

3.	. . .	**♗e7-f6**

After 3...♗g4 will follow 4.♘e5, provoking exchanges 4...♘:e5 5.♖:e5 ♗e6 6.♗f4 ♕d7 (6...♗d6 7.♖h5! ♙g6 8.♗:d6 ♕:d6 9.♖e5 ±) 7.♖ae1±. In such positions White should exchange a pair of minor pieces and preserve his knight against the opponent's bad lightsquare bishop. Then Black is faced with a cheerless defence.

4.	**♗c1-f4**	. . .



4.	. . .	**♗c8-g4**
5.	**♘f3-e5**	**♗f6:e5!**
6.	**♙d4:e5**	. . .

6.♗:e5 is bad because of 6...♕d7 =.

6.	. . .	**♙d5-d4**
7.	**♘c3-e4**	**♗g4-f5**
8.	**♖a1-c1**	**♘c6-a5**

8...♕d7?! 9.♘c5 ♗:d3 10.♘:d7 ♖fd8 11.♘b6 +-.
8...♖c8 9.♕f3 ♗:e4 10.♕:e4 ♕d7 11.♖c5 ±.

9.	**♙e5-e6**	. . .

White seeks his advantage in complications.

9.	. . .	**♖a8-a7?!**

9...♕d5! 10.♙e7 ♖fe8 11.♕f3 ♗:e4 12.♕:e4 ♕:e4 13.♖:e4 ♙d3 14.♗d6± was necessary.

10.	**♕d3-g3**	**♙f7:e6**
11.	**♗f4-c7**	**♕d8-a8**
12.	**♗c7-b6**	**♖a7-e7**
13.	**♗b6:a5**	**♗f5:e4**
14.	**♗a5-b4**	

Black resigned.

A more complicated position appears after 1...♘:c3 2.♙:c3 ♙b5.

Variation 1...♘:c3

1.	. . .	**♘d5:c3**
2.	**♙b2:c3**	**♙b7-b5**

Black passes to the position with a hanging c3+d4 pawn pair. According to this plan White's d4 pawn becomes stronger, it gives him a free hand to play on the kingside. Black has his counterchances, based on the play against the weakened White's queenside.

3.	**♗c4-d3**	. . .

3.♗a2!? ♗b7 4.♕d3 ♘a5 5.♙a4! deserves serious attention. For example: 5...♗d5 6.♙:b5 ♙:b5 7.♗b1 ♙f5?! (stronger is cool 7...♙g6) 8.♕:b5 ♘c4 9.♖:a8 ♕:a8 10.♗f4 ♕a3 11.♙h4 (the hasty 11.♕d7 does not bring success because of 11...♘b6 12.♕c7 ♘a8 13.♕d7 ♘b6=) 11...♕:c3 12.♕d7 ♕b4 (12...♗f6 13.♖:e6 ♗:e6 14.♕:e6 ♔h8 15.♕:f5 ±) 13.♖:e6! ♗:e6 14.♕:e6+ ♔h8 15.♗a2 ♗d6 16.♗g5 (16.♘g5 ♙g6! 17.♘f7+ ♖:f7 18.♕:f7 ♕e1+) 16...♘b2 17.♗d2 ♕b8 18.♘g5 ♗:h2+ 19.♔h1 ♖f6 20.♘f7+ and White soon won (Nicolic — Djuric, Yugoslavia, 1983).

3.	. . .	**♗c8-b7**
4.	**♙h2-h4!**	**♘c6-a5**

The sacrifice of a pawn is dangerous to accept 4...♗:h4 5.♘:h4 ♕:h4 because of 6.♖c3 with a dangerous initiative. For example 6...♙g6 (6...♙h6 7.♖h3 ♕f6 8.♕g4 (▷ ♗:h6) ♔h8 9.♗g5 +-) 7.♖g3 (▷ ♗g5) ♕e7 8.♕h5↑

5.	**♗d3-c2!**	. . .

White has weakened the b3 square, as demonstrated by the variation

5.♘g5 ♙h6 6.♕h5 ♘b3! and Black repulses the attack.

5. . . .	**♘a5-c4**
6. ♘f3-g5	**♗e7:g5**

6...♙h6? 7.♕d3 +-; or 6...♙g6? 7.♕g4 ± is bad.

7. ♙h4:g5	. . .

6.♗:g5 ♕d7 (6...♕d5 7.♕g4 ♙f5 8.♕g3 ±) 7.♙h5 ♙f5↑↓ deserved attention with a complicated position.

7. . . .	**♙f7-f5!**

This perfect move enables Black to parry the attack.

8. ♙g5:f6	**♕d8:f6**
9. ♙f2-f4	. . .

8.♕e2? ♙e5!

9. . . .	**♖a8-e8**
10. ♕d1-h5	**♙g7-g6**
11. ♕h5-h3	**♙e6-e5!**
12. ♙d4:e5	**♕f6-b6+**
13. ♗c1-e3	. . .

13.♔h2? ♕f2!

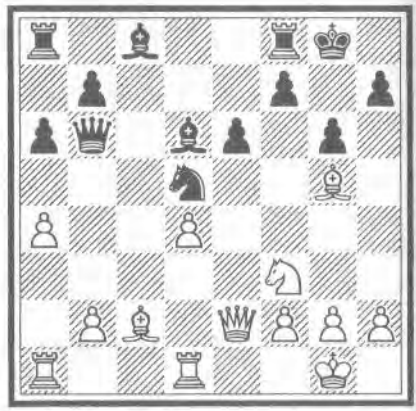
13.. . .	**♘c4:e3**
14. ♕h3:e3	**♕b6:e3+**
15. ♖e1:e3	**♖f8:f4**

The chances of both sides are completely equal.

No.170

Srokowski — Staic

Pancevo, 1993



Black has only to play ♗c8-d7-c6 to get into good position. The queen is misplaced on b6, where it doesn't cooperate with minor pieces, and the dark squares on the kingside are weakened. White uses his advantage in development to seize the initiative.

1. ♗c2-e4!	. . .

White wants to exchange Black's pride — his knight at d5, and then the weakness of the dark squares around the king will be more perceptible.

1. . . .	**♗c8-d7**
2. ♘f3-e5	**♕b6-c7**

2...♗c6 3.♗:d5 ♙:d5 4.♘g4±↑.

3. ♖a1-c1	**♗d7-c6**
4. ♗e4:d5	**♙e6:d5**

5. ♘e5-g4± . . .

Exploiting the weakness of the black king's position and the inability of black pieces to help their monarch, White is beginning a strong attack.

5. . . . ♙h7-h5

If 5...♗f4, then 6.♘f6+ ♔g7 7.♘:d5 ♗:h2+ 8.♔h1 ♕d6 9.♗f6+ +-.

6. ♘g4-f6+ ♔g8-g7
7. ♕e2-e3!+- ♖f8-d8
8. ♖d1-e1 . . .

▷ 9.♘:h5+ ♙:h5 10.♗f6+ ♔:f6 11.♕h6+ ♔f5 12.♕:h5+ ♔f6 13.♕h6+ ♔f5 14.♙h3+- ▷♙g2-g4#.

8. . . . ♔g7-h8
9. ♘f6:h5! ♙f7-f5

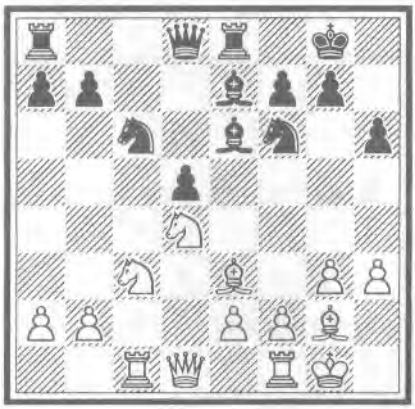
If 9...♙:h5, then 10.♗f6+ ♔h7 11.♕g5 ♗f8 12.♕:h5+ ♗h6 13.♖e7 +-.

10. ♘h5-f6 . . .

Black resigned because of the possible variation 10...♔g7 11.♗h6+ ♔h8 (11...♔:f6 12.♕e6#) 12.♕h3 +-.

Subject: Transforming pawn structure after the K:e6 (e3) move.

No.171
Spassky — Xu Jun
Dubai, 1986



1. ♘d4:e6 ♙f7:e6

2. ♙f2-f4 . . .

Find the best continuation for Black.

2. . . . ♕d8-d7!
3. ♗e3-f2 ♖e8-d8!

Exactly by this rook! All Black's manoeuvres serve the main task: to have the possibility of reply ♙d5-d4 to the move ♙e2-e4, preventing the opening of play in the centre.

4. ♕d1-a4 . . .

If 4.♙e4, then 4...♙d4 ∓.

4. . . . ♙a7-a6

Black prepares ♙b7-b5 with space seizure on the queenside.

5. ♖f1-d1 . . .

5.♗b6!? ♖dc8 6.♖fd1 ♗d8 7.♗:d8 (7.♗f2 ♙b5) ♖:d8 8.♙e4 ♘e7 9.♕:d7 ♖:d7 10.♙:d5 ♙:d5 11.♘a4 ± deserved serious attention. White keeps a slight positional advantage.

5. . . . ♙b7-b5
6. ♕a4-c2 ♖a8-c8
7. ♕c2-b1 . . .

7.♙e4? ♙d4 8.♙e5 ♘h7! 9.♘e4 ♘:e5 was mistaken.

7. . . . ♗e7-b4
8. ♘c3-e4 . . .

8.♙e4!? ♘e7 9.♙e5 ♘h7 (▷ ♗:c3) 10.♘e2 ½.

8. . . . ♘f6:e4
9. ♗g2:e4 ♘c6-e7
10. ♗e4-f3 . . .

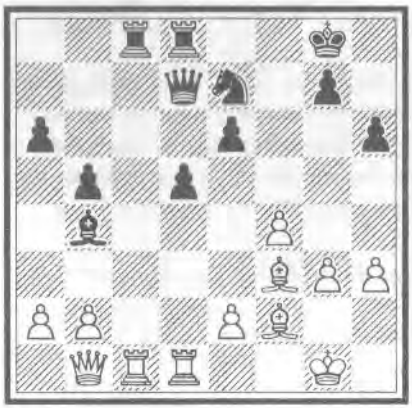
And now 10...♕d6 11.♙e4 ♗c5! 12.♙:d5 ♙:d5 kept the balance. The possibility of Black's counterplay is based on the rule: the effective way to struggle with a pair of bishops is, the exchange of one of them, to have a counterplay on the squares of the same colour as the exchanged bishop.

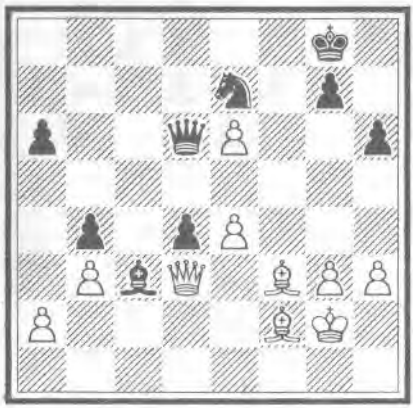
The game was as follows:

10. . . . ♖c8:c1
11. ♖d1:c1 ♖d8-c8
12. ♔g1-g2 ♖c8-c4
13. ♙b2-b3 ♖c4-c3
14. ♖c1:c3 ♗b4:c3
15. ♕b1-d3 ♕d7-c6
16. ♙e2-e4 . . .

The exchange of all rooks turned out to White's advantage, who seeks to open play in the centre and to use the force of two bishops in the open position.

16. . . . ♙b5-b4
17. ♙f4-f5 ♙d5-d4
18. ♙f5:e6 ♕c6-d6

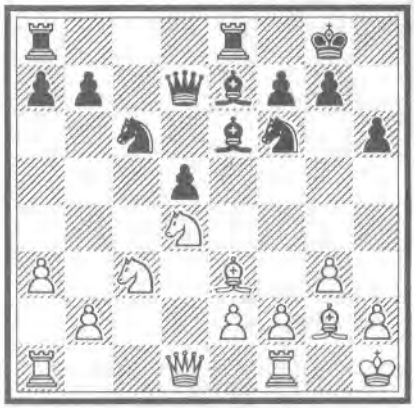




19.	**♙e4-e5!**	**♕d6:e6**
20.	**♗f2:d4**	**♗c3:d4**
21.	**♕d3:d4**	**♘e7-f5**
22.	**♕d4-c5**	**♘f5-e7**
23.	**♗f3-e4**	**♙g7-g6**
24.	**♙g3-g4**	**♔g8-f7**
25.	**♔g2-f3**	**♔f7-g7**
26.	**♔f3-e3**	**♔g7-f7**
27.	**♕c5-d6**	**♕e6:d6**
28.	**♙e5:d6**	

Black resigned.

No.172
Smyslov — Kasparov
Vilnius, 1984



How should White continue?

1.	**♘d4:e6!**	**♙f7:e6**
2.	**♙f2-f4!**	**. . .**

White strives to realize his plan of transferring the darksquare bishop to g1, and then by the advance of ♙e2-e4 or ♙f4-f5 to open play to use the strength of his two bishops.

2.	**. . .**	**♖e8-d8**

2...♙d4? 3.♘e4! +-.

3.	**♗e3-g1**	**♖a8-c8**
4.	**♕d1-a4**	**♔g8-h8**
5.	**♖a1-d1**	**. . .**

White completed the mobilization of his pieces, he is ready to advance ♙e2-e4.

5.	**. . .**	**♕d7-e8**
6.	**♙e2-e4**	**♙d5-d4**

Black has imagination when it comes to defence. 7.♗:d4? ♙b5 -+.

7.	**♘c3-e2**	**. . .**

In case 7.♙e5 ♙:c3 8.♙:f6 ♗:f6 9.♙:c3 ♕e7! Black has sufficient counterplay.

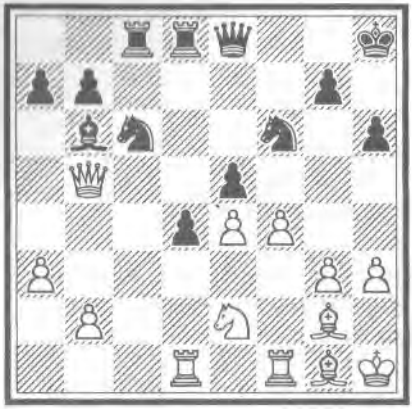
7.	**. . .**	**♗e7-c5**
8.	**♕a4-b5**	**. . .**

8.♙b4? ♙d3! 9.♘c1 ♗:g1 10.♔:g1 ♙d2 11.♘b3 ♘g4! 12.♖:d2 ♖:d2 13.♘:d2 ♕d8! -+ is hasty.

8.	**. . .**	**♗c5-b6**
9.	**♙h2-h3**	**. . .**

Preventing ♘g4. After 9.♙e5 ♘g4 10.♗f3 ♘e3 11.♗:e3 ♙:e3 12.♖d6 ♖:d6 13.♙:d6 ♖d8 14.♖d1 ♙e5! Black has sufficient counterplay.

9.	**. . .**	**♙e6-e5**



And now 10.♗g1-h2 followed by ♙g3-g4 preserves White's advantage.

The game was as follows...

10.♙f4:e5	**♘c6:e5**
11.♕b5:e8+	**. . .**

11.♘:d4?! ♕:b5 12.♘:b5 ♖:d1! 13.♖:d1 ♖c2 with sufficient counterplay because of the active disposition of Black's pieces.

11. . .	**♖d8:e8**
12.♘e2:d4	**♘e5-c4**
13.♙e4-e5	**♖e8:e5**
14.♗g2:b7	**♖c8-c7**
15.♖d1-c1	**♘c4:b2**
16.♖c1:c7	**♗b6:c7**
17.♘d4-c6	**♖e5-e2**
18.♘c6-d4	**♖e2-e5**
19.♘d4-f5	**♗c7-b6**
20.♘f5:h6	**♖e5-a5**
21.♗g1:b6	**♙a7:b6**
22.♘h6-f5	**♖a5:a3**
23.♔h1-h2	**♘b2-c4**
24.♙g3-g4	**♖a3-a7**
25.♗b7-h1	**♘c4-e5**
26.♙g4-g5	**. . .**

26.♖e1!?

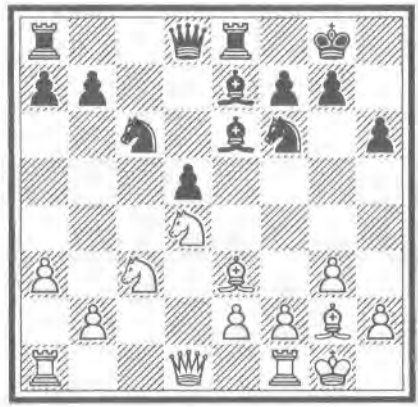
26. . .	**♘f6-h5**
27.♖f1-e1	**♖a7-a5**

A draw.

No.173

Smyslov — Kasparov

Vilnius, 1984



1. ♘d4:e6	**♙f7:e6**
2. ♕d1-a4	**. . .**

White's plan lays in the gradual preparation of ♙e2-e4. If Black cannot counterplay, his position will be doubtful.

2. . . .	**♖a8-c8**
3. ♖a1-d1	**♔g8-h8**

Useful prophylaxis, which allows the removal of the king away from the a8-g8 diagonal, where it can be attacked.

4. ♔g1-h1	**. . .**

The white king has vacated the g1 square for the white bishop. After preliminary ♙f2-f4 and ♗e3-g1, White plans to open play in the centre by ♙e2-e4 or ♙f4-f5 and to use the strength of his two bishops.

4.	. . .	**♙a7-a6**
5.	**♙f2-f4**	**♘c6-a5**

Black transfers his knight to c4 in order to organize counterplay.

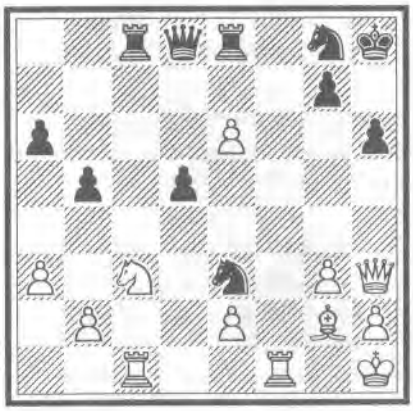
6.	**♙f4-f5**	**♙b7-b5**

If 6...♘c4?, then 7.♗c1 and Black's centre falls in.
6...♖c4? 7.♕c2 ♙e5 8.♕d2! ♙d4 9.♗:h6 ♙:h6 10.♕:h6+ ♔g8 11.♙g4 is not enough and White's attack is very dangerous.

7.	**♕a4-h4**	**♘f6-g8!**

7...♘c4? 8.♗:h6! ♘h7 9.♕h5 ♙:h6 10.♙:e6 ♘e3 11.♖f7 +-.

8.	**♕h4-h3**	**♘a5-c4**
9.	**♗e3-c1**	**♗e7-g5!**
10.	**♙f5:e6**	**♗g5:c1**
11.	**♖d1:c1**	**♘c4-e3**



Black has repulsed the first wave of the attack.

12.	**♘c3:d5**	. . .

The only way to support a dying initiative.

12.	. . .	**♘e3:f1**

12...♖:c1? 13.♖:c1 ♘:d5 is bad because of 14.♖d1 ♘gf6 15.♗:d5 ♘:d5 16.♙e4 ±

13.	**♖c1:f1**	**♖e8-f8**

After the playable 14.♗e4 White's activity compensates for his missing material.

14.	**♘d5-f4?!**	**♘g8-e7**
15.	**♕h3-g4**	. . .

It was better to play 15.♕h5!?, preventing ♙g7-g5.

15.	. . .	**♙g7-g5**
16.	**♕g4-h3**	**♖f8-f6**
17.	**♘f4-d3**	**♖f6:f1+**
18.	**♗g2:f1**	**♔h8-g7**
19.	**♕h3-g4**	**♕d8-d5+**
20.	**♙e2-e4**	**♕d5-d4**
21.	**♙h2-h4**	**♖c8-f8**
22.	**♗f1-e2**	**♕d4-e3**
23.	**♔h1-g2**	**♘e7-g6**
24.	**♙h4-h5**	**♘g6-e7**
25.	**♙b2-b4**	**♔g7-h7**
26.	**♔g2-h2**	**♖f8-d8**
27.	**♙e4-e5**	**♖d8:d3**
28.	**♗e2:d3+**	**♕e3:d3**

White resigned.

No.174
Seirawan — Kortchnoi
Buenos Aires, 1993

1. ♘d4:e6 . . .

Trying to seize the initiative, White has captured, with his knight, Black's bishop at e6. But Black has opened the f-file and placed minor pieces well, so he can offer resistance.

1. . . . ♙f7:e6
2. ♕c2-b3 . . .

Perhaps it was necessary to start the counterplay immediately: 2.♔h1 ♖ac8 3.♙f4 ♘c4 4.♗:c4 ♖:c4 5.♕d3 ♖fc8 6.♖ce1 with the following ♙e3-e4.

2. . . . ♖f8-f7
3. ♘c3-d1?! . . .

The move is too artificial — now the f2-pawn is well protected, but White has no real play.

3. . . . ♖a8-f8
4. ♖c1-c3 ♕f6-g5!
5. ♕b3-c2 ♘e5-c6!

Closing the c-file and avoiding the exchange of rooks.

6. ♙a2-a3 ♙h6-h5!
7. ♕c2-c1 . . .

White planned 7.♗:a6, but he saw 7...♙d4! just now and his position falls apart.

7. . . . ♙h5-h4!

Black continues his attack on the kingside, and now there is no relief in 8.♗:a6 ♙h3 9.♙g3 ♙:a6 10.♖:c6 ♕g4 11.♙f4 ♙e5! with strong threats from Black.

8. ♔g1-h1 ♗a7-b8
9. ♖c3-c2 . . .

Now after 9.♗:a6 Black continued 9...♙h3 10.♙g3 ♙d4! 11.♙:d4 ♕d5+.

9. . . . ♕g5-e5
10. ♙f2-f4 ♙g7-g5!

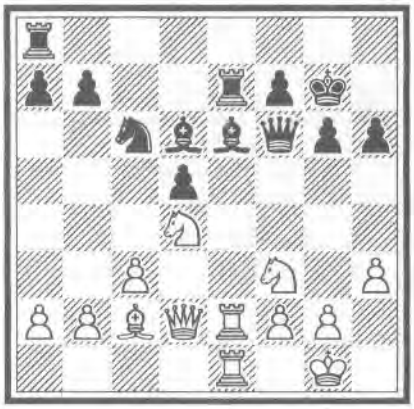
The final blow on the kingside — now after 11.♙g3 Black will play 11...♕h8!↑.

11. ♗e2-h5 ♖f7-f6
12. ♙g2-g3 ♙g5:f4
13. ♗h5-g4 ♙f4:g3
14. ♖f1:f6 ♕e5:f6
15. ♘d1-c3 ♕f6-f1+

16. ♕c1:f1	**♖f8:f1+**
17. ♔h1-g2	**♙g3:h2**

White resigned.

No.175
Yusupov — Vaganian
USSR, 1987



White's pieces occupy strong central positions, but Black's position is strong enough. How can White increase pressure?

1. ♗c2-a4!	**♖a8-c8**

1...♘:d4!? 2.♘:d4 ♙a6 3.♕d3±.

2. ♗a4:c6!	**♙b7:c6**
3. ♘d4:e6+!	**♙f7:e6**

3...♖:e6? 4.♖:e6 ♙:e6 5.♕e3 +- ×a7,e6.

White has transformed his pressure onto the blockade of Black's centre, which gives him a stable advantage.

4. ♘f3-e5	. . .

Intending to ♘e5-g4.

4. . . .	**♙h6-h5**
5. ♕d2-d3!	. . .

▷5...♙c5? 6.♕a6 +-.

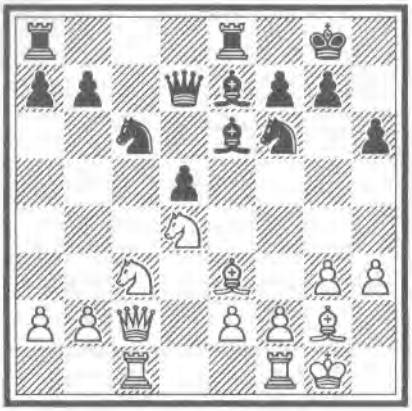
5. . . .	**♗d6-c5**
6. ♙b2-b4	**♗c5-b6**
7. ♙a2-a4	. . .

Threatening 8.♙a5 ♗d8 9.♕d4!±.

7. . . .	**♕f6-f5?**
8. ♙a4-a5	**♕f5:d3**
9. ♘e5:d3	**♗b6-d8**
10. ♘d3-c5+-	**♙e6-e5**
11. ♖e2:e5	**♖e7:e5**
12. ♖e1:e5	**♗d8-f6**
13. ♖e5-e3	**♔g7-f7**
14. ♘c5-d7	**♗f6-g7**
15. ♘d7-e5+	**♔f7-f6**
16. ♔g1-f1	**♔f6-f5**
17. ♙g2-g4+!	**♙h5:g4**
18. ♙h3:g4+	**♔f5-g5**
19. ♔f1-e2	**♙c6-c5**
20. ♙b4:c5	**♖c8:c5**
21. ♙f2-f4+	**♔g5-h4**
22. ♔e2-f3	**♗g7:e5**
23. ♙f4:e5	**♖c5-c8**
24. ♙e5-e6	**♖c8-f8+**
25. ♔f3-e2	**♔h4:g4**
26. ♔e2-d3	**♔g4-g5**
27. ♔d3-d4	**♔g5-f6**
28. ♖e3-f3+	**♔f6-e7**
29. ♖f3:f8	**♔e7:f8**
30. ♔d4:d5	**♙g6-g5**
31. ♔d5-d6	**♔f8-e8**
32. ♙c3-c4	

Black resigned.

No.176
Hjartarson — Illescas
Linares, 1988



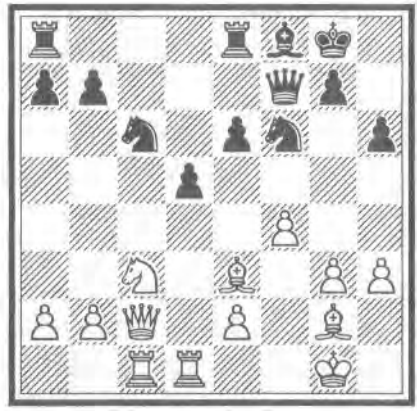
1. ♘d4:e6 ♙f7:e6
2. ♖f1-d1 . . .

White prepares to play ♙f2-f4, ♗e3-f2 followed by ♙e2-e4 or ♙f4-f5 to open the position, where two white bishops will be especially strong.

2. . . . ♗e7-f8

If 2...♖ac8?!, then 3.♙f4 ♗d6 4.♗f2 ♕e7 5.♙e4 ± ♘b4 (5...♙d4 6.♙e5 ±) 6.♕b3 ♗c5 7.♗:c5 ♕:c5+ 8.♔h2 and White has a clear advantage (Marin — Petursson, 1987).

3. ♙f2-f4 ♕d7-f7!



Black's queen avoids the opposition with the white rook on d1.

4. ♗e3-f2 ♖a8-d8
5. ♙e2-e4 ♙d5-d4

Black copes with the task: he prevents the opening of the position.

6. ♘c3-b5 ♙e6-e5
7. ♙f4:e5 ♙d4-d3

Tactics serve strategy here!

8. ♕c2-c3 . . .

8.♖:d3? ♘b4 -+.

8. . . . ♘c6:e5

8...♖:e5?! 9.♘:a7 ♘:e4 10.♗:e4 ♖:e4 11.♖:d3 ♖:d3 12.♕:d3 ±.

9. ♗f2-d4 ♕f7-h5
10. ♘b5-c7 ♖e8:e7
11. ♗d4:e5 ♕h5:e5

Black plays well.

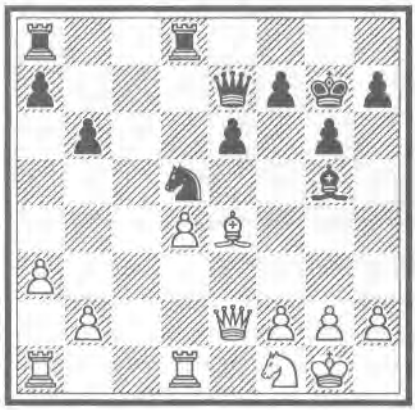
12. ♘c7-d5 . . .

If 12.♕:e5, then 12...♖:e5 13.♘d5 ♘:e4 ∓.

12.	. . .	**♕e5:g3**
13.	**♘d5:e7+**	**♗f8:e7+**

After sacrificing exchange, Black has excellent play.

No.177
Braga — Karpov
Mar del Plata, 1982



The position is roughly equal and White could keep balance, continuing 1.♙g3 with the following ♙h4, ♘f1-h2-f3.

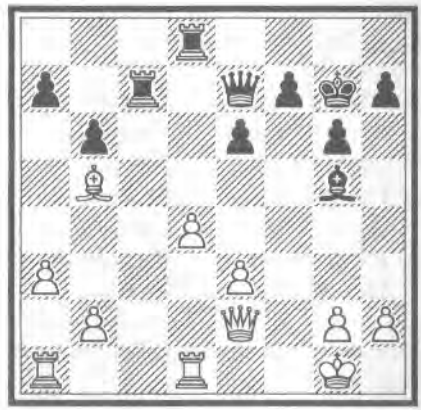
1.	**♘f1-e3?!**	**♘d5:e3!**
2.	**♙f2:e3**	**♖a8-c8**

Black has a slight advantage. The presence of opposite coloured bishops is advantageous for Black because his bishop is more active than White's and the presence of major pieces emphasizes this fact. The weakness of the e3 pawn is also important in assessing the position.

3.	**♗e4-d3**	. . .

3.♖ac1? ♖:c1 4.♖:c1 ♖:d4 ∓ was mistaken.

3.	. . .	**♖c8-c7**
4.	**♗d3-b5**	. . .



4.	. . .	**♙e6-e5**

Black strives to open play in the centre by advancing his e-pawn and increase the scope of his dark-square bishop.

5.	**♙d4:e5**	. . .

5.♙d5? ♕c5 ∓ was mistaken.

5.	. . .	**♖d8:d1+**
6.	**♖a1:d1**	**♖c7-c5**
7.	**♙e3-e4**	**♖c5:e5**
8.	**♗b5-d3**	**♙h7-h5**

Black's plan includes the creation of a second weakness because the e4 pawn is not enough. The advance of the h-pawn also allows establishment of control over the dark squares.

9.	**♕e2-f3**	**♙h5-h4**

10. ♖d1-f1	**♗g5-f6**
11. ♙b2-b3	**♙b6-b5**

Taking away the c4 square from the lightsquare bishop. If 11...♖c5?!, then 12.♗c4 and the bishop is transferred to d5 and the position is almost equalized.

12. ♔g1-h1	**♖e5-c5**
13. ♕f3-e2	**♖c5-e5**
14. ♕e2-f3	**♙a7-a5**
15. ♙a3-a4	**♙b5:a4**
16. ♙b3:a4	**♖e5-c5**
17. ♗d3-b5	**♖c5-c3**
18. ♕f3-f4	**♙h4-h3**

Black achieves his aim! The second weakness is created.

19. ♖f1-f3	**♙h3:g2+**
20. ♔h1:g2	**♗f6-e5**
21. ♕f4-g4	**♖c3-c2+**
22. ♖f3-f2	**♖c2:f2+**
23. ♔g2:f2	**♗e5:h2**
24. ♔f2-g2	**♗h2-e5**
25. ♗b5-c6	**♕e7-c5**
26. ♗c6-b5	**♗e5-f6**
27. ♔g2-g3	**♕c5-c2**
28. ♔g3-f3	**♗f6-d4**
29. ♕g4-g3	**♕c2-d2**
30. ♔f3-g4	**♕d2-d1+**
31. ♕g3-f3	**♕d1-g1+**
32. ♕f3-g3	**♕g1-h1**
33. ♕g3-f3	**♕h1-h2**
34. ♗b5-c4	**♗d4-f6**
35. ♕f3-d3	**♕h2-g2+**
36. ♔g4-f4	**♕g2-f2+**
37. ♔f4-g4	**♗f6-e5**
38. ♕d3-f3	**♕f2-g1+**

White resigned.

No.178

Petrosian T. — Gulko

Erevan, 1976

The weakness of the d5 pawn may scarcely be used. At the same time the c3 pawn needs protection. Black threatens to put pressure on the c3 pawn after ♘e6-c5-e4. How should White continue?

1. ♘d4:e6!	**. . .**

White escapes danger by the exchange of knights. Now after playable ♙c3-c4 White's position will be preferable because of the presence of pawn weaknesses in Black's camp.

1. . . .	**♙f7:e6**
2. ♘f3-d2!	**♖b8-d8**

If 2...♖bc8, then 3.♖c2, ▷ 4.♙c4.

3. ♙c3-c4!	**♙a6-a5**
4. ♙c4:d5	**♗b7:d5**
5. ♗g2:d5	**♖d8:d5**
6. ♕d3-g6	**♖d5-d8**

7.	**♖b2-c2**	**♕c7-d7**
8.	**♘d2-c4**	**♗f8-c5**
9.	**♘c4:a5**	**♗c5:e3**
10.	**♘a5-c6**	**♗e3-d4**

10...♖c8 11.♘e5 ♕d4 12.♖:c8 ♕:a1+ 13.♔g2 ♖:c8 14.♕:e6+ ♔h7 15.♕f5+ +-.

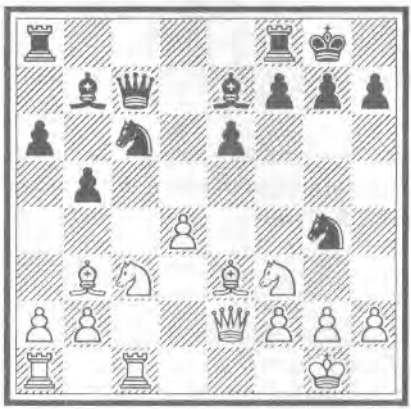
11.	**♖a1-c1**	**♖d8-a8**
12.	**♘c6:d4**	**♕d7:d4**
13.	**♖c2-c4**	**♕d4-e5**
14.	**♕g6-b1**	. . .

White's advantage is decided by his superior pawn structure (two pawn "islands" against three Black "islands"), but its realization is not so simple.

No.179

Vyzmanavin — Kaidanov

Norilsk, 1987



Black has the following possibilities: a)1...♘:d4; b)1...♘a5; c)1...♘:e3.

Variation a)1...♘:d4

1.	. . .	**♘c6:d4?!**
2.	**♗e3:d4**	**♗b7:f3**
3.	**♕e2:f3**	**♕c7:h2+**
4.	**♔g1-f1±**	. . .

Variation b)1...♘a5

1.	. . .	**♘c6-a5!**
2.	**♘c3-d5**	. . .

2.♘:b5? ♗:f3 3.♕:f3 ♕:h2+ 4.♔f1 ♘:e3+ 5.♙:e3 ♙:b5 -+; or 2.♙d5 ♘:b3 3.♙:b3 ♕b8!, ▷♙b4 and ♗d5.

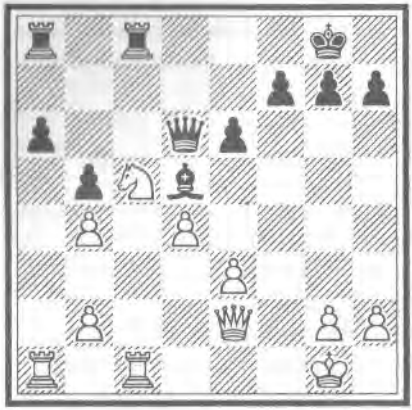
2.	. . .	**♕c7-d8**
3.	**♘d5:e7+**	**♕d8:e7∓**

In the game followed:
c)1...♘:e3

1.	. . .	**♘g4:e3?!**
2.	**♙f2:e3**	**♕c7-b6**
3.	**♘c3-e4**	**♘c6-a5**

After 3...♖ac8! Black keeps balance: 4.♘c5 ♘b8! =.

4.	**♘e4-c5**	**♖f8-c8**
5.	**♘f3-e5**	**♘a5:b3**
6.	**♙a2:b3**	**♗e7:c5**
7.	**♘e5-d7**	**♕b6-d6**
8.	**♘d7:c5**	**♗b7-d5**
9.	**♙b3-b4±**	. . .



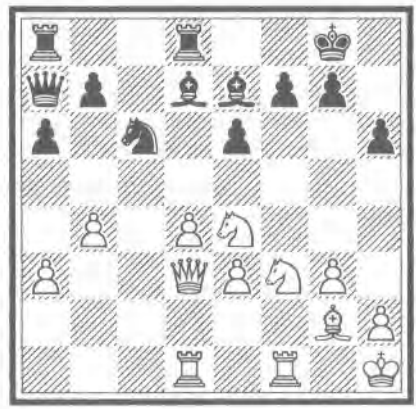
9.	. . .	♙e6-e5
10.	♖c1-d1	♖c8-e8
11.	♕e2-g4	♕d6-h6
12.	♙e3-c4	♗d5-c4
13.	♕g4-f3	♙e5:d4
14.	♙b2-b3	♗c4-e6
15.	♖d1:d4	♕h6-g5
16.	♕f3-g3	♕g5-f6
17.	♙e4-e5	♕f6-g6
18.	♕g3:g6	♙h7:g6
19.	♔g1-f2	♗e6-c8
20.	♖d4-d5	♖a8-a7
21.	♔f2-e3	♙f7-f6
22.	♔e3-d4	♖a7-e7
23.	♖a1-e1	♗c8-b7
24.	♘c5:b7	♖e7:b7
25.	♖d5-d6	♔g8-f7
26.	♔d4-d5	♖e8:e5+
27.	♖e1:e5	♙f6:e5
28.	♖d6:a6	♖b7-d7+
29.	♔d5:e5	♖d7-d2
30.	♖a6-a7+	♔f7-g8
31.	♙g2-g4	♖d2:h2
32.	♖a7-b7	♖h2-b2
33.	♖b7:b5	♖b2:b3
34.	♙g4-g5	♖b3-b1
35.	♔e5-e6	♔g8-h7
36.	♔e6-d5	♔h7-g8
37.	♔d5-c4	♖b1-e1
38.	♔c4-d4	♖e1-d1+
39.	♔d4-c3	♖d1-e1
40.	♖b5-c5	. . .

White soon won.

No.180

Mikhalchishin — Lalic

Sarajevo, 1985



White has a strong position in the centre and the semi-open f-file. Black's pieces are shut out from the defence of the kingside.

1. ♙g3-g4 . . .

Doubling rooks along the f-file gives nothing because of the possible reply ♗d7-e8.

1. . . . ♙e6-e5

1...♗e8 2.♙g5 ♙h5 3.♘g3 ♙g6 4.♘e4±, × "f6".

2. ♙g4-g5 ♙e5:d4

2...♗f5?! 3.♙d5±.

3. ♙e3:d4 . . .

3.♙:h6?! ♗f5 4.♘f6+ ♗:f6 5.♕:f5 ♙:e3↑↓.

3. . . . ♗d7-f5

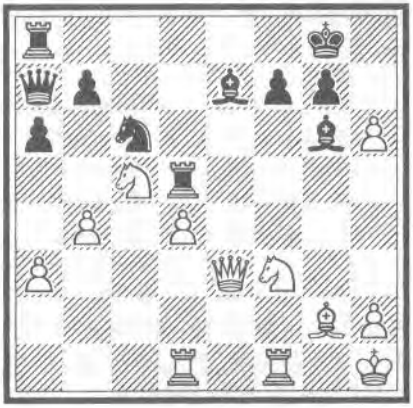
3...♙:g5? 4.♘e:g5 ♙g6 5.♘:f7! ♔:f7 6.♘g5++ +-.

4. ♙g5:h6 ♖d8-d5

4...♙g6? 5.♙d5, ▷♕d3 +-.

5. ♕d3-e3 ♗f5-g6
6. ♘e4-c5! . . .

6.♘c3? ♖h5 7.♙:g7 ♔:g7, ▷♖ah8↑↓.



6. . . . ♖a8-d8
7. ♙h6:g7 ♕a7-b8

7...♔:g7 8.♘d3 ♘:d4 9.♕:e7 ♘:f3 10.♖:f3 ♖:d3 11.♖d:d3 ♖:d3 12.♕f6+ ♔g8 13.♖:d3 ♗:d3 14.♕d8+ +-.

8. ♘c5-d3 ♗e7-d6
9. ♘f3-h4! ♖d5-h5
10. ♘h4:g6 ♗d6:h2

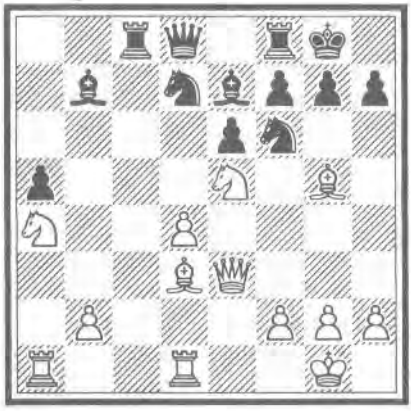
10...♖:h2+ 11.♔g1 ♙:g6 12.♕e6+ ♔h7 13.♗e4 +-.

11. ♕e3-f3! ♔g8:g7
12. ♕f3:h5 ♙f7:g6
13. ♕h5:h2 ♖d8-h8
14. ♗g2-h3

Black resigned.

Subject: Unconventional strategical ideas.

No.181
Hjartarson — Kortchnoi
Saint John, 1988



White's pieces are very actively disposed. There is the threat ♕e3-h3 and Black is unlikely to get unpinned.
How should Black continue?

1. . . . **♘d7:e5!**

Black at once cuts the Gordian knot!

2.	**♙d4:e5**	**♘f6-d5**
3.	**♕e3-e4**	**♙g7-g6**
4.	**♗g5-h6**	**♖f8-e8**
5.	**♗d3-b5**	**♗b7-c6**
6.	**♗b5:c6**	**♖c8:c6**
7.	**♘a4-c3**	**♕d8-c8**
8.	**♘c3:d5**	**♙e6:d5**
9.	**♕e4:d5**	**♙g6-g5!** ±

White has material advantage — an extra pawn, but it is compensated by the activity of Black's rooks.

10.	**♙e5-e6**	**♕c8:e6**
11.	**♗h6:g5**	**♕e6:d5**
12.	**♖d1:d5**	**♗e7:g5**
13.	**♖d5:g5+**	**♔g8-f8**
14.	**♖g5:a5**	**♖c6-b6**

Defence of the b2 pawn is impossible, and rook endings "three pawns against two pawns on the same flank" are, as a rule, drawn.

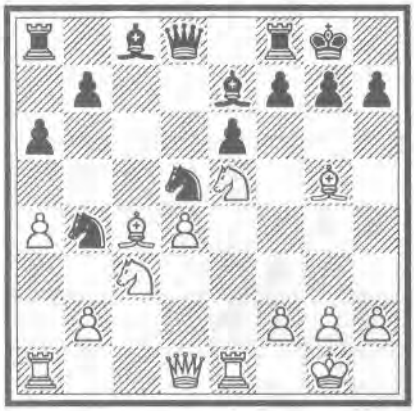
15. ♖a5-h5 . . .

15.♖5a2 ♖e2 16.♖b1 ♖f6 17.♙f3 ♖g6 18.♙g3 ♖d6 and the black rooks invade the second rank.

15.	**. . .**	**♔f8-g7**
16.	**♙g2-g3**	**♖b6:b2**

The game soon ended in a draw.

No.182
Pinter — Negulescu
Warsaw, 1987



White must decide: either to exchange the bishops, and weaken his attack potential or to choose a sharper continuation, keeping wide possibilities.

1. ♗g5-d2!? . . .

After 1.♗:e7 ♘:e7 2.♕b3 ♘bc6 3.♖ad1 ♕c7! the position is close to equal.

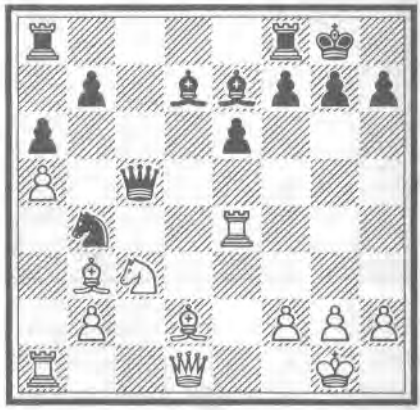
1. . . . **♘d5-b6**
2. ♗c4-b3 **♕d8:d4**
3. ♙a4-a5 . . .

A double-edged position appeared. In such positions any mistake may be the last one.

3. . . . **♘b6-d7?**

3...♘6d5! 4.♖a4 ♕c5 5.♘:d5 ♘:d5 6.♖g4 ♗f6 ½ (6...♙f5? 7.♖c4 ♕d6 8.♖d4 ♗f6?! 9.♗b4! +-) was better to play.

4. ♖e1-e4 **♕d4-c5**
5. ♘e5:d7 **♗c8:d7**



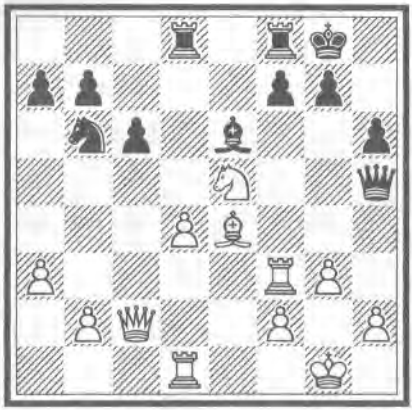
6. ♖e4:b4! **♕c5:b4**
7. ♘c3-d5 **♕b4-h4**
8. ♙g2-g3 **♕h4-d4**
9. ♘d5:e7+ **♔g8-h8**
10. ♗d2-c3 **♕d4:d1+**
11. ♖a1:d1± **♗d7-b5**
12. ♖d1-d4 **♖f8-e8**
13. ♗c3-b4 **♖a8-d8**
14. ♖d4-f4! **♙f7-f6**

14...♙f5 15.♙g4!±; or 14...♖f8 15.♗c2±.

15. ♗b3:e6 **♖e8:e7**
16. ♗b4:e7 **♖d8-d1+**
17. ♔g1-g2 **♗b5-c6+**
18. ♔g2-h3 **♖d1-e1**
19. ♖f4:f6!+-

White wins.

No.183
Flohr — Vanek
Brno, 1929



White's pieces are far more active then Black's. The queen is also placed badly on h5 which decides White's advantage. If the black queen was placed on d6, Black would have a satisfactory position.

1. ♙h2-h4! . . .

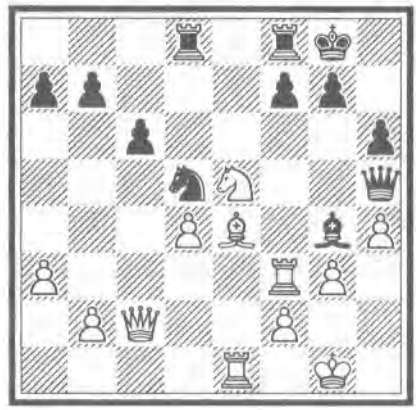
The best way to use the unlucky position of the black queen. The variation 1.♗h7+ ♔h8 2.♗g6 leads only to a draw after 2...♙:g6! 3.♘:g6+ ♔g8 4.♘c7+ =.

1. . . . **♗e6-g4**

If 1...♙f5, then 2.♙g4! ♕:h4 (2...♙:g4 3.♗h7+) 3.♙:f5± ♗f7 4.♙f6 and if 4...♙:f6, then 5.♖g3+ ♔h8 6.♖g4 ♕h5 7.♗g6 ♗:g6 8.♘:g6+ ♔g7 9.♖g3 +-.

2. ♖d1-c1! **♘b6-d5**

2...♗:f3? 3.♗:f3 +-; or 2...♗e6?! 3.♗h7+ ♔h8 4.♗g6 ♙:g6 5.♘:g6+ ♔g8 6.♖:f8+ ♖:f8 7.♖:e6± (7.♘:f8? ♗f5 8.♕c5 ♕f7 9.♖c5 ♗c8 ∓).



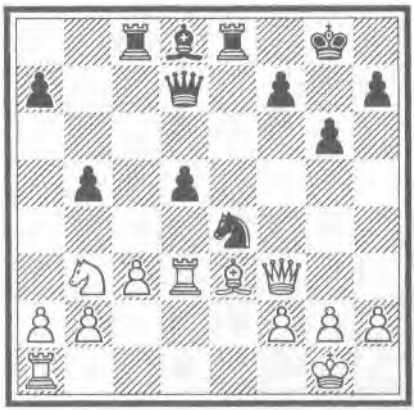
3. ♖f3:f7! **♖f8:f7**
4. ♗e4-h7+ **♔g8-h8**
5. ♗h7-g6! . . .

5.♘g6+?! ♕:g6 6.♗:g6 ♖f6± is weaker and White has an advantage, but Black's position is sufficiently solid.

5. . . . **♕h5:e5**
6. ♙d4:e5+- **♖f7-f8**
7. ♙e5-e6 **♘d5-e7**
8. ♗g6-f7 **♖d8-d4?**
9. ♕c2-c5 **♖f8-d8**
10. ♕c5:e7 **♗g4-f3**
11. ♕e7:d8+

Black resigned.

No.184
Watson — Dokhoian
Sochi, 1988



Black's position looks like a critical one, the d5 pawn is under strong White pressure.

1. . . . ♗d8-b6!!

A paradoxical move! It seems that Black plays against the rules, which say that the side with an isolated pawn has to avoid exchanges and strive for a sharpening of the game. But here, after the exchange of the darksquare bishop Black has the possibility of counterplay on the f-file, and the knight at e4 becomes active.

2. ♗e3:b6 ♙a7:b6
3. ♖a1-d1 . . .

3.♘d4!? ▷♘c2, ♘e3.

3. . . . ♖e8-e5
4. ♕f3-e3 ♖c8-e8!

The statical factors of Black's position (defects of pawn configuration) force him into action.

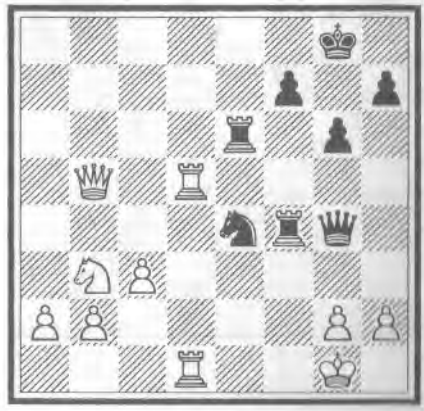
5. ♙f2-f4!? . . .

5.♕:b6? ♘:c3 -+.

5. . . . ♖e5-f5
6. ♕e3:b6 ♖f5-f6!

Driving away the white queen to a passive position because of the threat of including the black queen into play along the g1-a7 diagonal. Bad is 6...♖:f4? 7.♖:d5 ♕:d5 8.♖:d5 ♘:c3 9.♖e5 ♖:e5 10.♕b8+ +-.

7. ♕b6-a5 ♖f6:f4
8. ♖d3:d5 ♕d7-g4
9. ♕a5:b5 ♖e8-e6



After a pawn sacrifice, Black activates his pieces and creates dangerous threats to White's king. Now White has to be careful to maintain a balance.

10. ♘b3-c5 **♘e4:c5!**

10...♖f2? was mistaken because of 11.♖d8+ ♔g7 12.♘:e6+ ♔h6 13.♘f4! ♕:f4 14.♕d3 and White's chances are better.

11. ♕b5:c5 **♖e6-e2=**
12. ♙g2-g3 **♕g4-f3**
13. ♖d5-d8+ **♔g8-g7**
14. ♕c5-f8+ **♔g7-f6**
15. ♕f8-d6+ **♔f6-g7**
16. ♕d6-f8+ **♔g7-f6**
17. ♕f8-d6+ **♔f6-g7**

A draw.

No.185
Alekhine — Richter
Munich, 1931

1. ♕d3-f1! . . .

1.♘e2? ♘e5! -+; or 1.♖:e6 ♘:d4! 2.♗:b7 ♘:e6 -+.

1. . . . **♖d8:d4**

1...♘a5 2.♗:b7 ♘:b7 3.♖ad1 ±.

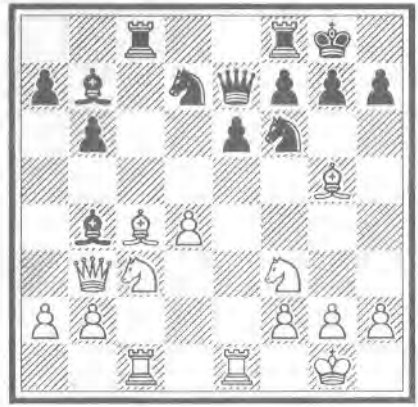
2. ♕f1-b5! **♖d4-d6**

2...♘d8 3.♗:b7 ♘:b7 4.♖:c6 ±.

3. ♘c3-e4! **♕g5-g6**
4. ♘e4:d6 **♘c6-d4**
5. ♗f3:b7! **♘d4:b5**
6. ♘d6:b5 **♕g6-f6**
7. ♘b5-c3± . . .

In a few moves White won.

No.186
Browne — Ljubojevic
Tilburg, 1978



Black has overloaded his queen by defence of the bishop on b4 and the knight on f6, but in other respects he has a strong position.

1. ♗c4-d5! . . .

White uses the strain on the black queen. If 1.♘e5, then 1...♗:c3 2.♙:c3 ♕d6=.
If 1.♙d5?, then 1...♕c5 2.♘a4 ♕a5 3.♙:e6 ♗:e1 4.♙:d7 ♘:d7∓.

1. . . . **♗b7-a6**

1...♗:c3 2.♗:b7 ♗:e1 3.♗:c8 ♗a5 4.♗:d7 ♕:d7 5.♗:f6±.

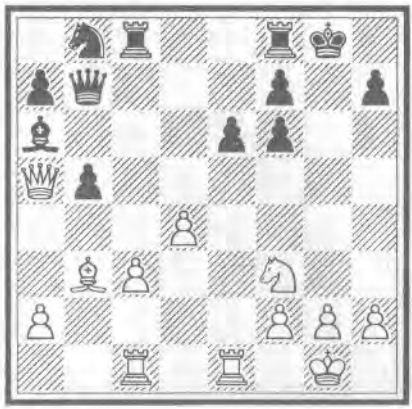
2. ♕b3-a4! **♗b4:c3**

2...♗b5 3.♙a3 ♗:c3 4.♙:c3 ♘b8 5.♗a2 ♕d7 6.♕c2±.

3. ♙b2:c3 **♘d7-b8**
4. ♗d5-b3 **♙b6-b5**

4...♕d7 5.♕a3±.

5. ♕a4-a5 **♕e7-b7?!**
6. ♗g5:f6 **♙g7:f6**



7. ♙d4-d5! **♙e6:d5**
8. ♕a5-b4 **♕b7-d7**
9. ♕b4-h4 **♔g8-g7**
10. ♘f3-d4

Black resigned.

No.187
Mikhalchishin — Kochyev
USSR, 1979

White's centralized pieces are quite a formidable sight, but their activity isn't easy realized, because Black's pieces keep strong positions.

1. . . . **♙b7-b6!**
2. ♘c5:a6 **♗c7-d6**
3. ♖f1-d1 **♕d8-e7**

Black excluded the knight at a6 from play at the cost of a pawn. Black's activity more than compensates for the lost pawn.

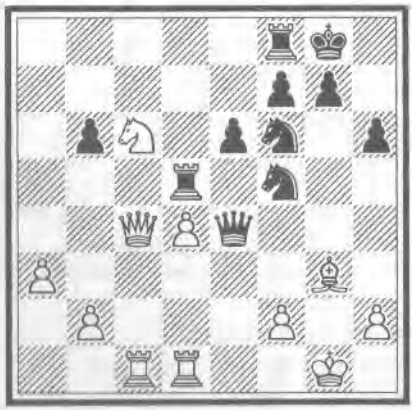
4. ♕d3-b5 . . .

4.♙f3!? ♘:d4? 5.♘g4 ♖fd8 6.♗:d6 ♖:d6 7.♘:f6+ ♕:f6 8.♕:d4 ♖:a6 9.♖c8+ +-.

4. . . .	**♕e7-b7**
5. ♘a6-b4	**♗d6:b4**
6. ♕b5:b4	**♗d5:g2**
7. ♕b4-c4	**♗g2-e4!**

After exchanging the bishops, the weakness of the light squares increases.

8. ♗b1:e4	**♕b7:e4∓**
9. ♗f4-g3	**♖a8-d8**
10. ♘e5-c6	**♖d8-d5!**



Black has an obvious advantage due to the weakness of the pawn on d4 and the unreliable position of the white king.

11. ♕c4-d3	**♕e4-g4!**

Black should avoid exchanging queens.

12. ♘c6-e5	**♕g4-h3**
13. ♘e5-f3	**♖f8-d8**
14. ♕d3-f1	**. . .**

White wants to pay the minimal price for his defence and invites his opponent to capture the pawn: 14...♕:f1+ 15.♔:f1 ♘:d4 16.♘:d4 ♖:d4 17.♖:d4 ♖:d4 18.♖c6 ↑↓.

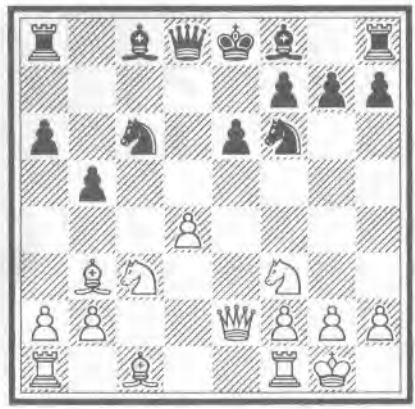
14. . . .	**♕h3-h5!**
15. ♕f1-e2	**♘f6-h7!**

Intending ♘h7-g5. Black weakens the d4 pawn and White's king by exchanging the knight at f3.

16. ♔g1-f1	**♕h5-h3+**
17. ♔f1-g1	**♘h7-g5**
18. ♘f3:g5	**♙h6:g5**
19. ♗g3-e5	**♘f5-h4**
20. ♕e2-f1	**♕h3-g4+**
21. ♔g1-h1	**♕g4-e4+**
22. ♔h1-g1	**♘h4-f3+**

White resigned.

No. 188
Bolbochan — Evans
Helsinki, 1952



1. . . . ♘c6:d4?!

It is risky to accept the sacrifice of a pawn, 1...♗e7!? 2.♖d1 ♘b4 3.♙a4 ♙:a4% is better.

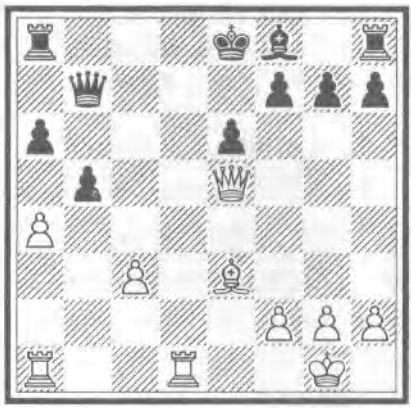
2. ♘f3:d4 ♕d8:d4
3. ♘c3-d5! . . .

An interesting decision. If 3.♕f3, then 3...♕a7 4. ♗e3 ♗b7%.

3. . . . ♘f6:d5
4. ♖f1-d1 ♘d5-c3

After 4...♕a7 will follow 5.♗:d5 ♗b7 6.♗:e6 ♙:e6 7.♕:e6+ ♗c7 8.♖d7 ♕c5 9.♗e3 ♕b4 10.♙a3 +- and after 4...♕b6 will follow 5.♗:d5 ♗b7 6.♗e3 ♕c7 7.♖ac1 ♕d7 8.♗e4 ♕e7 9.♗c5+-.

5. ♙b2:c3 ♕d4-b6
6. ♕e2-e5 ♗c8-b7
7. ♗c1-e3 ♕b6-c6
8. ♗b3-d5 ♕c6-c8
9. ♗d5:b7 ♕c8:b7
10. ♙a2-a4! . . .

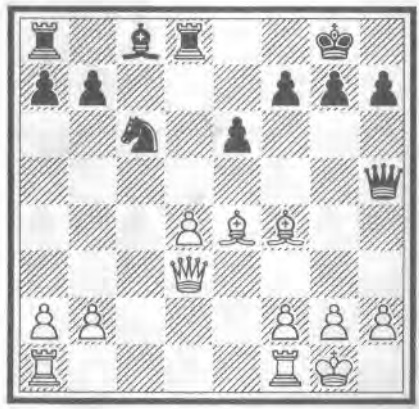


Creating weaknesses on the queenside and opening the a-file.

10. . . . ♖a8-c8
11. ♙a4:b5 ♕b7:b5
12. ♕e5-d4 ♙e6-e5
13. ♕d4-g4 ♖c8-d8
14. ♖d1:d8+ ♔e8:d8
15. ♖a1-d1+ ♔d8-e7
16. ♕g4-f5

Black resigned.

No.189
Gurevich M. — Benjamin
Moscow, 1987



White has a positional advantage. Two bishops are very strong, Black also has problems with development of the queenside pieces, and the queen on h5 is placed badly and may be attacked.

1. ♕d3-e3! . . .

If 1.♖ad1 then 1...♙e5! 2.♗:c6 ♖:d4 3.♕c2 (3.♗f3? ♗g4!) ♗f5

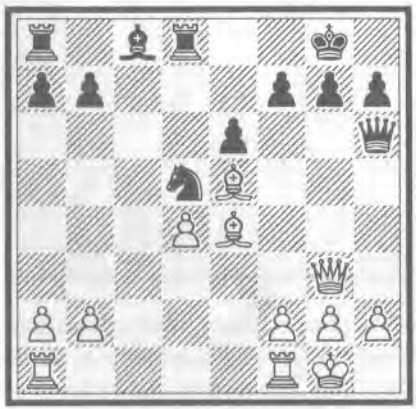
4.♕c1 ♖:d1 5.♖:d1 ♙:c6 6.♗:e5 ♙c5 = (Knaak — Yudasin, Leipzig, 1986).

1. . . . ♘c6-b4

The d4 pawn is untouchable: 1...♘:d4? 2.♖ad1 ♙e5 (2...♘c6 3.♖:d8+ ♘:d8 4.♕d3 ♕h4 5.♖d1 +-) 3.♗:e5 ±.

In the recent game Christiansen — Adorjan (Schirak, 1987) Black continued 1...♗d7, but didn't achieve equalization: 2.♖ac1 ♙h6 3.♖c5 ♕h4 4.♗c7 ♖e8 5.♖d1 ♖ac8 6.♗d6 ♙b6 7.♖c3 ♘a5 8.♗g3 ♖:c3 9.♙:c3 ♕h5 10.♗c2 ±.

2. ♕e3-g3 ♘b4-d5
3. ♗f4-e5 ♕h5-h6



Black wants to play 4...♗d7 and 5...♗c6 with a good position. How should White use his temporary development advantage to prevent this?

4. ♕g3-b3! ♙b7-b6
5. ♖a1-d1! . . .

With the threat 6.♖d3 and 7.♖h3. 5.♖fd1 ♗b7 6.♖d3 ♖ac8 is worse and White cannot make the move 7.♖h3? because of ♖c1+.

5. . . . ♗c8-a6

5...♙f6!? 6.♗g3 ♗b7 7.♖fe1 ±.

6. ♖f1-e1 ♙f7-f6

6...♖ac8 7.♕a3 ♗c4 8.♙b3 ♗b5 9.♗:d5 ♙:d5 10.♕:a7 ♖a8 11.♕c7 ♖dc8 12.♕b7 ± is bad.

7. ♗e5-c7!± . . .

The bishop's manoeuvre breaks coordination of the black pieces.

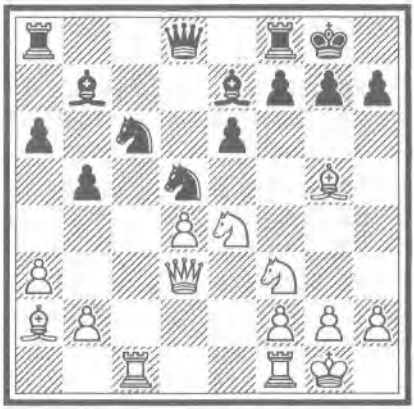
7. . . . ♖d8-e8

7...♘:c7? 8.♗:a8 ♖:a8 9.♙d5 ♘:d5 10.♖:e6 ♗b7 11.♖e7 +-.
7...♖d7? 8.♕a4 ♖:c7 9.♗:d5 ♙:d5 10.♖e8+ +-.

8. ♗e4:d5 ♙e6:d5
9. ♕b3:d5+ ♔g8-h8

Now the simple 10.♙h3! maintained White's great advantage.

No.190
Gazenfus — Flohr
Kemery, 1937



How should Black continue?

1. . . . ♘c6-b4!

Tactics serves strategy here. Black realizes the favourable exchanges of the minor pieces.

2. ♕d3-b1 . . .

If 2.♙:b4, then 2...♘:b4 3.♕b1 ♘:a2 3.♕:a2 ♗:e4 -+.

2.	**. . .**	**♘b4:a2**
3.	**♕b1:a2**	**♗e7:g5**
4.	**♘e4:g5**	**♙h7-h6**
5.	**♘g5-e4**	**♘d5-f4∓**

Black has seized the initiative. The bishop at b7 exerts strong pressure on White's position, and Black uses his strength and the passive position of White's queen on a2, to attack the position of the white king.

6.	**♖c1-e1**	**♗b7-d5**
7.	**♙b2-b3**	**♙f7-f5!**
8.	**♘e4-d2**	**♕d8-f6**
9.	**♔g1-h1**	**♖a8-c8**
10.	**♕a2-b1?**	**. . .**

It brings White's defeat closer.

10.	**. . .**	**♘f4:g2!**
11.	**♔h1:g2**	**♕f6-g5+**
12.	**♔g2-h1**	**♕g5:d2**
13.	**♖e1-e3**	**♕d2:d4**

White resigned.

No.191
Damljanovic — Beliavsky
Belgrade, 1993

Black has a very comfortable endgame, but how can he improve his position? White threatens ♘:c6 and then ♙d4-d5.

1. . . . ♗c6-e4!

Black employs a very clever and unconventional plan — he transfers his bishop to the kingside in order to attack White's position in the centre after ♘b4-c6.

2.	**♙h2-h4**	**♗e4-f5**
3.	**♙h4:g5**	**♙h6:g5**
4.	**♙a2-a3**	**♘b4-d5**
5.	**♘c3:d5**	**♘f6:d5**
6.	**♗b3:d5**	. . .

Now the central structure is changed, but Black has got two bishops and the following moves are very instructive.

6.	. . .	**♙e6:d5**
7.	**♙f2-f3**	**♙f7-f6**
8.	**♘e5-g4**	**♗f5:g4!**

It is an old joke, saying that the advantage of two bishops is easily transformed into the advantage of just one! Now White is going to have difficulties with his d4 pawn.

9.	**♙f3:g4**	**♔g8-f7**
10.	**♗g3-c7**	. . .

Threatened 10...♔e6 and 11...♖c4.

10.	. . .	**♖d8-e8**
11.	**♔g1-f2**	**♔f7-e6**
12.	**♔f2-f3**	**♔e6-d7**
13.	**♗c7-g3**	**♙b7-b5!**

Preparing occupation of c4 — the most important point in the position. Now after 14.♖h1 Black can play 14...♖c4 15.♖:c4 ♙b:c4 16.♖h7 ♖c8 17.♗e1 ♔e6 and White will have problems with the b2 pawn. Also playable is 14...♙a5.

14.	**♙a3-a4?!**	**♙b5:a4**
15.	**♖d1-h1**	**♖c8:c1**
16.	**♖h1:c1**	**♖e8-c8**
17.	**♖c1:c8**	**♔d7:c8**

A bishop ending is easily won.

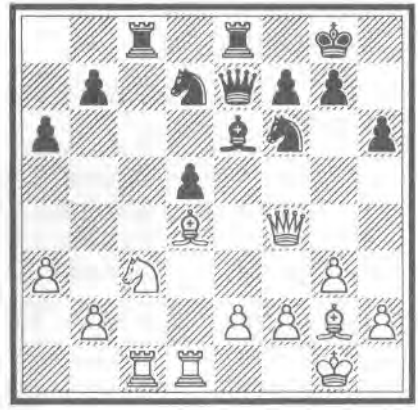
18.	**♔f3-e3**	**♙a4-a3**
19.	**♙b2:a3**	**♗e7:a3**
20.	**♔e3-d3**	**♙a7-a5**
21.	**♗g3-e1**	**♙a5-a4**
22.	**♗e1-c3**	**♔c8-d7**
23.	**♔d3-e2**	**♔d7-c6**
24.	**♔e2-d3**	**♔c6-b5**

White resigned.

No.192

Kasparov — Hjartarson

Belfort, 1988



1.	**♙e2-e4!**	. . .

An unconventional decision. Depriving Black of his isolated d5

pawn, White opens an important diagonal for the lightsquare bishop. Now the two bishops are pressing heavily on Black's queenside.

1. . . .	**♙d5:e4**
2. ♘c3:e4	**♘f6:e4**

If 2...♘d5, then 3.♕d6!.
The exchange of queens is usually expedient when realizing the advantage of two bishops because this advantage is of a static nature. For example: 3...♖:c1 (threatened 4.♖:c8 ▷♕:e7 and ♘d6) 4.♖:c1 ♕:d6 5.♘:d6 ♖b8 6.♙f4 ♙g6 7.♙g4±.

3. ♕f4:e4	**♖c8:c1**
4. ♖d1:c1	**♕e7-d6**
5. ♕e4-e3	**♙b7-b6**

5...♕b8 6.♕f3 ♙b5 7.♙b4 ▷♕c6±.

6. ♖c1-c6	**♕d6-b8**
7. ♕e3-c3	**♙f7-f6**
8. ♙b2-b4	**♗e6-f5**
9. ♙h2-h3	**♔g8-h7**
10. ♗d4-e3	**♕b8-d8**
11. ♕c3-d4	**♘d7-e5**

The two white bishops, acting along adjacent diagonals, are very strong. Black's position is bad.

12. ♖c6:b6+-	**♕d8-c8**

12...♕:d4 13.♗:d4 ♗:h3 14.♗:e5 ♗:g2 15.♔:g2 ♖:e5 16.♖:a6+-.

13. ♔g1-h2	**♖e8-d8**
14. ♕d4-c5?	**. . .**

14.♖d6 ♖:d6 15.♕:d6 ♕c2 16.♗d4 (16.♕:a6 is dangerous in view of 16...♗e4) 16...♕e2 (16...♘d3 17.♕e7+-) 17.♕d5! ♗c2 18.♙a4± was necessary and now there is no possibility of 18...♗:a4 in view of 19.♗e4+ ♙g6 20.♕b7+ ♔h8 21.♕b8++- ♔g7 22.♕c7+ ♔h8 (22...♘f7 23.♕e7) 23.♕d8+ ▷♕e7 +-.

14. . . .	**♗f5:h3!**
15. ♗g2-e4+	**. . .**

15.♗:h3 ♘f3+ 16.♔g2 ♘e1+ =.

15. . . .	**♔h7-g8**
16. ♕c5:c8	**♗h3:c8**
17. ♗e3-c5	**♙f6-f5**
18. ♗e4-b1?	**. . .**

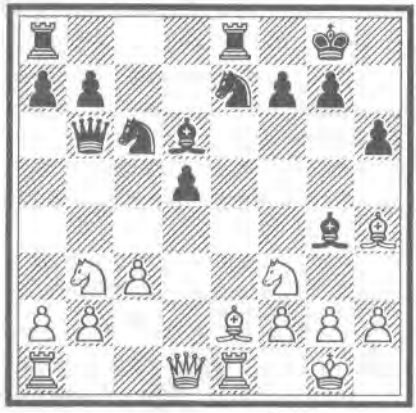
The h1-a8 diagonal should not be abandoned. 18.♗a8± is better.

18. . . .	**♖d8-d1**
19. ♗b1-a2+	**♔g8-h7**
20. ♖b6-d6=	**♘e5-g4+**
21. ♔h2-g2	**♗c8-b7+**
22. ♙f2-f3	**♖d1-c1**
23. ♗a2-e6	**♖c1-c2+**
24. ♔g2-g1	

Draw.

Subject: The isolated black d-pawn, emerging from the French Defence.

No.193
Psakhis — Vaganian
USSR, 1981

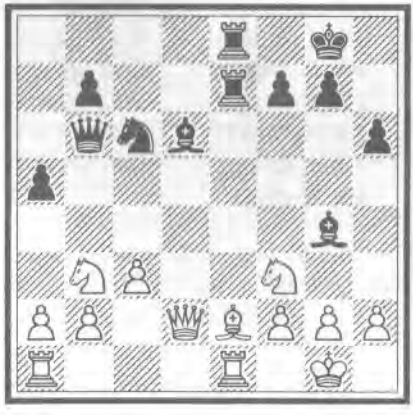


1. ♗h4:e7 ♖e8:e7!

White expected 1...♘:e7?! 2.♘fd4±.

2. ♕d1:d5 ♖a8-e8
3. ♕d5-d2 ♙a7-a5!

Black has got strong activity for the pawn.



4. ♙h2-h3 . . .

4.♘bd4 is bad because of 4...♗c5!

4. . . . ♗d6-g3!
5. ♘b3-d4 . . .

5.♗d1 ♖:e1+ 6.♘:e1 ♗:f2+ 7.♕:f2 ♖:e1+ -+.

5. . . . ♗g4:f3
6. ♗e2-f1! . . .

The only move, if 6.♗:f3?, then 6...♘:d4 7.♙:d4 ♕:b2!-+.

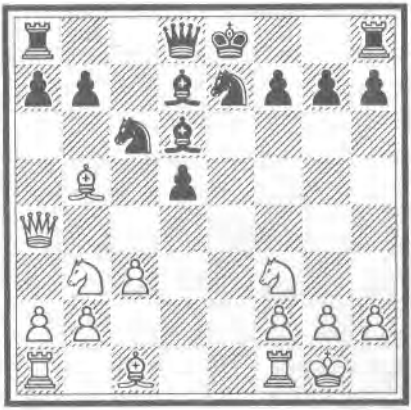
6. . . . ♗g3:f2+

6...♖:e1 7.♖:e1 ♖:e1 8.♕:e1 ♘:d4 9.♕e8+ ♔h7 10.♗d3+ ♙f5 11.♙:d4=.

7. ♔g1:f2 ♘c6:d4
8. ♙c3:d4 ♗f3-d5
9. ♖e1:e7 ♖e8:e7
10. ♙b2-b3 ♖e7-e4
11. ♖a1-d1 ♕b6-f6+
12. ♔f2-g1 ♙b7-b6
13. ♗f1-c4= . . .

And White maintains balance.

No.194
Hort — Velimirovic
Budapest, 1973



1.	**♗c1-f4!**	**♕d8-c7**
2.	**♗f4:d6**	**♕c7:d6**
3.	**♗b5:c6**	**♗d7:c6**

3...♙:c6 4.♕b4!±, providing the c5 and d4 squares for the white knights.

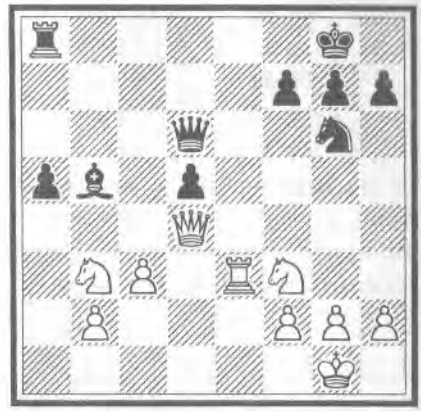
4.	**♕a4-d4**	**0 - 0**
5.	**♖f1-e1**	**♙a7-a5**

Black wants to start play on the queenside.

6.	**♙a2-a4**	**♘e7-g6**
7.	**♖e1-e3**	**♖f8-e8**
8.	**♖a1-e1**	**♖e8:e3**
9.	**♖e1:e3**	**♙b7-b5!?**

Black wants to get counterplay by pressure on the b2 pawn.

10.	**♙a4:b5**	**♗c6:b5**



11.	**♕d4-c5!**	**. . .**

Transferring play to an advantageous ending, where it will be easier to exploit the weakness of the a5 and d5 pawns.

11.	**. . .**	**♕d6:c5**
12.	**♘b3:c5**	**♙a5-a4**
13.	**♘f3-d4**	**♗b5-e8**
14.	**♘c5-a6**	**♔g8-f8**
15.	**♘a6-b4**	**♘g6-e7**
16.	**♘d4-c2!**	**. . .**

White skilfully manoeuvres his knights, preventing the move ♙a4-a3 and keeping his eye on the d5 pawn.

16.	**. . .**	**♖a8-b8**
17.	**♖e3-d3**	**♗e8-d7**
18.	**♘c2-e3**	**♗d7-e6**
19.	**♙f2-f3**	**♙g7-g6**
20.	**♔g1-f2**	**. . .**

The king enters play, it goes to the b2 pawn, taking care of it's defence.

20.	**. . .**	**♖b8-b6**
21.	**♔f2-e1**	**♘e7-c6**
22.	**♘b4:c6**	**♖b6:c6**

23. ♔e1-d2	**♖c6-c5**
24. ♘e3-c2	**♗e6-f5**
25. ♖d3-d4	**♗f5:c2**
26. ♔d2:c2	**♖c5-a5**
27. ♔c2-b1!	. . .

The weaknesses of the a4 and d5 pawns, and presence of the white king in the important sector of the board, permits White to achieve a win.

No.195
Balashov — Lputian
Riga, 1985

1. ♗h4-g3!	. . .

The exchange of the darksquare bishops is almost always advantageous for White.

1. . . .	**♗d6:g3**
2. ♙h2:g3	**♘e7-f5**
3. ♕d1-d3	. . .

Intending 4.♗:c6 ♙:c6 5.♘e5 +-.

3. . . .	**♗g4:f3**
4. ♕d3:f3	. . .

4.♙:f3 ▷♙f3-f4 is interesting.

4. . . .	**♘f5-d4**
5. ♘b3:d4	**♘c6:d4**
6. ♕f3-d3	**♕d8-b6**

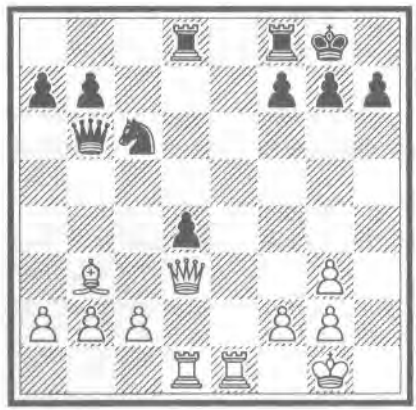
Black avoids a heavy piece ending after 6...♘:b5 7.♕:b5, but maybe it was the lesser evil.

7. ♗b5-a4	**♖a8-d8**
8. ♖a1-d1	**♘d4-c6**

8...♘e6 would have been better.

9. ♗a4-b3	**♙d5-d4**

White's pressure on the isolani is difficult to neutralize. The isolani is moved to d4, which leads to the strengthening of the b3 bishop.



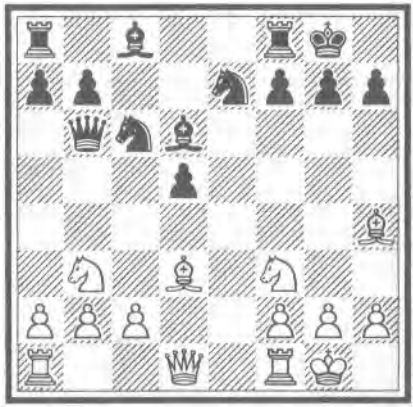
10. ♖e1-e4!	**♖d8-d7**
11. ♙c2-c3!	**♘c6-a5**

11...♖fd8 12.♖de1 ♙g6 13.♕d2 (▷♕d2-h6) 13...♔g7 14.♖h4 ♙h5 15.♖:h5 ♙:h5 16.♕g5+ ♔f8 17.♕:h5 ♔g7 18.♕g5+ ♔f8 19.♕h6+ ♔g8 20.♕g6+ ♔f8 21.♕h7 +-.

12. ♖e4:d4	**♘a5:b3**
13. ♖d4:d7	**♘b3-c5**
14. ♖d7-d6+-	

And White soon won.

No.196
Zhidkov — Gulko
Daugavpils, 1974



The black queen is well placed on b6, where it controls the d4 square and exerts pressure on White's queenside.

1. . . .	**♙a7-a5!**
2. ♙c2-c3	**. . .**

2.♙a4 ♘f5!∓.

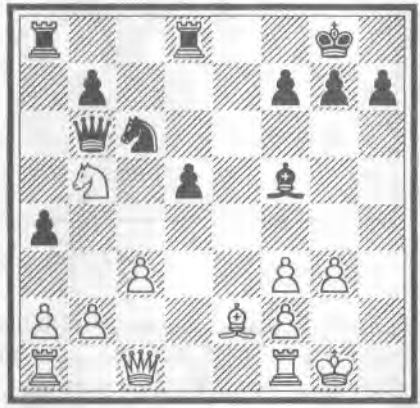
2. . . .	**♙a5-a4**
3. ♘b3-d4	**♘e7-g6**

3...♕:b2 4.♘b5! ▷♖f1-e1-e2 +- is bad.

4. ♘d4-b5	**. . .**

4.♗g3 ♗:g3 5.♙h:g3 ♘:d4 6.♘:d4 ♕:b2 7.♘b5 ♗d7∓.

4. . . .	**♗d6-f4!**
5. ♗h4-g3	**♗f4:g3**
6. ♙h2:g3	**♗c8-g4**
7. ♖a1-b1	**♘g6-e5**
8. ♗d3-e2	**♗g4-f5**
9. ♖b1-a1	**♘e5:f3+**
10. ♙g2:f3	**♖f8-d8**
11. ♕d1-c1	**. . .**



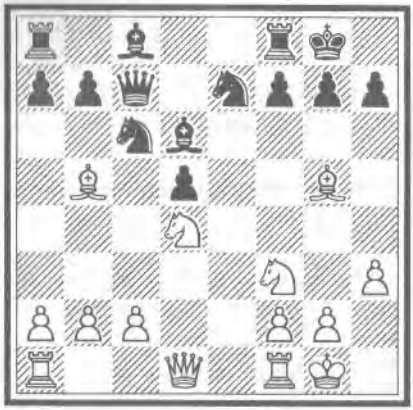
11.. . .	**♙d5-d4!**

This breakthrough increases centralization of the black pieces.

12. ♘b5:d4	**♘c6:d4**
13. ♙c3:d4	**♕b6:d4**
14. ♖f1-d1	**♕d4-e5**
15. ♕c1-g5	**♙f7-f6**
16. ♗e2-c4+	**♔g8-h8**
17. ♕g5-h5	**. . .**

Black's centralization and the weakness of the b2 pawn ensure his advantage.

No.197
Neukirch — Uhlmann
Germany, 1974



1.	. . .	**♙f7-f6!**

A typical plan. Black establishes control over the strategically important e5 square. The weakness of the e6 square is not important.

2.	**♗g5-e3**	**♘c6-e5**
3.	**♙b2-b3**	. . .

Preventing ♘e5-c4.

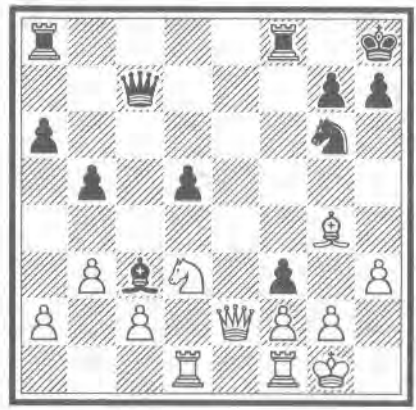
3.	. . .	**♙a7-a6**
4.	**♗b5-e2**	**♗c8-d7**
5.	**♕d1-d2**	**♙b7-b5**
6.	**♖a1-d1**	**♔g8-h8**
7.	**♘f3-e1**	. . .

White plans to drive the knight away from e5 by ♙f2-f4.

7.	. . .	**♘e5-g6!**

Neutralizing White's threats 8.♙f4 by 8...♙f5, ▷♘g8-f6-e4∓.

8.	**♘e1-d3**	**♙f6-f5!**
9.	**♗e3-g5**	**♙f5-f4**
10.	**♗g5:e7**	**♗d6:e7**
11.	**♗e2-g4**	**♗e7-f6**
12.	**♗g4:d7**	**♗f6:d4**
13.	**♗d7-g4**	**♗d4-c3**
14.	**♕d2-e2**	**♙f4-f3-+**



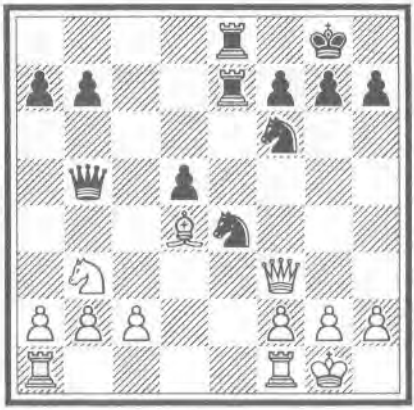
15.	**♕e2-e3**	. . .

15.♗:f3 ♖ae8 -+.

15.	. . .	**♖a8-e8**
16.	**♕e3-c5**	**♕c7:c5**
17.	**♘d3:c5**	**♙f3:g2**
18.	**♔g1:g2**	**♙h7-h5**
19.	**♗g4-d7**	**♘g6-f4+**
20.	**♔g2-g1**	**♖e8-e7**

Because of inevitable material losses White resigned.

No.198
Keres — Ivkov
Wijk aan Zee, 1964



How should White continue?

1. ♕f3-d3! . . .

Trying to drive the black knight out of his active position.

1. . . .	**♕b5-c6**
2. ♖a1-d1	. . .

Black's activity is easily neutralized but weakness of the d5 pawn is essential.

2.♙f3!? ♘g5 3.♕f5!±.

2. . . .	**♘f6-h5**
3. ♗d4-e3	**♘h5-f6**
4. ♘b3-d4	. . .

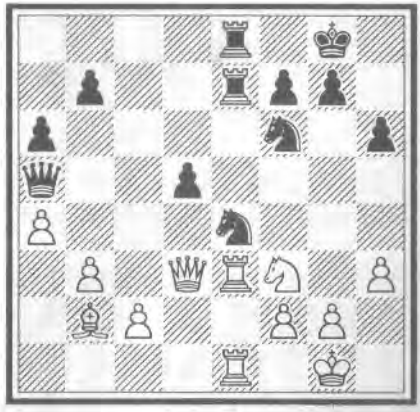
Preparing a transfer of the knight to f3, where it is more useful.

4. . . .	**♕c6-d7**
5. ♙h2-h3	**♙a7-a6**
6. ♖f1-e1	**♘e4-d6**
7. ♘d4-f3	**♕d7-a4**
8. ♙b2-b3	**♕a4-a5**
9. ♙a2-a4	**♘d6-e4**
10. ♗e3-d4	. . .

Control of the d4 square allows White to get a decisive advantage without much trouble.

10. . . .	**♙h7-h6**
11. ♖e1-e3	**♘f6-h5**
12. ♗d4-b2	**♘h5-f6**
13. ♖d1-e1!	. . .

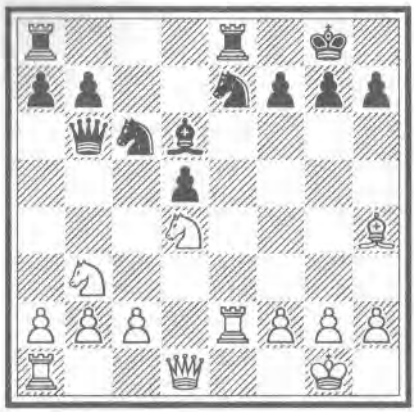
Preparing an exchange of rooks and destroying Black's counterplay.



13. . . .	**♘e4-c5**
14. ♕d3-d4	**♖e7:e3**
15. ♖e1:e3	**♖e8-e4**
16. ♖e3:e4	**♘c5:e4**
17. ♕d4-e3!±	. . .

White has a great advantage in the ending.

No.199
Shmidt — Portisch
Nice, 1974



1. . . . ♗d6-e5!

Starting the struggle for control over the blockaded d4 square.

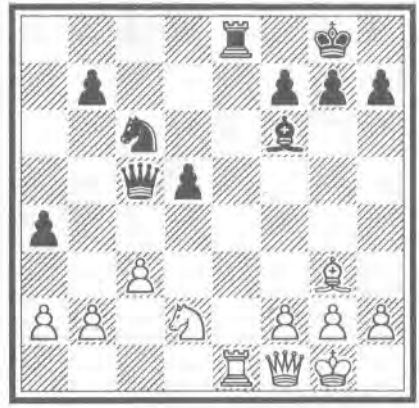
2. ♘d4:c6 . . .

2.♖d2? ♘:d4 3.♘:d4 ♗:d4 4.♖:d4 ♘f5 5.♖f4 ♘:h4 6.♖:h4 ♕:b2∓.

2. . . . ♘e7:c6
3. ♙c2-c3 ♙a7-a5!
4. ♖a1-b1 . . .

4.♕:d5? ♙a4 5.♘c5 ♕b5 ▷ ♖a8-a5 ∓.

4. . . . ♙a5-a4
5. ♘b3-d2 ♕b6-b5!
6. ♗h4-g3 ♗e5-f6
7. ♖e2:e8+ ♖a8:e8
8. ♕d1-f1 ♕b5-c5!
9. ♖b1-e1 . . .



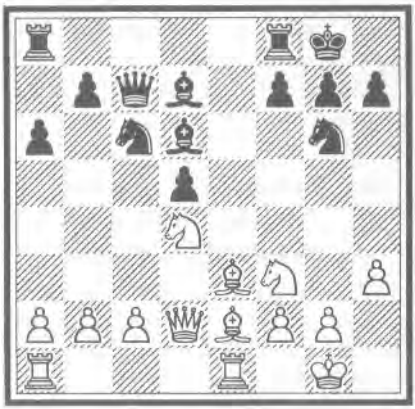
9. . . . ♖e8-d8!

Black avoids exchanges because his pieces are more active.

10. ♙a2-a3 ♙h7-h6
11. ♕f1-d3 ♕c5-b6
12. ♕d3-c2 ♕b6-b5
13. ♗g3-c7 ♖d8-c8
14. ♗c7-f4 ♘c6-d4!
15. ♕c2-d1 ♘d4-e6
16. ♕d1-g4 ♙h6-h5
17. ♕g4-f5 ♖c8-e8
18. ♘d2-f3 ♕b5:b2

Black realized his advantage and won.

No.200
Nunn — Vaganian
Baden, 1980



How should White continue?

1.	**♘d4:c6!**	**♙b7:c6**
2.	**♙c2-c4**	**♙a6-a5**
3.	**♙a2-a3**	**♗d7-e6**
4.	**♙c4-c5!**	. . .

After 4.♙:d5 ♗:d5! the activity of the bishop at d5 compensates for weakness of the c6 pawn.

4.	. . .	**♗d6-e7**
5.	**♙b2-b4**	**♖f8-b8**
6.	**♗e3-d4**	**♗e6-f5**
7.	**♗e2-f1**	**♙f7-f6?**

Black wants to limit the activity of the bishop at d4, but now the weakness on e6 has much importance. It should be continued 7...♗e4! 8.♘g5 ♗f5.

8.	**♗d4-c3!±**	. . .

8.	. . .	**♗f5-e4**
9.	**♘f3-d4**	**♙a5:b4**
10.	**♙a3:b4**	**♘g6-e5**
11.	**♖a1:a8**	**♖b8:a8**
12.	**♙f2-f3!**	**♗e4-g6**
13.	**♙f3-f4**	**♘e5-c4**
14.	**♕d2-e2**	**♗g6-e4**

14...♕:f4? 15.♕e6+ ♗f7 16.♕:c6+-.

15.	**♕e2-g4!**	**♗e7-f8**
16.	**♖e1:e4!**	

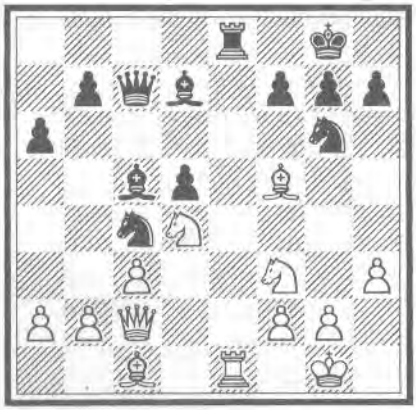
Black resigned.

No.201
Matulovic — Balashov
Teslitz, 1979

1.	**♖a1-d1**	**♘a5-c4**
2.	**♗c3-c1**	**♗d6-c5**
3.	**♗d3-f5!**	. . .

The exchange of lightsquare bishops is advantageous for White because the d5 pawn becomes more vulnerable.

3.	. . .	**♖e8:e1+**
4.	**♖d1:e1**	**♖a8-e8**



5.	**♖e1-d1!**	. . .

White intensifies the pressure on d5.

5.	. . .	**♗c5:d4?!**

The exchanges of minor pieces are advantageous for White, e.g. 5...♗:f5 6.♘:f5 ♘ce5 7.♘:e5 ♕:e5 8.♗e3 ♗:e3 9.♘:e3±.

6.	**♘f3:d4**	**♗d7:f5**
7.	**♘d4:f5**	**♘g6-f4**
8.	**♙b2-b3**	**♘c4-b6**
9.	**♗c1-e3**	**♕c7:c3**

The attempt to complicate play only brings Black's defeat closer.

10.	**♕c2:c3**	**♘f4-e2+**
11.	**♔g1-h2**	**♘e2:c3**
12.	**♖d1-d3**	**♙d5-d4**
13.	**♗e3:d4**	**♘c3-d5**
14.	**♘f5:g7**	**♖e8-e2**
15.	**♘g7-f5**	**♙h7-h5**
16.	**♗d4:b6**	**♘d5:b6**
17.	**♖d3-d6**	

Black resigned.

Special letter to Readers

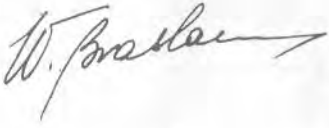
Dear Readers,

We have the honour to inform you about the original «Chess Academy®» software, which has been developed by the Intelinvest Co. Ltd. in cooperation with CHESS INFORMANT® and world famous chessplayers.

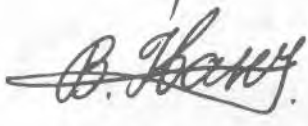
According to expert opinion, these programs should arouse significant interest on the software market among numerous chess enthusiasts. If you desire to take part in the promotion and marketing of this product as our dealer or distributor on favourable terms, please contact us.

We are also interested in your opinion on this product.

Best regards,



V. Braslavsky,
President of INTELINVEST Co., Ltd.
June 30, 1994



V. Ivanchuk,
International Grandmaster
June 30, 1994